## Contents

*Preface* ix

1 **Random Walks on Graphs** 1
   1.1 Random Walks and Reversible Markov Chains 1
   1.2 Electrical Networks 3
   1.3 Flows and Energy 8
   1.4 Recurrence and Resistance 11
   1.5 Pólya’s Theorem 14
   1.6 Graph Theory 16
   1.7 Exercises 18

2 **Uniform Spanning Tree** 21
   2.1 Definition 21
   2.2 Wilson’s Algorithm 23
   2.3 Weak Limits on Lattices 28
   2.4 Uniform Forest 31
   2.5 Schramm–Löwner Evolutions 32
   2.6 Exercises 36

3 **Percolation and Self-Avoiding Walks** 39
   3.1 Percolation and Phase Transition 39
   3.2 Self-Avoiding Walks 42
   3.3 Connective Constant of the Hexagonal Lattice 45
   3.4 Coupled Percolation 53
   3.5 Oriented Percolation 55
   3.6 Exercises 56

4 **Association and Influence** 59
   4.1 Holley Inequality 59
   4.2 FKG Inequality 62
   4.3 BK Inequality 63
## Contents

4.4 Hoeffding Inequality 65  
4.5 Influence for Product Measures 67  
4.6 Proofs of Influence Theorems 72  
4.7 Russo’s Formula and Sharp Thresholds 80  
4.8 Exercises 83

5 Further Percolation 86  
5.1 Subcritical Phase 86  
5.2 Supercritical Phase 90  
5.3 Uniqueness of the Infinite Cluster 96  
5.4 Phase Transition 99  
5.5 Open Paths in Annuli 103  
5.6 The Critical Probability in Two Dimensions 107  
5.7 Cardy’s Formula 115  
5.8 The Critical Probability via the Sharp-Threshold Theorem 126  
5.9 Exercises 130

6 Contact Process 131  
6.1 Stochastic Epidemics 131  
6.2 Coupling and Duality 133  
6.3 Invariant Measures and Percolation 135  
6.4 The Critical Value 137  
6.5 The Contact Model on a Tree 139  
6.6 Space–Time Percolation 142  
6.7 Exercises 145

7 Gibbs States 146  
7.1 Dependency Graphs 146  
7.2 Markov and Gibbs Random Fields 148  
7.3 Ising and Potts Models 152  
7.4 Exercises 154

8 Random-Cluster Model 156  
8.1 The Random-Cluster, Ising, and Potts Models 156  
8.2 Basic Properties 159  
8.3 Infinite-Volume Limits and Phase Transition 160  
8.4 Open Problems 165  
8.5 In Two Dimensions 167  
8.6 Proof of the Critical Point in Two Dimensions 173  
8.7 Random Even Graphs 183  
8.8 Exercises 186
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9 Quantum Ising Model</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1 The Model</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2 Continuum Random-Cluster Model</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3 Quantum Ising via Random-Cluster Model</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4 Long-Range Order</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5 Entanglement in One Dimension</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6 Exercises</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Interacting Particle Systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1 Introductory Remarks</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2 Contact Model</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3 Voter Model</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4 Exclusion Model</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5 Stochastic Ising Model</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6 Exercises</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Random Graphs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1 Erdős–Rényi Graphs</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2 Giant Component</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3 Independence and Colouring</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4 Exercises</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Lorentz Gas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1 Lorentz Model</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2 The Square Lorentz Gas</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3 In the Plane</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4 Exercises</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

References 240

Index 261
Preface

Within the menagerie of objects studied in contemporary probability theory, a number of related animals have attracted great interest amongst probabilists and physicists in recent years. The inspiration for many of these objects comes from physics, but the mathematical subject has taken on a life of its own and many beautiful constructions have emerged. The overall target of these notes is to identify some of these topics, and to develop their basic theory at a level suitable for mathematics graduates.

If the two principal characters in these notes are random walk and percolation, they are only part of the rich theory of uniform spanning trees, self-avoiding walks, random networks, models for ferromagnetism and the spread of disease, and motion in random environments. This is an area that has attracted many fine scientists, by virtue, perhaps, of its special mixture of modelling and problem-solving. There remain many open problems. It is the experience of the author that these may be explained successfully to a graduate audience open to inspiration and provocation.

The material described here may be used for personal study and also as the bases of lecture courses of between 16 and 48 hours duration. Little is assumed about the mathematical background of the audience beyond some basic probability theory, but students should be willing to get their hands dirty if they are to profit. Care should be taken in the setting of examinations, since problems can be unexpectedly difficult. Successful examinations may be designed, and some help is offered through the inclusion of exercises at the ends of chapters. As an alternative to a conventional examination, students could be asked to deliver presentations on aspects and extensions of the topics studied.

Chapter 1 is devoted to the relationship between random walks (on graphs) and electrical networks. This leads to the Thomson and Rayleigh principles, and thence to a proof of Pólya’s theorem. In Chapter 2, we describe Wilson’s algorithm for constructing a uniform spanning tree (UST), and we discuss boundary conditions and weak limits for UST on a lattice. This chapter includes a brief introduction to Schramm–Löwner evolutions (SLEs).
Percolation theory appears first in Chapter 3, together with a short introduction to self-avoiding walks. Correlation inequalities and other general techniques are described in Chapter 4. A special feature of this part of the book is a fairly full treatment of influence and sharp-threshold theorems for product measures, and more generally for monotone measures.

We return to the basic theory of percolation in Chapter 5, including a full account of Smirnov’s proof of Cardy’s formula. This is followed in Chapter 6 by a study of the contact model on lattices and trees.

Chapter 7 begins with a proof of the equivalence of Gibbs states and Markov fields, and continues with an introduction to the Ising and Potts models. Chapter 8 contains an account of the random-cluster model. The quantum Ising model features in the next chapter, particularly through its relationship to a continuum random-cluster model and the consequent analysis using stochastic geometry.

Interacting particle systems form the basis of Chapter 10. This is a large field in its own right, and little is done here beyond introductions to the contact, voter, and exclusion models, and to the stochastic Ising model. Chapter 11 is devoted to random graphs of Erdős–Rényi type. There are accounts of the giant cluster, and of the chromatic number via an application of Hoeffding’s inequality for the tail of a martingale.

The final Chapter 12 contains one of the most notorious open problems in stochastic geometry, namely the Lorentz model (or Ehrenfest wind–tree model) on the square lattice.

This text is based in part on courses given by the author within Part 3 of the Mathematical Tripos at Cambridge University over a period of several years. They have been prepared in the present form as background material for lecture courses presented to outstanding audiences of students and professors at the 2008 PIMS–UBC Summer School in Probability and during the programme on Statistical Mechanics at the Institut Henri Poincaré, Paris, during the last quarter of 2008. The book was written in part during a visit to the Mathematics Department at UCLA (with partial support from NSF grant DMS-0301795), to which the author expresses his gratitude for the warm welcome received there, and in part during programmes at the Isaac Newton Institute and the Institut Henri Poincaré–Centre Emile Borel.

Throughout this work, pointers are included to more extensive accounts of the topics covered. The selection of references is intended to be useful rather than comprehensive.

The author thanks four artists for permission to include their work: Tom Kennedy (Figure 2.1), Oded Schramm (Figures 2.2–2.4), Raphaël Cerf (Figure 5.2), and Julien Dubédat (Figure 5.17). The section on influence has ben-
Preface

Preface to the Second Edition

The major additions in this new edition include: a proof of the connective constant of the hexagonal lattice (Theorem 3.14), an improved influence theorem for general product spaces (Theorem 4.38), a streamlined proof of exponential decay for subcritical percolation (Theorem 5.1), and a proof of the critical point of the random-cluster model on the square lattice (Theorem 8.25).

The author is grateful to students and colleagues for their suggestions for improvements. Special thanks are due to Naser Talebizadeh Sardari, Claude Bélishle, Svante Janson, and Russell Lyons. Some of the writing was done during a visit to the Statistics Department of the University of California at Berkeley, with partial support from UC Berkeley and from the Engineering and Physical Science Research Council under grant EP/I03372X/1.

July 2017
The theory of electrical networks is a fundamental tool for studying the recurrence of reversible Markov chains. The Kirchhoff laws and Thomson principle permit a neat proof of Pólya’s theorem for random walk on a $d$-dimensional grid.

1.1 Random Walks and Reversible Markov Chains

A basic knowledge of probability theory is assumed in this volume. Readers keen to acquire this are referred to [150] for an elementary introduction, and to [148] for a somewhat more advanced account. We shall generally use the letter $\mathbb{P}$ to denote a generic probability measure, with more specific notation when helpful. The expectation of a random variable $f$ will be written as either $\mathbb{P}(f)$ or $\mathbb{E}(f)$.

Only a little knowledge is assumed about graphs, and many readers will have sufficient acquaintance already. Others are advised to consult Section 1.6. Of the many books on graph theory, we mention [50].

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite or countably infinite graph, which we generally assume, for simplicity, to have neither loops nor multiple edges. If $G$ is infinite, we shall usually assume in addition that every vertex-degree is finite. A particle moves around the vertex-set $V$. Having arrived at the vertex $S_n$ at time $n$, its next position $S_{n+1}$ is chosen uniformly at random from the set of neighbours of $S_n$. The trajectory of the particle is called a symmetric random walk (SRW) on $G$.

Two of the basic questions concerning symmetric random walk are:

1. Under what conditions is the walk recurrent, in that it returns (almost surely) to its starting point?
2. How does the distance between $S_0$ and $S_n$ behave as $n \rightarrow \infty$?

The above SRW is symmetric in that the jumps are chosen uniformly from the set of available neighbours. In a more general process, we take a function $w : E \rightarrow (0, \infty)$, and we jump along the edge $e$ with probability proportional to $w_e$. 
Any reversible Markov chain\(^1\) on the set \(V\) gives rise to such a walk as follows. Let \(Z = (Z_n : n \geq 0)\) be a Markov chain on \(V\) with transition matrix \(P\), and assume that \(Z\) is reversible with respect to some positive function \(\pi : V \to (0, \infty)\), which is to say that

\[
\pi_u p_{u,v} = \pi_v p_{v,u}, \quad u, v \in V.
\]

With each distinct pair \(u, v \in V\), we associate the weight

\[
w_{u,v} = \pi_u p_{u,v},
\]

noting by (1.1) that \(w_{u,v} = w_{v,u}\). Then

\[
p_{u,v} = \frac{w_{u,v}}{W_u}, \quad u, v \in V,
\]

where

\[
W_u = \sum_{v \in V} w_{u,v}, \quad u \in V.
\]

That is, given that \(Z_n = u\), the chain jumps to a new vertex \(v\) with probability proportional to \(w_{u,v}\). This may be set in the context of a random walk on the graph with vertex-set \(V\) and edge-set \(E\) containing all \(e = (u, v)\) such that \(p_{u,v} > 0\). With edge \(e \in E\) we associate the weight \(w_e = w_{u,v}\).

In this chapter, we develop the relationship between random walks on \(G\) and electrical networks on \(G\). There are some excellent accounts of this subject area, and the reader is referred to the books of Doyle and Snell \([83]\), Lyons and Peres \([221]\), and Aldous and Fill \([19]\), amongst others. The connection between these two topics is made via the so-called ‘harmonic functions’ of the random walk.

1.4 Definition Let \(U \subseteq V\), and let \(Z\) be a Markov chain on \(V\) with transition matrix \(P\), that is reversible with respect to the positive function \(\pi\). The function \(f : V \to \mathbb{R}\) is harmonic on \(U\) (with respect to \(P\)) if

\[
f(u) = \sum_{v \in V} p_{u,v} f(v), \quad u \in U,
\]

or, equivalently, if \(f(u) = \mathbb{E}(f(Z_1) \mid Z_0 = u)\) for \(u \in U\).

From the pair \((P, \pi)\), we can construct the graph \(G\) as above, and the weight function \(w\) as in (1.2). We refer to the pair \((G, w)\) as the weighted graph associated with \((P, \pi)\). We shall speak of \(f\) as being harmonic (for \((G, w)\)) if it is harmonic with respect to \(P\).

\(^1\) Accounts of Markov chain theory are found in [148, Chap. 6] and [150, Chap. 12].
The so-called hitting probabilities are basic examples of harmonic functions for the chain $Z$. Let $U \subseteq V$, $W = V \setminus U$, and $s \in U$. For $u \in V$, let $g(u)$ be the probability that the chain, started at $u$, hits $s$ before $W$. That is, 

$$g(u) = \Pr_u(Z_n = s \text{ for some } n < T_W),$$ 

where $T_W = \inf\{n \geq 0 : Z_n \in W\}$ is the first-passage time to $W$, and $\Pr_u(\cdot) = \Pr(\cdot | Z_0 = u)$ denotes the conditional probability measure given that the chain starts at $u$.

1.5 Theorem The function $g$ is harmonic on $U \setminus \{s\}$.

Evidently, $g(s) = 1$, and $g(v) = 0$ for $v \in W$. We speak of these values of $g$ as being the ‘boundary conditions’ of the harmonic function $g$. See Exercise 1.13 for the uniqueness of harmonic functions with given boundary conditions.

Proof. This is an elementary exercise using the Markov property. For $u \not\in W \cup \{s\}$,

$$g(u) = \sum_{v \in V} p_{u,v} \Pr_u(Z_n = s \text{ for some } n < T_W | Z_1 = v)$$

$$= \sum_{v \in V} p_{u,v} g(v),$$

as required. \hfill \Box

1.2 Electrical Networks

Throughout this section, $G = (V, E)$ is a finite graph with neither loops nor multiple edges, and $w : E \to (0, \infty)$ is a weight function on the edges. We shall assume further that $G$ is connected.

We may build an electrical network with diagram $G$, in which the edge $e$ has conductance $w_e$ (or, equivalently, resistance $1/w_e$). Let $s, t \in V$ be distinct vertices termed sources, and write $S = \{s, t\}$ for the source-set. Suppose we connect a battery across the pair $s, t$. It is a physical observation that electrons flow along the wires in the network. The flow is described by the so-called Kirchhoff laws, as follows.

To each edge $e = (u, v)$, there are associated (directed) quantities $\phi_{u,v}$ and $i_{u,v}$, called the potential difference from $u$ to $v$, and the current from $u$ to $v$, respectively. These are antisymmetric,

$$\phi_{u,v} = -\phi_{v,u}, \quad i_{u,v} = -i_{v,u}.$$
1.6 Kirchhoff’s potential law  The cumulative potential difference around any cycle $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n, v_{n+1} = v_1$ of $G$ is zero, that is,

\[
\sum_{j=1}^{n} \phi_{v_j,v_{j+1}} = 0.
\]

1.8 Kirchhoff’s current law  The total current flowing out of any vertex $u \in V$ other than the source-set is zero, that is,

\[
\sum_{v \in V} i_{u,v} = 0, \quad u \neq s, t.
\]

The relationship between resistance/conductance, potential difference, and current is given by Ohm’s law.

1.10 Ohm’s law  For any edge $e = \langle u, v \rangle$,

\[
i_{u,v} = w_e \phi_{u,v}.
\]

Kirchhoff’s potential law is equivalent to the statement that there exists a function $\phi : V \to \mathbb{R}$, called a potential function, such that

\[
\phi_{u,v} = \phi(v) - \phi(u), \quad \langle u, v \rangle \in E.
\]

Since $\phi$ is determined up to an additive constant, we are free to pick the potential of any single vertex. Note our convention that current flows uphill: $i_{u,v}$ has the same sign as $\phi_{u,v} = \phi(v) - \phi(u)$.

1.11 Theorem  A potential function is harmonic on the set of all vertices other than the source-set.

Proof.  Let $U = V \setminus \{s, t\}$. By Kirchhoff’s current law and Ohm’s law,

\[
\sum_{v \in V} w_{u,v}[\phi(v) - \phi(u)] = 0, \quad u \in U,
\]

which is to say that

\[
\phi(u) = \sum_{v \in V} \frac{w_{u,v}}{W_u} \phi(v), \quad u \in U,
\]

where

\[
W_u = \sum_{v \in V} w_{u,v}.
\]

That is, $\phi$ is harmonic on $U$. \qed
1.2 Electrical Networks

We can use Ohm’s law to express potential differences in terms of currents, and thus the two Kirchhoff laws may be viewed as concerning currents only. Equation (1.7) becomes

\[
\sum_{j=1}^{n} \frac{i_{v_j,v_{j+1}}}{w_{v_j,v_{j+1}}} = 0,
\]

valid for any cycle \(v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n, v_{n+1} = v_1\). With (1.7) written thus, each law is linear in the currents, and the superposition principle follows.

1.13 Theorem (Superposition principle) If \(i^1\) and \(i^2\) are solutions of the two Kirchhoff laws with the same source-set then so is the sum \(i^1 + i^2\).

Next we introduce the concept of a ‘flow’ on a graph.

1.14 Definition Let \(s, t \in V\), \(s \neq t\). An \(s/t\)-flow \(j\) is a vector \(j = (j_{u,v} : u, v \in V, u \neq v)\), such that:

(a) \(j_{u,v} = -j_{v,u}\),
(b) \(j_{u,v} = 0\) whenever \(u \sim v\),
(c) for any \(u \neq s, t\), we have that \(\sum_{v \in V} j_{u,v} = 0\).

The vertices \(s\) and \(t\) are called the ‘source’ and ‘sink’ of an \(s/t\) flow, and we usually abbreviate ‘\(s/t\) flow’ to ‘flow’. For any flow \(j\), we write

\[J_u = \sum_{v \in V} j_{u,v}, \quad u \in V,\]

noting by (c) above that \(J_u = 0\) for \(u \neq s, t\). Thus,

\[J_s + J_t = \sum_{u \in V} J_u = \sum_{u,v \in V} j_{u,v} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{u,v \in V} (j_{u,v} + j_{v,u}) = 0.\]

Therefore, \(J_s = -J_t\), and we call \(|J_s|\) the size of the flow \(j\), denoted \(|j|\). If \(|J_s| = 1\), we call \(j\) a unit flow. We shall normally take \(J_s > 0\), in which case \(s\) is the source and \(t\) is the sink of the flow, and we say that \(j\) is a flow from \(s\) to \(t\).

Note that any solution \(i\) to the Kirchhoff laws with source-set \(\{s, t\}\) is an \(s/t\) flow.

1.15 Theorem Let \(i^1\) and \(i^2\) be two solutions of the Kirchhoff laws with the same source and sink and equal size. Then \(i^1 = i^2\).

Proof. By the superposition principle, \(j = i^1 - i^2\) satisfies the two Kirchhoff laws. Furthermore, under the flow \(j\), no current enters or leaves the system. Therefore, \(J_v = 0\) for all \(v \in V\). Suppose \(j_{u_1,u_2} > 0\) for some edge \(\langle u_1, u_2 \rangle\). By the Kirchhoff current law, there exists \(u_3\) such that
Since $|V| < \infty$, there exists by iteration a cycle $u_l, u_{l+1}, \ldots, u_m, u_{m+1} = u_l$ such that $j_{u_k, u_{k+1}} > 0$ for $k = l, l + 1, \ldots, m$. By Ohm’s law, the corresponding potential function satisfies

$$\phi(u_l) < \phi(u_{l+1}) < \cdots < \phi(u_{m+1}) = \phi(u_l),$$

a contradiction. Therefore, $j_{u, v} = 0$ for all $u, v$. □

For a given size of input current, and given source $s$ and sink $t$, there can be no more than one solution to the two Kirchhoff laws, but is there a solution at all? The answer is of course affirmative, and the unique solution can be expressed explicitly in terms of counts of spanning trees.\footnote{This was discovered in an equivalent form by Kirchhoff in 1847, [188].}

Consider first the special case when $w_e = 1$ for all $e \in E$. Let $N$ be the number of spanning trees of $G$. For any edge $\langle a, b \rangle$, let $\Pi(s, a, b, t)$ be the property of spanning trees that: the unique $s/t$ path in the tree passes along the edge $\langle a, b \rangle$ in the direction from $a$ to $b$. Let $\mathcal{N}(s, a, b, t)$ be the set of spanning trees of $G$ with the property $\Pi(s, a, b, t)$, and let $N(s, a, b, t) = |\mathcal{N}(s, a, b, t)|$.

1.16 Theorem The function

$$(1.17) \quad i_{a,b} = \frac{1}{N}[N(s, a, b, t) - N(s, b, a, t)], \quad \langle a, b \rangle \in E,$$

defines a unit flow from $s$ to $t$ satisfying the Kirchhoff laws.

Let $T$ be a spanning tree of $G$ chosen uniformly at random from the set $\mathcal{T}$ of all such spanning trees. By Theorem 1.16 and the previous discussion, the unique solution to the Kirchhoff laws with source $s$, sink $t$, and size 1 is given by

$$i_{a,b} = \mathbb{P}(T \text{ has } \Pi(s, a, b, t)) - \mathbb{P}(T \text{ has } \Pi(s, b, a, t)).$$

We shall return to uniform spanning trees in Chapter 2.

We prove Theorem 1.16 next. Exactly the same proof is valid in the case of general conductances $w_e$. In that case, we define the weight of a spanning tree $T$ as

$$w(T) = \prod_{e \in T} w_e,$$

and we set

$$(1.18) \quad N^* = \sum_{T \in \mathcal{T}} w(T), \quad N^*(s, a, b, t) = \sum_{T \text{ with } \Pi(s, a, b, t)} w(T).$$

The conclusion of Theorem 1.16 holds in this setting with

$$i_{a,b} = \frac{1}{N^*}[N^*(s, a, b, t) - N^*(s, b, a, t)], \quad \langle a, b \rangle \in E.$$
Proof of Theorem 1.16. We first check the Kirchhoff current law. In every spanning tree $T$, there exists a unique vertex $b$ such that the $s/t$ path of $T$ contains the edge $(s, b)$, and the path traverses this edge from $s$ to $b$. Therefore,

$$\sum_{b \in V} N(s, s, b, t) = N, \quad N(s, b, s, t) = 0 \text{ for } b \in V.$$ 

By (1.17),

$$\sum_{b \in V} i_{a,b} = 1,$$

and, by a similar argument, $\sum_{b \in V} i_{b,t} = 1$.

Let $T$ be a spanning tree of $G$. The contribution towards the quantity $i_{a,b}$, made by $T$, depends on the $s/t$ path $\pi$ of $T$ and equals

$$N^{-1} \text{ if } \pi \text{ passes along } (a, b) \text{ from } a \text{ to } b,$$

$$-N^{-1} \text{ if } \pi \text{ passes along } (a, b) \text{ from } b \text{ to } a,$$

$$0 \text{ if } \pi \text{ does not contain the edge } (a, b).$$

(1.19)

Let $v \in V$, $v \neq s, t$, and write $I_v = \sum_{w \in V} i_{v,w}$. If $v \in \pi$, the contribution of $T$ towards $I_v$ is $N^{-1} - N^{-1} = 0$ since $\pi$ arrives at $v$ along some edge of the form $(a, v)$ and departs from $v$ along some edge of the form $(v, b)$. If $v \notin \pi$, then $T$ contributes 0 to $I_v$. Summing over $T$, we obtain that $I_v = 0$ for all $v \neq s, t$, as required for the Kirchhoff current law.

We next check the Kirchhoff potential law. Let $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n, v_{n+1} = v_1$ be a cycle $C$ of $G$. We shall show that

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} i_{v_j,v_{j+1}} = 0,$$

(1.20)

and this will confirm (1.12), on recalling that $w_e = 1$ for all $e \in E$. It is more convenient in this context to work with ‘bushes’ than spanning trees. A bush (or, more precisely, an $s/t$ bush) is defined to be a forest on $V$ containing exactly two trees, one denoted $T_s$ and containing $s$, and the other denoted $T_t$ and containing $t$. We write $(T_s, T_t)$ for this bush. Let $e = (a, b)$, and let $B(s, a, b, t)$ be the set of bushes with $a \in T_s$ and $b \in T_t$. The sets $B(s, a, b, t)$ and $\mathcal{N}(s, a, b, t)$ are in one–one correspondence, since the addition of $e$ to $B \in B(s, a, b, t)$ creates a unique member $T = T(B)$ of $\mathcal{N}(s, a, b, t)$, and vice versa.
By (1.19) and the above, a bush \( B = (T_s, T_t) \) makes a contribution to \( i_{a,b} \) of

\[
N^{-1} \quad \text{if } B \in \mathcal{B}(s, a, b, t), \\
-N^{-1} \quad \text{if } B \in \mathcal{B}(s, b, a, t), \\
0 \quad \text{otherwise}.
\]

Therefore, \( B \) makes a contribution towards the sum in (1.20) that is equal to

\[
N^{-1}(F_+ - F_-),
\]

where \( F_+ \) (respectively, \( F_- \)) is the number of pairs \( v_j, v_{j+1} \) of \( C \), \( 1 \leq j \leq n \), with \( v_j \in T_s, v_{j+1} \in T_t \) (respectively, \( v_{j+1} \in T_s, v_j \in T_t \)). Since \( C \) is a cycle, we have \( F_+ = F_- \), whence each bush contributes 0 to the sum and (1.20) is proved.

\[\square\]

### 1.3 Flows and Energy

Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a connected graph as before. Let \( s, t \in V \) be distinct vertices, and let \( j \) be an \( s/t \) flow. With \( w_e \) the conductance of the edge \( e \), the (dissipated) energy of \( j \) is defined as

\[
E(j) = \sum_{e = (u,v) \in E} j^2_{u,v}/w_e = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{u,v \in V} j^2_{u,v}/w(e(u,v)).
\]

The following piece of linear algebra will be useful.

**1.21 Proposition** Let \( \psi : V \to \mathbb{R} \), and let \( j \) be an \( s/t \) flow. Then

\[
[\psi(t) - \psi(s)]J_s = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{u,v \in V} [\psi(v) - \psi(u)]j_{u,v}.
\]

**Proof.** By the properties of a flow,

\[
\sum_{u,v \in V} [\psi(v) - \psi(u)]j_{u,v} = \sum_{v \in V} \psi(v)(-J_v) - \sum_{u \in V} \psi(u)J_u
\]

\[
= -2[\psi(s)J_s + \psi(t)J_t] = 2[\psi(t) - \psi(s)]J_s,
\]

as required. \[\square\]

Let \( \phi \) and \( i \) satisfy the two Kirchhoff laws. We apply Proposition 1.21 with \( \psi = \phi \) and \( j = i \) to find by Ohm’s law that

(1.22)
\[
E(i) = [\phi(t) - \phi(s)]J_s.
\]
1.3 Flows and Energy

That is, the energy of the true current-flow \( i \) from \( s \) to \( t \) equals the energy dissipated in a (notional) single \( (s, t) \) edge carrying the same potential difference and total current. The conductance \( W_{\text{eff}} \) of such an edge would satisfy Ohm’s law, that is,

\[
I_s = W_{\text{eff}}[\phi(t) - \phi(s)],
\]

and we define the effective conductance \( W_{\text{eff}} \) by this equation. The effective resistance is

\[
R_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{W_{\text{eff}}},
\]

which, by (1.22) and (1.23), equals \( E(i)/I_s^2 \). We state this as a lemma.

1.25 Lemma The effective resistance \( R_{\text{eff}} \) of the network between vertices \( s \) and \( t \) equals the dissipated energy when a unit flow passes from \( s \) to \( t \).

It is useful to be able to do calculations. Electrical engineers have devised a variety of formulaic methods for calculating the effective resistance of a network, of which the simplest are the series and parallel laws, illustrated in Figure 1.1.

1.26 Series law Two resistors of size \( r_1 \) and \( r_2 \) in series may be replaced by a single resistor of size \( r_1 + r_2 \).

1.27 Parallel law Two resistors of size \( r_1 \) and \( r_2 \) in parallel may be replaced by a single resistor of size \( R \), where \( R^{-1} = r_1^{-1} + r_2^{-1} \).

A third such rule, the so-called ‘star–triangle transformation’, may be found at Exercise 1.5. The following ‘variational principle’ has many uses.

1.28 Theorem (Thomson principle) Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a connected graph and \((w_e : e \in E)\) strictly positive conductances. Let \( s, t \in V \), \( s \neq t \). Amongst all unit flows through \( G \) from \( s \) to \( t \), the flow that satisfies the Kirchhoff laws is the unique \( s/t \) flow \( i \) that minimizes the dissipated energy. That is,

\[
E(i) = \inf \{ E(j) : j \text{ a unit flow from } s \text{ to } t \}.
\]
Proof. Let \( j \) be a unit flow from source \( s \) to sink \( t \), and set \( k = j - i \), where \( i \) is the (unique) unit-flow solution to the Kirchhoff laws. Thus, \( k \) is a flow with zero size. Now, with \( e = (u, v) \) and \( r_e = 1/w_e \),

\[
2E(j) = \sum_{u,v \in V} j_{u,v}^2 r_e = \sum_{u,v \in V} (k_{u,v} + i_{u,v})^2 r_e
\]

\[
= \sum_{u,v \in V} k_{u,v}^2 r_e + \sum_{u,v \in V} i_{u,v}^2 r_e + 2 \sum_{u,v \in V} i_{u,v} k_{u,v} r_e.
\]

Let \( \phi \) be the potential function corresponding to \( i \). By Ohm’s law and Proposition 1.21,

\[
\sum_{u,v \in V} i_{u,v} k_{u,v} r_e = \sum_{u,v \in V} [\phi(v) - \phi(u)] k_{u,v}
\]

\[
= 2[\phi(t) - \phi(s)]K_s,
\]

which equals zero. Therefore, \( E(j) \geq E(i) \), with equality if and only if \( j = i \). □

The Thomson ‘variational principle’ leads to a proof of the ‘obvious’ fact that the effective resistance of a network is a non-decreasing function of the resistances of individual edges.

1.29 Theorem (Rayleigh principle) The effective resistance \( R_{\text{eff}} \) of the network is a non-decreasing function of the edge-resistances \( (r_e : e \in E) \).

It is left as an exercise to show that \( R_{\text{eff}} \) is a concave function of the vector \((r_e)\). See Exercise 1.6.

Proof. Consider two vectors \((r_e : e \in E)\) and \((r'_e : e \in E)\) of edge-resistances with \( r_e \leq r'_e \) for all \( e \). Let \( i \) and \( i' \) denote the corresponding unit flows satisfying the Kirchhoff laws. By Lemma 1.25, with \( r_e = r_{(u,v)} \),

\[
R_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{u,v \in V} i_{u,v}^2 r_e
\]

\[
\leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{u,v \in V} (i'_{u,v})^2 r_e \quad \text{by the Thomson principle}
\]

\[
\leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{u,v \in V} (i'_{u,v})^2 r'_e \quad \text{since } r_e \leq r'_e
\]

\[
= R'_{\text{eff}},
\]

as required. □
1.4 Recurrence and Resistance

Let $G = (V, E)$ be an infinite connected graph with finite vertex-degrees, and let $(w_e : e \in E)$ be (strictly positive) conductances. We shall consider a reversible Markov chain $Z = (Z_n : n \geq 0)$ on the state space $V$ with transition probabilities given by (1.3). Our purpose is to establish a condition on the pair $(G, w)$ that is equivalent to the recurrence of $Z$.

Let $0$ be a distinguished vertex of $G$, called the ‘origin’, and suppose that $Z_0 = 0$. The graph-theoretic distance between two vertices $u, v$ is the number of edges in a shortest path between $u$ and $v$, denoted $\delta(u, v)$. Let $\Lambda_n = \{u \in V : \delta(0, u) \leq n\}$, $\partial\Lambda_n = \Lambda_n \setminus \Lambda_{n-1} = \{u \in V : \delta(0, u) = n\}$. We think of $\partial\Lambda_n$ as the ‘boundary’ of $\Lambda_n$. Let $G_n$ be the subgraph of $G$ induced by the vertex-set $\Lambda_n$. We let $G_n$ be the graph obtained from $G_n$ by identifying the vertices in $\partial\Lambda_n$ as a single composite vertex denoted $I_n$. The resulting finite graph $G_n$ may be considered as an electrical network with sources $0$ and $I_n$. Let $R_{\text{eff}}(n)$ be the effective resistance of this network. The graph $G_n$ may be obtained from $G_{n+1}$ by identifying all vertices lying in $\partial\Lambda_n \cup \{I_{n+1}\}$, and thus, by the Rayleigh principle, $R_{\text{eff}}(n)$ is non-decreasing in $n$. Therefore, the limit

$$R_{\text{eff}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} R_{\text{eff}}(n)$$

exists.

1.30 Theorem The probability of ultimate return by $Z$ to the origin $0$ is given by

$$\mathbb{P}_0(Z_n = 0 \text{ for some } n \geq 1) = 1 - \frac{1}{W_0 R_{\text{eff}}}$$

where $W_0 = \sum_{u : v \sim 0} w(u, v)$.

The return probability is non-decreasing as $W_0 R_{\text{eff}}$ increases. By the Rayleigh principle, this can be achieved, for example, by removing an edge of $E$ that is not incident to $0$. The removal of an edge incident to $0$ can have the opposite effect, since $W_0$ decreases while $R_{\text{eff}}$ increases (see Figure 1.2).

A $0/\infty$ flow is a vector $j = (j_{u,v} : u, v \in V, u \neq v)$ satisfying (1.14)(a), (b) and also (c) for all $u \neq 0$. That is, it has source $0$ but no sink.

1.31 Corollary

(a) The chain $Z$ is recurrent if and only if $R_{\text{eff}} = \infty$.

(b) The chain $Z$ is transient if and only if there exists a non-zero $0/\infty$ flow $j$ on $G$ whose energy $E(j) = \sum_e j_e^2 / w_e$ satisfies $E(j) < \infty$. 

It is left as an exercise to extend this to countable graphs $G$ without the assumption of finite vertex-degrees.

Proof of Theorem 1.30. Let

$$g_n(v) = \mathbb{P}_v(Z \text{ hits } \partial \Lambda_n \text{ before } 0), \quad v \in \Lambda_n.$$  

By Theorem 1.5 and Exercise 1.13, $g_n$ is the unique harmonic function on $G_n$ with boundary conditions

$$g_n(0) = 0, \quad g_n(v) = 1 \text{ for } v \in \partial \Lambda_n.$$  

Therefore, $g_n$ is a potential function on $G_n$ viewed as an electrical network with source 0 and sink $I_n$.

By conditioning on the first step of the walk, and using Ohm’s law,

$$\mathbb{P}_0(Z \text{ returns to 0 before reaching } \partial \Lambda_n) = 1 - \sum_{v: v \sim 0} \rho_{0,v} g_n(v)$$

$$= 1 - \sum_{v: v \sim 0} \frac{w_{0,v}}{W_0} [g_n(v) - g_n(0)]$$

$$= 1 - \frac{|i(n)|}{W_0},$$

where $i(n)$ is the flow of currents in $G_n$, and $|i(n)|$ is its size. By (1.23) and (1.24), $|i(n)| = 1/R_{\text{eff}}(n)$. The theorem is proved on noting that

$$\mathbb{P}_0(Z \text{ returns to 0 before reaching } \partial \Lambda_n) \to \mathbb{P}_0(Z_n = 0 \text{ for some } n \geq 1)$$
as $n \to \infty$, by the continuity of probability measures. \dagger

Proof of Corollary 1.31. Part (a) is an immediate consequence of Theorem 1.30, and we turn to part (b). By Lemma 1.25, there exists a unit flow $i(n)$ in $\mathcal{G}_n$ with source 0 and sink $I_n$, and with energy $E(i(n)) = R_{\text{eff}}(n)$. Let $i$ be a non-zero $0/\infty$ flow; by dividing by its size, we may take $i$ to be a unit flow. When restricted to the edge-set $E_n$ of $\mathcal{G}_n$, $i$ forms a unit flow from 0 to $I_n$. By the Thomson principle, Theorem 1.28,

$$E(i(n)) \leq \sum_{e \in E_n} i_e^2/w_e \leq E(i),$$

whence

$$E(i) \geq \lim_{n \to \infty} E(i(n)) = R_{\text{eff}}.$$  

Therefore, by part (a), $E(i) = \infty$ if the chain is recurrent.

Suppose, conversely, that the chain is transient. By diagonal selection, there exists a subsequence $(n_k)$ along which $i(n_k)$ converges to some limit $j$ (that is, $i(n_k)_e \to j_e$ for every $e \in E$). Since each $i(n_k)$ is a unit flow from the origin, $j$ is a unit 0/∞ flow. Now,

$$E(i(n_k)) = \sum_{e \in E} i(n_k)_e^2/w_e \geq \sum_{e \in E_m} i(n_k)_e^2/w_e \to \sum_{e \in E_m} j_e^2/w_e \text{ as } k \to \infty$$

$$\to E(j) \text{ as } m \to \infty.$$ 

Therefore,

$$E(j) \leq \lim_{k \to \infty} R_{\text{eff}}(n_k) = R_{\text{eff}} < \infty,$$

and $j$ is a flow with the required properties. \dagger

---

3 Diagonal selection: Let $(x_m(n) : m, n \geq 1)$ be a bounded collection of reals. There exists an increasing sequence $n_1, n_2, \ldots$ of positive integers such that, for every $m$, the limit $\lim_{k \to \infty} x_m(n_k)$ exists.
1.5 Pólya’s Theorem

The $d$-dimensional cubic lattice $\mathbb{L}^d$ has vertex-set $\mathbb{Z}^d$ and edges between any two vertices that are Euclidean distance one apart. The following celebrated theorem can be proved by estimating effective resistances.\(^4\)

1.32 Pólya’s theorem (242) Symmetric random walk on the lattice $\mathbb{L}^d$ in $d$ dimensions is recurrent if $d = 1, 2$ and transient if $d \geq 3$.

The advantage of the following proof of Pólya’s theorem over more standard arguments is its robustness with respect to the underlying graph. Similar arguments are valid for graphs that are, in broad terms, comparable to $\mathbb{L}^d$ when viewed as electrical networks.

Proof. For simplicity, and with only little loss of generality (see Exercise 1.10), we shall concentrate on the cases $d = 2, 3$. Let $d = 2$, for which case we aim to show that $R_{\text{eff}} = \infty$. This is achieved by finding an infinite lower bound for $R_{\text{eff}}$, and lower bounds can be obtained by decreasing individual edge-resistances. The identification of two vertices of a network amounts to the addition of a resistor with 0 resistance, and, by the Rayleigh principle, the effective resistance of the network can only decrease.

\[ R_{\text{eff}}(n) \geq \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \frac{1}{8i - 4}, \]

whence $R_{\text{eff}}(n) \geq c \log n \to \infty$ as $n \to \infty$.

Suppose now that $d = 3$. There are at least two ways of proceeding. We shall present one such route, taken from [222], and we shall then sketch

\[^4\] An amusing story is told in [243] about Pólya’s inspiration for this theorem.
the second, which has its inspiration in [83]. By Corollary 1.31, it suffices to construct a non-zero $0/\infty$ flow with finite energy. Let $S$ be the surface of the unit sphere of $\mathbb{R}^3$ with centre at the origin 0. Take $u \in \mathbb{Z}^3$, $u \neq 0$, and position a unit cube $C_u$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ with centre at $u$ and edges parallel to the axes (see Figure 1.4). For each neighbour $v$ of $u$, the directed edge $\langle u, v \rangle$ intersects a unique face, denoted $F_{u,v}$, of $C_u$. For $x \in \mathbb{R}^3$, $x \neq 0$, let $\Pi(x)$ be the point of intersection with $S$ of the straight line segment from 0 to $x$. Let $j_{u,v}$ be equal in absolute value to the surface measure of $\Pi(F_{u,v})$. The sign of $j_{u,v}$ is taken to be positive if and only if the scalar product of $\frac{1}{2}(u+v)$ and $v-u$, viewed as vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$, is positive. Let $j_{v,u} = -j_{u,v}$. We claim that $j$ is a $0/\infty$ flow on $\mathbb{L}^3$. Parts (a) and (b) of Definition 1.14 follow by construction, and it remains to check (c).

The surface of $C_u$ has projection $\Pi(C_u)$ on $S$. The sum $J_u = \sum_{v \sim u} j_{u,v}$ is the integral over $x \in \Pi(C_u)$, with respect to surface measure, of the number of neighbours $v$ of $u$ (counted with sign) for which $x \in \Pi(F_{u,v})$. Almost every $x \in \Pi(C_u)$ is counted twice, with signs $+$ and $-$. Thus the integral equals 0, whence $J_u = 0$ for all $u \neq 0$.

It is easily seen that $J_0 \neq 0$, so $j$ is a non-zero flow. Next, we estimate its energy. By an elementary geometric consideration, there exist $c_l < \infty$
such that:

(i) \(|j_{u,v}| \leq c_1/|u|^2\) for \(u \neq 0\), where \(|u| = \delta(0,u)\) is the length of a shortest path from 0 to \(u\),
(ii) the number of \(u \in \mathbb{Z}^3\) with \(|u| = n\) is smaller than \(c_2n^2\).

It follows that

\[
E(j) \leq \sum_{u \neq 0} \sum_{v \sim u} j_{u,v}^2 \leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 6c_2n^2 \left( \frac{c_1}{n^2} \right)^2 < \infty,
\]

as required.

Another way of showing \(R_{\text{eff}} < \infty\) when \(d = 3\) is to find a finite upper bound for \(R_{\text{eff}}\). Upper bounds can be obtained either by increasing individual edge-resistances or by removing edges. The idea is to embed a tree with finite resistance in \(L^3\). Consider a binary tree \(T_\rho\) in which each connection between generation \(n-1\) and generation \(n\) has resistance \(\rho^n\), where \(\rho > 0\). It is an easy exercise using the series/parallel laws that the effective resistance between the root and infinity is

\[
R_{\text{eff}}(T_\rho) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{\rho}{2} \right)^n,
\]

which we make finite by choosing \(\rho < 2\). We proceed to embed \(T_\rho\) in \(\mathbb{Z}^3\) in such a way that a connection between generation \(n-1\) and generation \(n\) is a lattice-path with length of order \(\rho^n\). There are \(2^n\) vertices of \(T_\rho\) in generation \(n\), and their lattice-distance from 0 is of order \(\sum_{k=1}^{n} \rho^k\), that is, order \(\rho^n\). The surface of the \(k\)-ball in \(\mathbb{R}^3\) is of order \(k^2\), and thus it is necessary that

\[
c(\rho^n)^2 \geq 2^n,
\]

which is to say that \(\rho > \sqrt{2}\).

Let \(\sqrt{2} < \rho < 2\). It is now fairly simple to check that \(R_{\text{eff}} < c'R_{\text{eff}}(T_\rho)\). This method was used in [138] to prove the transience of the infinite open cluster of percolation on \(L^3\). It is related to, but different from, the tree embeddings of [83].

### 1.6 Graph Theory

A graph \(G = (V, E)\) comprises a finite or countably infinite vertex-set \(V\) and an associated edge-set \(E\). Each element of \(E\) is an unordered pair \(u, v\) of vertices, written \((u, v)\). Two edges with the same vertex-pairs are said to be in parallel, and edges of the form \((u, u)\) are called loops. The graphs discussed in this text will generally contain neither parallel edges nor loops,
and this is assumed henceforth. Two vertices \( u, v \) are said to be joined (or connected) by an edge if \( (u, v) \in E \). In this case, \( u \) and \( v \) are the endvertices of \( e \), and we write \( u \sim v \) and say that \( u \) is adjacent to \( v \). An edge \( e \) is said to be incident to its endvertices. The number of edges incident to vertex \( u \) is called the degree of \( u \), denoted \( \deg(u) \). The negation of the relation \( \sim \) is written \( \not\sim \).

Since the edges are unordered pairs, we call such a graph undirected (or unoriented). If some or all of its edges are ordered pairs, written \([u, v]\), the graph is called directed (or oriented).

A path of \( G \) is defined as an alternating sequence \( v_0, e_1, v_1, e_2, \ldots, v_n \) of distinct vertices \( v_i \) and edges \( e_i = (v_i, v_{i+1}) \). Such a path has length \( n \); it is said to connect \( v_0 \) to \( v_n \), and is called a \( v_0/v_n \) path. A cycle or circuit of \( G \) is an alternating sequence \( v_0, e_0, v_1, \ldots, e_{n−1}, v_n, v_0 \) of vertices and edges such that \( v_0, e_0, \ldots, e_{n−1}, v_n \) is a path and \( e_n = (v_n, v_0) \). Such a cycle has length \( n + 1 \). The (graph-theoretic) distance \( \delta(u, v) \) from \( u \) to \( v \) is defined to be the number of edges in a shortest path of \( G \) from \( u \) to \( v \).

We write \( u \rightleftarrows v \) if there exists a path connecting \( u \) and \( v \). The relation \( \rightleftarrows \) is an equivalence relation, and its equivalence classes are called components (or clusters) of \( G \). The components of \( G \) may be considered either as sets of vertices or as graphs. The graph \( G \) is connected if it has a unique component. It is a forest if it contains no cycle, and a tree if in addition it is connected.

A subgraph of the graph \( G = (V, E) \) is a graph \( H = (W, F) \) with \( W \subseteq V \) and \( F \subseteq E \). The subgraph \( H \) is a spanning tree of \( G \) if \( V = W \) and \( H \) is a tree. A subset \( U \subseteq V \) of the vertex-set of \( G \) has boundary \( \partial U = \{u \in U : u \sim v \text{ for some } v \in V \setminus U\} \).

Lattice-graphs are the most important type of graph for applications in areas such as statistical mechanics. Lattices are sometimes termed ‘crystalline’ since they are periodic structures of crystal-like units. A general definition of a lattice may confuse readers more than help them, and instead we describe some principal examples.

Let \( d \) be a positive integer. We write \( \mathbb{Z} = \{\ldots, -1, 0, 1, \ldots\} \) for the set of all integers, and \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) for the set of all \( d \)-vectors \( v = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_d) \) with integral coordinates. For \( v \in \mathbb{Z}^d \), we generally write \( v_i \) for the \( i \)th coordinate of \( v \), and we define

\[
\delta(u, v) = \sum_{i=1}^{d} |u_i - v_i|.
\]

The origin of \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) is denoted by \( 0 \). We turn \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) into a graph, called the \( d \)-dimensional (hyper)cubic lattice, by adding edges between all pairs \( u, v \) of points of \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) with \( \delta(u, v) = 1 \). This graph is denoted as \( L^d \), and its edge-set
as $\mathbb{Z}^d$; thus, $L^d = (\mathbb{Z}^d, E^d)$. We often think of $L^d$ as a graph embedded in $\mathbb{R}^d$, the edges being straight line-segments between their endvertices. The edge-set $E_V$ of $V \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^d$ is the set of all edges of $L^d$ both of whose endvertices lie in $V$.

The two-dimensional cubic lattice $L^2$ is called the square lattice and is illustrated in Figure 1.5. Two other lattices in two dimensions that feature in this text are drawn there also.

1.7 Exercises

1.1 Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite connected graph with unit edge-weights. Show that the effective resistance between two distinct vertices $s, t$ of the associated electrical network may be expressed as $B/N$, where $B$ is the number of $s/t$ bushes of $G$, and $N$ is the number of its spanning trees. (See the proof of Theorem 1.16 for an explanation of the term ‘bush’.)

Extend this result to general edge-weights $w_e > 0$.

1.2 Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite connected graph with strictly positive edge-weights $(w_e : e \in E)$, and let $N^*$ be given by (1.18). Show that

$$i_{a,b} = \frac{1}{N^*} \left[ N^*(s, a, b, t) - N^*(s, b, a, t) \right]$$

constitutes a unit flow through $G$ from $s$ to $t$ satisfying Kirchhoff’s laws.

1.3 (continuation) Let $G = (V, E)$ be finite and connected with given conductances $(w_e : e \in E)$, and let $(x_v : v \in V)$ be reals satisfying $\sum_v x_v = 0$. To $G$ we append a notional vertex labelled $\infty$, and we join $\infty$ to each $v \in V$. Show that there exists a solution $i$ to Kirchhoff’s laws on the expanded graph, viewed as two laws concerning current flow, such that the current along the edge $\langle v, \infty \rangle$ is $x_v$. 
1.4 Prove the series and parallel laws for electrical networks.

1.5 Star–triangle transformation. The triangle $T$ is replaced by a star $S$ in an electrical network, as illustrated in Figure 1.6. Explain the sense in which the two networks are the same when the resistances are chosen such that $r_j r'_j = c$ for $j = 1, 2, 3$ and some $c = c(r_1, r_2, r_3)$ to be determined.

Note. The star–triangle transformation and its derivatives find many important applications in probability theory and mathematical physics. The transformation was discovered first in 1899, in the above form, by Kennelly [185].

1.6 Let $R(r)$ be the effective resistance between two given vertices of a finite network with edge-resistances $r = (r(e) : e \in E)$. Show that $R$ is concave, in that

$$\frac{1}{2}[R(r_1) + R(r_2)] \leq R\left(\frac{1}{2}(r_1 + r_2)\right).$$

1.7 Maximum principle. Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite or infinite network with finite vertex-degrees and associated conductances $(w_e : e \in E)$. Let $H = (W, F)$ be a connected subgraph of $G$, and write

$$\Delta W = \{v \in V \setminus W : v \sim w \text{ for some } w \in W\}$$

for the ‘external boundary’ of $W$. Let $\phi : V \rightarrow [0, \infty)$ be harmonic on the set $W$, and suppose the supremum of $\phi$ on $W$ is achieved and satisfies

$$\sup_{w \in W} \phi(w) = \|\phi\|_\infty := \sup_{v \in V} \phi(v).$$

Show that $\phi$ is constant on $W \cup \Delta W$, where it takes the value $\|\phi\|_\infty$.

1.8 Let $G$ be an infinite connected graph, and let $\partial \Lambda_n$ be the set of vertices at distance $n$ from the vertex labelled 0. With $E_n$ the number of edges joining $\partial \Lambda_n$ to $\partial \Lambda_{n+1}$, show that a random walk on $G$ is recurrent if $\sum_n E_n^{-1} = \infty$.

1.9 (continuation) Assume that $G$ is ‘spherically symmetric’ in that: for all $n$, for all $x, y \in \partial \Lambda_n$, there exists a graph automorphism that fixes 0 and maps $x$ to $y$. Show that a random walk on $G$ is transient if $\sum_n E_n^{-1} < \infty$.

1.10 Let $G$ be a countably infinite connected graph with finite vertex-degrees and with a nominated vertex 0. Let $H$ be a connected subgraph of $G$ containing

![Figure 1.6](image-url) Edge-resistances in the star–triangle transformation. The triangle $T$ on the left is replaced by the star $S$ on the right, and the corresponding resistances are denoted as marked.
0. Show that a simple random walk, starting at 0, is recurrent on $H$ whenever it is recurrent on $G$, but that the converse need not hold.

1.11 Let $G$ be a finite connected network with strictly positive conductances $(w_e : e \in E)$, and let $a, b$ be distinct vertices. Let $i_{x,y}$ denote the current along an edge from $x$ to $y$ when a unit current flows from the source vertex $a$ to the sink vertex $b$. Run the associated Markov chain, starting at $a$, until it reaches $b$ for the first time, and let $u_{x,y}$ be the mean of the total number of transitions of the chain between $x$ and $y$. Transitions from $x$ to $y$ count as positive, and from $y$ to $x$ as negative, so that $u_{x,y}$ is the mean number of transitions from $x$ to $y$, minus the mean number from $y$ to $x$. Show that $i_{x,y} = u_{x,y}$.

1.12 [83] Let $G$ be an infinite connected graph with bounded vertex-degrees. Let $k \geq 1$, and let $G_k$ be obtained from $G$ by adding an edge between any pair of vertices that are non-adjacent (in $G$) but separated by a graph-theoretic distance $k$ or less. (The graph $G_k$ is sometimes called the $k$-fuzz of $G$.) Show that a simple random walk is recurrent on $G_k$ if and only if it is recurrent on $G$.

1.13 Uniqueness theorem. Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite or infinite connected network with finite vertex-degrees, and let $W$ be a proper subset of $V$. Let $f, g : V \to \mathbb{R}$ be harmonic on $W$ and equal on $V \setminus W$. Show, by the maximum principle or otherwise, that $f \equiv g$. 
The uniform spanning tree (UST) measure has a property of negative association. A similar property is conjectured for uniform forest and uniform connected subgraph. Wilson’s algorithm uses loop-erased random walk (LERW) to construct a UST. The UST on the $d$-dimensional cubic lattice may be defined as the weak limit of the finite-volume measures. When $d = 2$, the corresponding LERW (respectively, UST) converges in a certain manner to the Schramm-Löwner evolution process SLE$_2$ (respectively, SLE$_8$) as the grid size approaches zero.

2.1 Definition

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite connected graph, and write $\mathcal{T}$ for the set of all spanning trees of $G$. Let $T$ be picked uniformly at random from $\mathcal{T}$. We call $T$ a uniform spanning tree, abbreviated to UST. It is governed by the uniform measure

$$\mathbb{P}(T = t) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{T}|}, \quad t \in \mathcal{T}.$$  

We may think of $T$ either as a random graph or as a random subset of $E$. In the latter case, $T$ may be thought of as a random element of the set $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$ of 0/1 vectors indexed by $E$.

It is fundamental that UST has a property of negative association. In its simplest form, this property may be expressed as follows.

2.1 Theorem For $f, g \in E$, $f \neq g$,

$$(2.2) \quad \mathbb{P}(f \in T \mid g \in T) \leq \mathbb{P}(f \in T).$$

The proof makes striking use of the Thomson principle via the monotonicity of effective resistance. We obtain the following by a mild extension of the proof. For $B \subseteq E$ and $g \in E \setminus B$,

$$(2.3) \quad \mathbb{P}(B \subseteq T \mid g \in T) \leq \mathbb{P}(B \subseteq T).$$
Proof. Consider $G$ as an electrical network in which each edge has resistance 1. Denote by $i = (i_{v,w} : v, w \in V)$ the current flow in $G$ when a unit current enters at $x$ and leaves at $y$, and let $\phi$ be the corresponding potential function. Let $e = (x, y)$. By Theorem 1.16,

$$i_{x,y} = \frac{N(x, x, y, y)}{N},$$

where $N(x, x, y, y)$ is the number of spanning trees of $G$ with the property that the unique $x/y$ path passes along the edge $e$ in the direction from $x$ to $y$, and $N = |T|$. Therefore, $i_{x,y} = \mathbb{P}(e \in T)$. Since $(x, y)$ has unit resistance, $i_{x,y}$ equals the potential difference $\phi(y) - \phi(x)$. By (1.22),

$$(2.4)\quad \mathbb{P}(e \in T) = R^G_{\text{eff}}(x, y),$$

the effective resistance of $G$ between $x$ and $y$.

Let $f, g$ be distinct edges, and write $G.g$ for the graph obtained from $G$ by contracting $g$ to a single vertex. Contraction provides a one–one correspondence between spanning trees of $G$ containing $g$, and spanning trees of $G.g$. Therefore, $\mathbb{P}(f \in T \mid g \in T)$ is simply the proportion of spanning trees of $G.g$ containing $f$. By (2.4),

$$\mathbb{P}(f \in T \mid g \in T) = R^{G.g}_{\text{eff}}(x, y).$$

By the Rayleigh principle, Theorem 1.29,

$$R^{G.g}_{\text{eff}}(x, y) \leq R^G_{\text{eff}}(x, y),$$

and the theorem is proved. $\square$

Theorem 2.1 was extended by Feder and Mihail [104] to more general ‘increasing’ events. Let $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$, the set of 0/1 vectors indexed by $E$, and denote by $\omega = (\omega(e) : e \in E)$ a typical member of $\Omega$. The partial order $\leq$ on $\Omega$ is the usual pointwise ordering: $\omega \leq \omega'$ if $\omega(e) \leq \omega'(e)$ for all $e \in E$. A subset $A \subseteq \Omega$ is called increasing if: for all $\omega, \omega' \in \Omega$ satisfying $\omega \leq \omega'$, we have that $\omega' \in A$ whenever $\omega \in A$.

For $A \subseteq \Omega$ and $F \subseteq E$, we say that $A$ is defined on $F$ if $A = C \times \{0, 1\}^{E \setminus F}$ for some $C \subseteq \{0, 1\}^F$. We refer to $F$ as the ‘base’ of the event $A$. If $A$ is defined on $F$, we need only know the $\omega(e), e \in F$, in order to determine whether $A$ occurs.

2.5 Theorem [104] Let $F \subseteq E$, and let $A$ and $B$ be increasing subsets of $\Omega$ such that $A$ is defined on $F$, and $B$ is defined on $E \setminus F$. Then

$$\mathbb{P}(T \in A \mid T \in B) \leq \mathbb{P}(T \in A).$$
Theorem 2.1 is retrieved by setting $A = \{ \omega \in \Omega : \omega(f) = 1 \}$ and $B = \{ \omega \in \Omega : \omega(g) = 1 \}$. The original proof of Theorem 2.5 is set in the context of matroid theory, and a further proof may be found in [37].

Whereas ‘positive association’ is well developed and understood as a technique for studying interacting systems, ‘negative association’ possesses some inherent difficulties. See [240] for further discussion.

### 2.2 Wilson’s Algorithm

There are various ways to generate a uniform spanning tree (UST) of the graph $G$. The following method, called Wilson’s algorithm [286], highlights the close relationship between UST and random walk.

Take $G = (V, E)$ to be a finite connected graph. We shall perform random walks on $G$ subject to a process of so-called loop-erasure that we describe next.\(^1\) Let $W = (w_0, w_1, \ldots, w_k)$ be a walk on $G$, which is to say that $w_i \sim w_{i+1}$ for $0 \leq i < k$ (note that the walk may have self-intersections). From $W$, we construct a non-self-intersecting sub-walk, denoted $\text{LE}(W)$, by the removal of loops as they occur. More precisely, let $J = \min\{ j \geq 1 : w_j = w_i \text{ for some } i < j \}$.

If such a $J$ exists, let $I$ be the unique value of $i$ satisfying $i < J$ and $w_i = w_J$. Let $W' = (w_0, w_1, \ldots, w_I, w_{J+1}, \ldots, w_k)$ be the sub-walk of $W$ obtained through the removal of the cycle $(w_I, w_{I+1}, \ldots, w_J)$. This operation of single-loop removal is iterated until no loops remain, and we denote by $\text{LE}(W)$ the surviving path from $w_0$ to $w_k$.

Wilson’s algorithm is presented next. First, let $V = (v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n)$ be an arbitrary but fixed ordering of the vertex-set.

1. Perform a random walk on $G$ beginning at $v_{i_1}$ with $i_1 = 1$, and stopped at the first time it visits $v_n$. The outcome is a walk $W_1 = (u_1 = v_{i_1}, u_2, \ldots, u_r = v_n)$.
2. From $W_1$, we obtain the loop-erased path $\text{LE}(W_1)$, joining $v_1$ to $v_n$ and containing no loops.\(^2\) Set $T_1 = \text{LE}(W_1)$.
3. Find the earliest vertex, $v_{i_2}$, say, of $V$ not belonging to $T_1$, and perform a random walk beginning at $v_{i_2}$, and stopped at the first moment it hits some vertex of $T_1$. Call the resulting walk $W_2$, and loop-erase $W_2$ to obtain some non-self-intersecting path $\text{LE}(W_2)$ from $v_{i_2}$ to $T_1$. Set $T_2 = T_1 \cup \text{LE}(W_2)$, the union of two edge-disjoint paths.

\(^1\) Graph theorists might prefer to call this cycle-erasure.

\(^2\) If we run a random walk and then erase its loops, the outcome is called a loop-erased random walk, often abbreviated to LERW.
4. Iterate the above process, by running and loop-erasing a random walk from a new vertex \( v_{i+1} \notin T_j \) until it strikes the set \( T_j \) previously constructed.

5. Stop when all vertices have been visited, and set \( T = T_N \), the final value of the \( T_j \).

Each stage of the above algorithm results in a sub-tree of \( G \). The final such sub-tree \( T \) is spanning since, by assumption, it contains every vertex of \( V \).

2.6 Theorem [286] The graph \( T \) is a uniform spanning tree of \( G \).

Note that the initial ordering of \( V \) plays no role in the law of \( T \).

There are of course other ways of generating a UST on \( G \), and we mention the well known Aldous–Broder algorithm, [18, 60], that proceeds as follows. Choose a vertex \( r \) of \( G \) and perform a random walk on \( G \), starting at \( r \), until every vertex has been visited. For \( w \in V \), \( w \neq r \), let \( [v, w] \) be the directed edge that was traversed by the walk on its first visit to \( w \). The edges thus obtained, when undirected, constitute a uniform spanning tree. The Aldous–Broder algorithm is closely related to Wilson’s algorithm via a certain reversal of time; see [245] and Exercise 2.1.

We present the proof of Theorem 2.6 in a more general setting than that of UST. Heavy use will be made of [221] and the concept of ‘cycle popping’ introduced in the original paper [286] of David Wilson. Of considerable interest is an analysis of the run-time of Wilson’s algorithm; see [245]. A different approach to Wilson’s algorithm is explained in [192, 199].

Consider an irreducible Markov chain with transition matrix \( P \) on a finite state space \( S \). With this chain we may associate a directed graph \( H = (S, F) \) much as in Section 1.1. The graph \( H \) has vertex-set \( S \) and edge-set \( F = \{[x, y] : p_{x,y} > 0 \} \). We refer to \( x \) (respectively, \( y \)) as the head (respectively, tail) of the (directed) edge \( e = [x, y] \), written \( x = e_-, y = e_+ \). Since the chain is irreducible, \( H \) is connected in the sense that, for all \( x, y \in S \), there exists a directed path from \( x \) to \( y \).

Let \( r \in S \) be a distinguished vertex called the root. A spanning arborescence of \( H \) with root \( r \) is a subgraph \( A \) with the following properties:

(a) each vertex of \( S \) apart from \( r \) is the head of a unique edge of \( A \),
(b) the root \( r \) is the head of no edge of \( A \),
(c) \( A \) possesses no (directed) cycles.

Let \( \Sigma_r \) be the set of all spanning arborescences with root \( r \), and \( \Sigma = \bigcup_{r \in S} \Sigma_r \). A spanning arborescence is specified by its edge-set.

It is easily seen that there exists a unique (directed) path in the spanning arborescence \( A \) joining any given vertex \( x \) to the root. To the spanning
arborescence $A$ we assign the weight
\begin{equation}
\alpha(A) = \prod_{e \in A} p_{e,x,e+y},
\end{equation}
and we shall describe a randomized algorithm that selects a given spanning arborescence $A$ with probability proportional to $\alpha(A)$. Since $\alpha(A)$ contains no diagonal element $p_{z,z}$ of $P$, and each $x (\neq r)$ is the head of a unique edge of $A$, we may assume that $p_{z,z} = 0$ for all $z \in S$.

Let $r \in S$. Wilson’s algorithm is easily adapted in order to sample from $\Sigma_r$. Let $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_{n-1}$ be an ordering of $S \setminus \{r\}$.

1. Let $\sigma_0 = \{r\}$.
2. Sample a Markov chain with transition matrix $P$ beginning at $v_i$ with $i_1 = 1$, and stopped at the first time it hits $\sigma_0$. The outcome is a (directed) walk $W_1 = (u_1 = v_1, u_2, \ldots, u_k, r)$. From $W_1$, we obtain the loop-erased path $\sigma_1 = \text{LE}(W_1)$, joining $v_1$ to $r$ and containing no loops.
3. Find the earliest vertex, $v_{i_2}$ say, of $S$ not belonging to $\sigma_1$, and sample a Markov chain beginning at $v_{i_2}$, and stopped at the first moment it hits some vertex of $\sigma_1$. Call the resulting walk $W_2$, and loop-erase it to obtain some non-self-intersecting path $\text{LE}(W_2)$ from $v_{i_2}$ to $\sigma_1$. Set $\sigma_2 = \sigma_1 \cup \text{LE}(W_2)$, the union of $\sigma_1$ and the directed path $\text{LE}(W_2)$.
4. Iterate the above process by loop-erasing the trajectory of a Markov chain starting at a new vertex $v_{i_j+1} \in \sigma_j$ until it strikes the graph $\sigma_j$ previously constructed.
5. Stop when all vertices have been visited, and set $\sigma = \sigma_N$, the final value of the $\sigma_j$.

2.8 Theorem [286] The graph $\sigma$ is a spanning arborescence with root $r$, and
\[ P(\sigma = A) \propto \alpha(A), \quad A \in \Sigma_r.\]

Since $S$ is finite and the chain is assumed irreducible, there exists a unique stationary distribution $\pi = (\pi_x : x \in S)$. Suppose that the chain is reversible with respect to $\pi$ in that
\[ \pi_x p_{x,y} = \pi_y p_{y,x}, \quad x, y \in S.\]
As in Section 1.1, to each edge $e = [x, y]$ we may allocate the weight $w(e) = \pi_x p_{x,y}$, noting that the edges $[x, y]$ and $[y, x]$ have equal weight. Let $A$ be a spanning arborescence with root $r$. Since each vertex of $H$ other than the root is the head of a unique edge of the spanning arborescence $A$, we have by (2.7) that
\[ \alpha(A) = \frac{\prod_{e \in A} \pi_{x-y} p_{x-y} s_{x-y}}{\prod_{x \in S, x \neq r} \pi_x} = CW(A), \quad A \in \Sigma_r,\]
where $C = C_r$ and

$$W(A) = \prod_{e \in A} w(e).$$

Therefore, for a given root $r$, the weight functions $\alpha$ and $W$ generate the same probability measure on $\Sigma_r$.

We shall see that the UST measure on $G = (V, E)$ arises through a consideration of the random walk on $G$. This has transition matrix given by

$$p_{x,y} = \begin{cases} 
1/\deg(x) & \text{if } x \sim y, \\
0 & \text{otherwise}, 
\end{cases}$$

and stationary distribution

$$\pi_x = \frac{\deg(x)}{2|E|}, \quad x \in V.$$

Let $H = (V, F)$ be the graph obtained from $G$ by replacing each edge by a pair of edges with opposite orientations. Now, $w(e) = \pi_e p_{e^- e^+}$ is independent of $e \in F$, so that $W(A)$ is a constant function. By Theorem 2.8 and the observation following (2.9), Wilson’s algorithm generates a uniform random spanning arborescence $\sigma$ of $H$, with given root. When we neglect the orientations of the edges of $\sigma$, and also the identity of the root, $\sigma$ is transformed into a uniform spanning tree of $G$.

The remainder of this section is devoted to a proof of Theorem 2.8, and it uses the beautiful construction presented in [286]. We prepare for the proof as follows.

For each $x \in S \setminus \{r\}$, we provide ourselves in advance with an infinite set of ‘moves’ from $x$. Let $M_x(i), i \geq 1, x \in S \setminus \{r\}$, be independent random variables with laws

$$\mathbb{P}(M_x(i) = y) = p_{x,y}, \quad y \in S.$$

For each $x$, we organize the $M_x(i)$ into an ordered ‘stack’. We think of an element $M_x(i)$ as having ‘colour’ $i$, where the colours indexed by $i$ are distinct. The root $r$ is given an empty stack. At stages of the following construction, we shall discard elements of stacks in order of increasing colour, and we shall call the set of uppermost elements of the stacks the ‘visible moves’.

The visible moves generate a directed subgraph of $H$ termed the ‘visible graph’. There will generally be directed cycles in the visible graph, and we shall remove such cycles one by one. Whenever we decide to remove a cycle, the corresponding visible moves are removed from the stacks, and
a new set of moves beneath is revealed. The visible graph thus changes, and a second cycle may be removed. This process may be iterated until the earliest time, \( N \) say, at which the visible graph contains no cycle, which is to say that the visible graph is a spanning arborescence \( \sigma \) with root \( r \).

If \( N < \infty \), we terminate the procedure and ‘output’ \( \sigma \). The removal of a cycle is called ‘cycle popping’. It would seem that the value of \( N \) and the output \( \sigma \) will depend on the order in which we decide to pop cycles, but the converse turns out to be the case.

The following lemma holds ‘pointwise’: it contains no statement involving probabilities.

**2.10 Lemma** The order of cycle popping is irrelevant to the outcome, in that:

- either \( N = \infty \) for all orderings of cycle popping,
- or the total number \( N \) of popped cycles and the output \( \sigma \) are independent of the order of popping.

**Proof.** A coloured cycle is a set \( M_x(i_j), j = 1, 2, \ldots, J \), of moves, indexed by vertices \( x_j \) and colours \( i_j \), with the property that the moves form a cycle of the graph \( H \). A coloured cycle \( C \) is called *poppable* if there exists a sequence \( C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_n = C \) of coloured cycles that may be popped in sequence. We claim the following for any cycle-popping algorithm: if the algorithm terminates in finite time, then all poppable cycles are popped, and no others. The lemma follows from this claim.

Let \( C \) be a poppable coloured cycle, and let \( C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_n = C \) be as above. It suffices to show the following. Let \( C' \neq C_1 \) be a poppable cycle every move of which has colour 1, and suppose that, at the first stage, we pop \( C' \) rather than \( C_1 \). Then \( C \) is still poppable after the removal of \( C' \).

Let \( V(D) \) denote the vertex-set of a coloured cycle \( D \). The above italicized claim is evident if \( V(C') \cap V(C_k) = \emptyset \) for \( k = 1, 2, \ldots, n \). Suppose on the contrary that \( V(C') \cap V(C_k) \neq \emptyset \) for some \( k \), and let \( K \) be the earliest such \( k \). Let \( x \in V(C') \cap V(C_K) \). Since \( x \notin V(C_k) \) for \( k < K \), the visible move at \( x \) has colour 1 even after the popping of \( C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_{K-1} \).

Therefore, the edge of \( C_K \) with head \( x \) has the same tail, \( y \) say, as that of \( C' \) with head \( x \). This argument may be applied to \( y \) also, and then to all vertices of \( C_K \) in order. In conclusion, \( C_K \) has colour 1, and \( C' = C_K \).

Were we to decide to pop \( C' \) first, then we may choose to pop in the sequence \( C_K [= C'], C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_{K-1}, C_{K+1}, \ldots, C_n = C \), and the claim has been shown. \( \square \)

**Proof of Theorem 2.8.** It is clear by construction that Wilson’s algorithm terminates after a finite time, with probability 1. It proceeds by popping
cycles, and so, by Lemma 2.10, \( N < \infty \) almost surely, and the output \( \sigma \) is independent of the choices available in its implementation.

We show next that \( \sigma \) has the required law. We may think of the stacks as generating a pair \((C, \sigma)\), where \( C = (C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_J) \) is the ordered set of coloured cycles that are popped by Wilson’s algorithm, and \( \sigma \) is the spanning arborescence thus revealed. Note that the colours of the moves of \( \sigma \) are determined by knowledge of \( C \). Let \( C \) be the set of all sequences \( C \) that may occur, and let \( \Pi \) be the set of all possible pairs \((C, \sigma)\). Certainly \( \Pi = C \times \Sigma_r \), since knowledge of \( C \) imparts no information about \( \sigma \).

The spanning arborescence \( \sigma \) contains exactly one coloured move in each stack (other than the empty stack at the root). Stacked above this move are a number of coloured moves, each of which belongs to exactly one of the popped cycles \( C_j \). Therefore, the law of \((C, \sigma)\) is given by the probability that the coloured moves in and above \( \sigma \) are given appropriately. That is,

\[
P\left( (C, \sigma) = (c, A) \right) = \left( \prod_{c \in C} \prod_{e \in c} p_{e \to e_+} \right) \alpha(A), \quad c \in C, \quad A \in \Sigma_r.
\]

Since this factorizes in the form \( f(c)g(A) \), the random variables \( C \) and \( \sigma \) are independent, and \( P(\sigma = A) \) is proportional to \( \alpha(A) \) as required. \( \square \)

2.3 Weak Limits on Lattices

This section is devoted to the uniform-spanning-tree measure on the \( d \)-dimensional cubic lattice \( L^d = (\mathbb{Z}^d, \mathbb{Z}^d) \) with \( d \geq 2 \). A UST is not usually defined directly on this graph, since it is infinite. It is defined instead on a finite subgraph \( \Lambda \), and the limit is taken as \( \Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d \). Thus, we are led to study limits of probability measures, and to appeal to the important technique known as ‘weak convergence’. This technique plays a major role in much of the work described in this volume. Readers in need of a good book on the topic are referred to the classic texts [45, 84]. They may in addition find the notes at the end of this section to be useful.

Let \( \mu_n \) be the UST measure on the box \( \Lambda(n) = [-n, n]^d \) of the lattice \( L^d \). Here and later, we shall consider the \( \mu_n \) as probability measures on the measurable pair \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\) comprising the sample space \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^{\mathbb{Z}^d} \) and the \( \sigma \)-algebra \( \mathcal{F} \) of \( \Omega \) generated by the cylinder sets. Elements of \( \Omega \) are written \( \omega = (\omega(e) : e \in \mathbb{Z}^d) \).

2.11 Theorem [237] The weak limit \( \mu = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mu_n \) exists and is a translation-invariant and ergodic probability measure. It is supported on the set of forests of \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) with no bounded component.
Here is some further explanation of the language of this theorem. So-called \textit{ergodic theory} is concerned with certain actions on the sample space. Let $x \in \mathbb{Z}^d$. The function $\pi_x$ acts on $\mathbb{Z}^d$ by $\pi_x(y) = x + y$; it is the \textit{translation} by $x$, and it is a graph automorphism in that $(u,v) \in \mathbb{E}^d$ if and only if $(\pi_x(u),\pi_x(v)) \in \mathbb{E}^d$. The translation $\pi_x$ acts on $\mathbb{E}^d$ by $\pi_x((u,v)) = (\pi_x(u),\pi_x(v))$, and on $\Omega$ by $\pi_x(\omega) = (\omega(\pi_x(e))) : e \in \mathbb{E}^d$.

An event $A \in \mathcal{F}$ is called \textit{shift-invariant} if $A = \{ \pi_x(\omega) : \omega \in A \}$ for every $x \in \mathbb{Z}^d$. A probability measure $\phi$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ is \textit{ergodic} if every shift-invariant event $A$ is such that $\phi(A)$ is either 0 or 1. The measure is said to be \textit{supported} on the event $\mathcal{F}$ if $\phi(\mathcal{F}) = 1$.

Since we are working with the $\sigma$-field of $\Omega$ generated by the cylinder events, it suffices for weak convergence that $\mu_n(B \subseteq T) \rightarrow \mu(B \subseteq T)$ for any finite set $B$ of edges (see the notes at the end of this section, and Exercise 2.4). Note that the limit measure $\mu$ may place a strictly positive probability on the set of forests with two or more components. By a mild extension of the proof of Theorem 2.11, we obtain that the limit measure $\mu$ is invariant under the action of any automorphism of the lattice $\mathbb{L}^d$.

\textbf{Proof.} Let $F$ be a finite set of edges of $\mathbb{E}^d$. By the Rayleigh principle, Theorem 1.29 (as in the proof of Theorem 2.1; see Exercise 2.5), we have

$$\mu_n(F \subseteq T) \geq \mu_n(F \subseteq T)$$

for all large $n$. Therefore, the limit

$$\mu(F \subseteq T) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu_n(F \subseteq T)$$

exists. The domain of $\mu$ may be extended to all cylinder events, by the inclusion–exclusion principle or otherwise (see Exercises 2.3 and 2.4), and this in turn specifies a unique probability measure $\mu$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$. Since no tree contains a cycle, and since each cycle is finite and there are countably many cycles in $\mathbb{L}^d$, $\mu$ has support in the set of forests. By a similar argument, these forests may be taken as having no bounded component.

Let $\pi$ be a translation of $\mathbb{Z}^d$, and let $F$ be finite as above. Then

$$\mu(\pi F \subseteq T) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu_n(\pi F \subseteq T) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu_{\pi,n}(F \subseteq T),$$

where $\mu_{\pi,n}$ is the law of a UST on $\pi^{-1}\Lambda(n)$. There exists $r = r(\pi)$ such that $\Lambda(n-r) \subseteq \pi^{-1}\Lambda(n) \subseteq \Lambda(n+r)$ for all large $n$. By the Rayleigh principle again,

$$\mu_{n+r}(F \subseteq T) \leq \mu_{\pi,n}(F \subseteq T) \leq \mu_{n-r}(F \subseteq T)$$

for all large $n$. Therefore,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \mu_{\pi,n}(F \subseteq T) = \mu(F \subseteq T),$$
whence the translation-invariance of $\mu$. The proof of ergodicity is omitted, and may be found in [237].

This leads immediately to the question of whether the support of $\mu$ is the set of spanning trees of $L^d$. The proof of the following is omitted.

2.13 Theorem [237] The limit measure $\mu$ is supported on the set of spanning trees of $L^d$ if and only if $d \leq 4$.

The reason that $d = 4$ is the ‘critical’ dimension is that this is the largest $d$ such that a LERW and an independent simple random walk on $\mathbb{Z}^d$ intersect one another almost surely. A more detailed study of the way in which $\mu$ depends on $d$ may be found in [172].

The measure $\mu$ may be termed ‘free UST measure’, where the word ‘free’ refers to the fact that no further assumption is made about the boundary $\partial \Lambda(n)$. There is another boundary condition, giving rise to the so-called ‘wired UST measure’: we identify as a single composite vertex all vertices not in $\Lambda(n - 1)$, and choose a spanning tree uniformly at random from the resulting (finite) graph. We can pass to the limit as $n \to \infty$ in very much the same way as before, but with inequality (2.12) reversed. It turns out that the free and wired measures are identical on $L^d$ for all $d$. The key reason is that $L^d$ is a so-called amenable graph, which amounts in this context to saying that the boundary/volume ratio approaches zero in the limit of large boxes,

$$\frac{|\partial \Lambda(n)|}{|\Lambda(n)|} \sim c \frac{n^{d-1}}{n^d} \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty.$$ 

See Exercise 2.9 and [37, 221, 237, 238] for further details and discussion.

This section closes with a brief note about weak convergence, for more details of which the reader is referred to the books [45, 84]. Let $E = \{e_i : 1 \leq i < \infty\}$ be a countably infinite set. The product space $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$ may be viewed as the product of copies of the discrete topological space $\{0, 1\}$ and, as such, $\Omega$ is compact, and is metrisable by

$$\delta(\omega, \omega') = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} 2^{-i} |\omega(e_i) - \omega'(e_i)|, \quad \omega, \omega' \in \Omega.$$ 

A subset $C$ of $\Omega$ is called a (finite-dimensional) cylinder event (or, simply, a cylinder) if there exists a finite subset $F \subseteq E$ such that: $\omega \in C$ if and only if $\omega' \in C$ for all $\omega'$ equal to $\omega$ on $F$. The product $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{F}$ of $\Omega$ is the $\sigma$-algebra generated by the cylinders. The Borel $\sigma$-algebra $\mathcal{B}$ of $\Omega$ is defined as the minimal $\sigma$-algebra containing the open sets. It is standard that $\mathcal{B}$ is generated by the cylinders, and therefore $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{B}$ in the current
2.4 Uniform Forest

We noted that every cylinder is both open and closed in the product topology.

Let \((\mu_n : n \geq 1)\) and \(\mu\) be probability measures on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\). We say that \(\mu_n\) converges weakly to \(\mu\), written \(\mu_n \Rightarrow \mu\), if

\[ \mu_n(f) \to \mu(f) \quad \text{as } n \to \infty, \]

for all bounded continuous functions \(f : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}\). (Here and later, \(P(f)\) denotes the expectation of the function \(f\) under the measure \(P\).) Several other definitions of weak convergence are possible, and the so-called 'portmanteau theorem' asserts that certain of these are equivalent. In particular, the weak convergence of \(\mu_n\) to \(\mu\) is equivalent to each of the two following statements:

(a) \(\limsup_{n \to \infty} \mu_n(C) \leq \mu(C)\) for all closed events \(C\),

(b) \(\liminf_{n \to \infty} \mu_n(C) \geq \mu(C)\) for all open events \(C\).

The matter is simpler in the current setting: since the cylinder events are both open and closed, and they generate \(\mathcal{F}\), it is necessary and sufficient for weak convergence that

(c) \(\lim_{n \to \infty} \mu_n(C) = \mu(C)\) for all cylinders \(C\).

The following is useful for the construction of infinite-volume measures in the theory of interacting systems. Since \(\Omega\) is compact, every family of probability measures on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\) is relatively compact. That is to say, for any such family \(\Pi = (\mu_i : i \in I)\), every sequence \((\mu_{n_k} : k \geq 1)\) in \(\Pi\) possesses a weakly convergent subsequence. Suppose now that \((\mu_n : n \geq 1)\) is a sequence of probability measures on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\). If the limit \(\lim_{n \to \infty} \mu_n(C)\) exists for every cylinder \(C\), then it is necessarily the case that \(\mu := \lim_{n \to \infty} \mu_n\) exists and is a probability measure. We shall see in Exercises 2.3 and 2.4 that this holds if and only if \(\lim_{n \to \infty} \mu_n(C)\) exists for all increasing cylinders \(C\). This justifies the argument of the proof of Theorem 2.11.

2.4 Uniform Forest

We saw in Theorems 2.1 and 2.5 that the UST measure has a property of negative association. There is evidence that certain related measures have such a property also, but such claims have resisted proof.

Let \(G = (V, E)\) be a finite graph, which we may as well assume to be connected. Write \(\mathcal{F}\) for the set of forests of \(G\) (that is, the subsets \(H \subseteq E\) containing no cycle), and \(\mathcal{C}\) for the set of connected subgraphs of \(G\) (that is, the subsets \(H \subseteq E\) such that \((V, H)\) is connected). Let \(F\) be a uniformly chosen member of \(\mathcal{F}\), and let \(C\) be a uniformly chosen member of \(\mathcal{C}\). We
Uniform Spanning Tree

refer to $F$ and $C$ as a uniform forest (UF) and a uniform connected subgraph (USC), respectively.

2.14 Conjecture For $f, g \in E$, $f \neq g$, the UF and USC satisfy:

\begin{align}
\Pr(f \in F \mid g \in F) & \leq \Pr(f \in F), \\
\Pr(f \in C \mid g \in C) & \leq \Pr(f \in C).
\end{align}

This is a special case of a more general conjecture for random-cluster measures indexed by the parameters $p \in (0, 1)$ and $q \in (0, 1)$. See Section 8.4.

We may further ask whether UF and USC might satisfy the stronger conclusion of Theorem 2.5. As positive evidence for Conjecture 2.14, we cite the computer-aided proof of [151] that the UF on any graph with eight or fewer vertices (or nine vertices and 18 or fewer edges) satisfies (2.15).

Negative association presents difficulties that are absent from the better established theory of positive association (see Sections 4.1 and 4.2). There is an analogy with the concept of social (dis)agreement. Within a family or population, there may be a limited number of outcomes with consensus; there are generally many more outcomes with failure of consensus. Nevertheless, probabilists have made progress in developing systematic approaches to negative association; see for example [180, 240].

2.5 Schramm–Löwner Evolutions

There is a beautiful result of Lawler, Schramm, and Werner [203] concerning the limiting LERW (loop-erased random walk) and UST measures on $\mathbb{L}^2$. This cannot be described without a detour into the theory of Schramm–Löwner evolutions (SLEs).

The theory of SLE is a major piece of contemporary mathematics which promises to explain phase transitions in an important class of two-dimensional disordered systems, and to help bridge the gap between probability theory and conformal field theory. It plays a key role in the study of critical percolation (see Chapter 5), and also of the critical random-cluster and Ising models, [268, 269]. In addition, it has provided complete explanations of conjectures made by mathematicians and physicists concerning the intersection exponents and fractionality of the frontier of two-dimensional Brownian motion, [197, 200, 201]. The purposes of the current section are to give a brief non-technical introduction to SLE and to indicate its relevance to the scaling limits of LERW and UST.

SLE was originally an abbreviation for stochastic Löwner evolution, but is now regarded as being named after Oded Schramm in recognition of his work reported in [258].
Let $\mathbb{H} = (-\infty, \infty) \times (0, \infty)$ be the upper half-plane of $\mathbb{R}^2$, with closure $\overline{\mathbb{H}}$, viewed as subsets of the complex plane. Consider the (Löwner) ordinary differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt} g_t(z) = \frac{2}{g_t(z) - b(t)}, \quad z \in \overline{\mathbb{H}} \setminus \{0\},$$

subject to the boundary condition $g_0(z) = z$, where $t \in [0, \infty)$, and $b : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is termed the ‘driving function’. Randomness is injected into this formula through setting $b(t) = B_{\kappa t}$, where $\kappa > 0$ and $(B_t : t \geq 0)$ is a standard Brownian motion. The solution exists when $g_t(z)$ is bounded away from $B_{\kappa t}$. More specifically, for $z \in \overline{\mathbb{H}}$, let $\tau_z$ be the infimum of all times $\tau$ such that $0$ is a limit point of $g_s(z) - B_{\kappa s}$ in the limit $s \uparrow \tau$. We let

$$H_t = \{z \in \overline{\mathbb{H}} : \tau_z > t\}, \quad K_t = \{z \in \overline{\mathbb{H}} : \tau_z \leq t\},$$

so that $H_t$ is open and $K_t$ is compact. It may now be seen that $g_t$ is a conformal homeomorphism from $H_t$ to $\overline{\mathbb{H}}$. There exists a random curve

\[\text{Figure 2.1} \quad \text{Simulations of the traces of chordal } \text{SLE}_\kappa \text{ for } \kappa = 2, 4, 6, 8. \]

The four pictures are generated from the same Brownian driving path.

4An interesting and topical account of the history and practice of Brownian motion may be found in [94].
$$\gamma: [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{H},$$ called the trace of the process, such that $$\mathbb{H} \setminus K_t$$ is the unbounded component of $$\mathbb{H} \setminus \gamma[0, t]$$. The trace $$\gamma$$ satisfies $$\gamma(0) = 0$$ and $$\gamma(t) \to \infty$$ as $$t \to \infty$$. (See the illustrations in Figure 2.1.)

We call $$(g_t : t \geq 0)$$ a Schramm–Löwner evolution (SLE) with parameter $$\kappa$$, written $$\text{SLE}_\kappa$$, and the $$K_t$$ are called the hulls of the process. There is good reason to believe that the family $$K = (K_t : t \geq 0)$$ provides the correct scaling limits for a variety of random spatial processes, with the value of $$\kappa$$ depending on the process in question. General properties of $$\text{SLE}_\kappa$$, viewed as a function of $$\kappa$$, have been studied in [198, 249, 281, 282], and a beautiful theory has emerged. For example, the hulls $$K$$ form (almost surely) a simple path if and only if $$\kappa \leq 4$$. If $$\kappa > 8$$, the trace of $$\text{SLE}_\kappa$$ is (almost surely) a space-filling curve.

The above SLE process is termed ‘chordal’. In another version, called ‘radial’ SLE, the upper half-plane $$\mathbb{H}$$ is replaced by the unit disc $$U$$, and a different differential equation is satisfied. Let $$\partial U$$ denote the boundary of $$U$$. The corresponding curve $$\gamma$$ satisfies $$\gamma(t) \to 0$$ as $$t \to \infty$$, and $$\gamma(0) \in \partial U$$; we may suppose $$\gamma(0)$$ is uniformly distributed on $$\partial U$$. Both chordal and radial SLE may be defined on an arbitrary simply connected domain $$D$$ with a smooth boundary by applying a suitable conformal map $$\phi$$ from either $$\mathbb{H}$$ or $$U$$ to $$D$$.

It is believed that many discrete models in two dimensions, when at their critical points, converge in the limit of small mesh-size to an $$\text{SLE}_\kappa$$ with $$\kappa$$ chosen appropriately. Oded Schramm [258, 259] identified the correct values of $$\kappa$$ for several different processes and indicated that percolation has scaling limit $$\text{SLE}_6$$. Full rigorous proofs are not yet known even for general percolation models. For the special but presumably representative case of site percolation on the triangular lattice $$\mathbb{T}$$, Smirnov [266, 267] proved the very remarkable result that the crossing probabilities of re-scaled regions of $$\mathbb{R}^2$$ satisfy Cardy’s formula (see Section 5.6), and he indicated the route to the full $$\text{SLE}_6$$ limit. See [63, 64, 65, 282] for more recent work on percolation and [91, 268, 269] for progress on the SLE limits of the critical random-cluster and Ising models in two dimensions.

This chapter closes with a brief summary of the results in [203] concerning SLE limits for loop-erased random walk (LERW) and uniform spanning tree (UST) on the square lattice $$\mathbb{L}^2$$. We saw earlier in this chapter that there is a very close relationship between LERW and UST on a finite connected graph $$G$$. For example, the unique path joining vertices $$u$$ and $$v$$ in a UST of $$G$$ has the law of a LERW from $$u$$ to $$v$$ (see [237] and the description of Wilson’s algorithm). See Figure 2.2.

Let $$D$$ be a bounded simply connected subset of $$\mathbb{C}$$ with a smooth boundary
$\partial D$ and such that 0 lies in its interior. As remarked above, we may define a radial SLE$_2$ on $D$, and we write $\nu$ for its law. Let $\delta > 0$, and let $\mu_\delta$ be the law of LERW on the re-scaled lattice $\delta \mathbb{Z}^2$, starting at 0 and stopped when it first hits $\partial D$.

For two parametrizable curves $\beta, \gamma$ in $\mathbb{C}$, we define the distance between them by

$$\rho(\beta, \gamma) = \inf \left[ \sup_{t \in [0,1]} |\hat{\beta}(t) - \hat{\gamma}(t)| \right],$$

where the infimum is over all parametrizations $\hat{\beta}$ and $\hat{\gamma}$ of the curves (see [8]). The distance function $\rho$ generates a topology on the space of parametrizable curves, and hence a notion of weak convergence, denoted `$\Rightarrow$'..

### 2.17 Theorem [203]

We have that $\mu_\delta \Rightarrow \nu$ as $\delta \to 0$.

We turn to the convergence of UST to SLE$_{8/3}$, and begin with a discussion of mixed boundary conditions. Let $D$ be a bounded simply connected domain of $\mathbb{C}$ with a smooth ($C^1$) boundary curve $\partial D$. For distinct points $a, b \in \partial D$, we write $\alpha$ (respectively, $\beta$) for the arc of $\partial D$ going clockwise from $a$ to $b$ (respectively, $b$ to $a$). Let $\delta > 0$ and let $G_\delta$ be a connected graph that
approximates to that part of $\delta \mathbb{Z}^2$ lying inside $D$. We shall construct a UST of $G_\delta$ with mixed boundary conditions, namely a free boundary near $\alpha$ and a wired boundary near $\beta$. To each tree $T$ of $G_\delta$ there corresponds a dual tree $T^d$ on the dual\(^5\) graph $G_\delta^d$, namely the tree comprising edges of $G_\delta^d$ that do not intersect those of $T$. Since $G_\delta$ has mixed boundary conditions, so also does its dual $G_\delta^d$. With $G_\delta$ and $G_\delta^d$ drawn together, there is a simple path $\pi(T, T^d)$ that winds between $T$ and $T^d$. Let $\Pi$ be the path thus constructed between the UST on $G_\delta$ and its dual tree. The construction of this ‘Peano UST path’ is illustrated in Figures 2.3 and 2.4.

2.18 Theorem [203] The law of $\Pi$ converges as $\delta \to 0$ to that of the image of chordal SLE\(_8\) under any conformal map from $\mathbb{H}$ to $D$ mapping $0$ to $a$ and $\infty$ to $b$.

2.6 Exercises

2.1 [18, 60] Aldous–Broder algorithm. Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite connected graph, and pick a root $r \in V$. Perform a random walk on $G$ starting from $r$. For each $v \in V$, $v \neq r$, let $e_\nu$ be the edge traversed by the random walk just before it hits $v$ for the first time, and let $T$ be the tree $\bigsqcup_{i=0}^\infty e_\nu$ rooted at $r$. Show that $T$, when viewed as an unrooted tree, is a uniform spanning tree. It may be helpful to argue as follows.

(a) Consider a stationary simple random walk $(X_n : -\infty < n < \infty)$ on $G$, with distribution $\pi_\nu \propto \text{deg}(v)$, the degree of $v$. Let $T_i$ be the rooted tree obtained by the above procedure applied to the sub-walk $X_i, X_{i+1}, \ldots$ Show

\(^5\)This is the planar duality of graph theory; see Section 3.1.
that $T = (T_i : -\infty < i < \infty)$ is a stationary Markov chain with state space the set $\mathcal{R}$ of rooted spanning trees.

(b) Let $Q(t, t') = P(T_0 = t' | T_1 = t)$, and let $d(t)$ be the degree of the root of $t \in \mathcal{R}$. Show that:

(i) for given $t \in \mathcal{R}$, there are exactly $d(t)$ trees $t' \in \mathcal{R}$ with $Q(t, t') = 1/d(t)$ and $Q(t, t') = 0$ for all other $t'$.

(ii) for given $t' \in \mathcal{R}$, there are exactly $d(t')$ trees $t \in \mathcal{R}$ with $Q(t, t') = 1/d(t)$ and $Q(t, t') = 0$ for all other $t$.

(c) Show that

$$\sum_{t \in \mathcal{R}} d(t)Q(t, t') = d(t'), \quad t' \in \mathcal{R},$$

and deduce that the stationary measure of $T$ is proportional to $d(t)$.

(d) Let $r \in V$, and let $t$ be a tree with root $r$. Show that $P(T_0 = t | X_0 = r)$ is independent of the choice of $t$.

2.2 Inclusion–exclusion principle. Let $F$ be a finite set, and let $f$, $g$ be real-valued functions on the power-set of $F$. Show that

$$f(A) = \sum_{B \subseteq A} g(B), \quad A \subseteq F,$$

if and only if

$$g(A) = \sum_{B \subseteq A} (-1)^{|A \setminus B|} f(B), \quad A \subseteq F.$$

Show the corresponding fact with the two summations replaced by $\sum_{B \supseteq A}$ and the exponent $|A \setminus B|$ by $|B \setminus A|$.
2.3 Let $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^F$ where $F$ is finite, let $\mathbb{P}$ be a probability measure on $\Omega$, and let $A \subseteq \Omega$. Show that $\mathbb{P}(A)$ may be expressed as a linear combination of certain $\mathbb{P}(A_i)$, where the $A_i$ are increasing events.

2.4 (continuation) Let $G = (V, E)$ be an infinite graph with finite vertex-degrees, and let $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$, endowed with the product $\sigma$-field. An event $A$ in the product $\sigma$-field of $\Omega$ is called a cylinder event if it has the form $A_F \times \{0, 1\}^F$ for some $A_F \subseteq \{0, 1\}^F$ and some finite $F \subseteq E$. Show that a sequence $(\mu_n)$ of probability measures converges weakly if and only if $\mu_n(A)$ converges for every increasing cylinder event $A$.

2.5 Let $G = (V, E)$ be a connected subgraph of the finite connected graph $G'$. Let $T$ and $T'$ be uniform spanning trees on $G$ and $G'$ respectively. Show that, for any edge $e$ of $G$, $\mathbb{P}(e \in T) \geq \mathbb{P}(e \in T')$. More generally, let $B$ be a subset of $E$, and show that $\mathbb{P}(B \subseteq T) \geq \mathbb{P}(B \subseteq T')$.

2.6 Review the proof of Theorem 2.11, as follows. Let $T_n$ be a UST of the lattice box $[-n, n]^d$ of $\mathbb{Z}^d$. Show that the limit $\lambda(e) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}(e \in T_n)$ exists. More generally, show that the weak limit of $T_n$ exists as $n \to \infty$.

2.7 Adapt the conclusions of the last two exercises to the ‘wired’ UST measure $\mu^w$ on $\mathbb{Z}^d$.

2.8 Let $F$ be the set of forests of $\mathbb{L}^d$ with no bounded component, and let $\mu$ be an automorphism-invariant probability measure with support $F$. Show that the mean degree of every vertex is 2.

2.9 [237] Let $A$ be an increasing cylinder event in $\{0, 1\}^{\mathbb{Z}^d}$, where $\mathbb{E}^d$ denotes the edge-set of the hypercubic lattice $\mathbb{L}^d$. Using the Feder–Mihail Theorem 2.5 or otherwise, show that the free and wired UST measures on $\mathbb{L}^d$ satisfy $\mu^f(A) \geq \mu^w(A)$. Deduce by the last exercise and Strassen’s theorem, or otherwise, that $\mu^f = \mu^w$.

2.10 Consider the square lattice $\mathbb{L}^2$ as an infinite electrical network with unit edge-resistances. Show that the effective resistance between two neighbouring vertices is 2.

2.11 Let $G = (V, E)$ be finite and connected, and let $W \subseteq V$. Let $F_W$ be the set of forests of $G$ comprising exactly $|W|$ trees with respective roots the members of $W$. Explain how Wilson’s algorithm may be adapted to sample uniformly from $F_W$. 

2.12 Let $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^F$ where $F$ is finite, let $\mathbb{P}$ be a probability measure on $\Omega$, and let $A \subseteq \Omega$. Show that $\mathbb{P}(A)$ may be expressed as a linear combination of certain $\mathbb{P}(A_i)$, where the $A_i$ are increasing events.
Percolation and Self-Avoiding Walks

The central feature of the percolation model is the phase transition. The existence of the point of transition is proved by path-counting and planar duality. Basic facts about self-avoiding walks, oriented percolation, and the coupling of models are reviewed. A special feature is the proof that the connective constant of the hexagonal lattice is $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}$.

3.1 Percolation and Phase Transition

Percolation is the fundamental stochastic model for spatial disorder. In its simplest form, introduced in [59], it inhabits a (crystalline) lattice and possesses the maximum (statistical) independence. We shall consider mostly percolation on the (hyper)cubic lattice $L_d = (\mathbb{Z}^d, E_d)$ in $d \geq 2$ dimensions, but much of the following may be adapted to an arbitrary lattice.

Percolation comes in two forms, ‘bond’ and ‘site’, and we concentrate here on the bond model. Let $p \in [0, 1]$. Each edge $e \in E_d$ is designated either open with probability $p$, or closed otherwise, different edges receiving independent states. We think of an open edge as being open to the passage of some material such as disease, liquid, or infection. Suppose we remove all closed edges, and then consider the remaining open subgraph of the lattice. Percolation theory is concerned with the geometry of this open graph. Of particular interest are such quantities as the size of the open cluster $C_x$ containing a given vertex $x$ and, particularly, the probability that $C_x$ is infinite.

The sample space is the set $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^{E_d}$ of 0/1 vectors $\omega$ indexed by the edge-set; here, 1 represents ‘open’, and 0 ‘closed’. As $\sigma$-field we take that generated by the finite-dimensional cylinder sets, and the relevant probability measure is the product measure $\mathbb{P}_p$ with density $p$.

For $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}^d$, we write $x \leftrightarrow y$ if there exists an open path joining $x$ and
The open cluster $C_x$ at $x$ is the set of all vertices reachable along open paths from the vertex $x$,

$$C_x = \{ y \in \mathbb{Z}^d : x \leftrightarrow y \}.$$  

The origin of $\mathbb{Z}^d$ is denoted 0, and we write $C = C_0$. The principal object of study is the percolation probability $\theta(p)$ given by

$$\theta(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(\{|C| = \infty\}).$$

The critical probability is defined as

$$p_c = p_c(\mathbb{L}^d) = \sup \{ p : \theta(p) = 0 \}.$$ 

It is fairly clear (and will be spelled out in Section 3.3) that $\theta$ is non-decreasing in $p$, and thus

$$\theta(p) \begin{cases} 
0 & \text{if } p < p_c, \\
> 0 & \text{if } p > p_c.
\end{cases}$$

It is fundamental that $0 < p_c < 1$, and we state this as a theorem. It is easy to see that $p_c = 1$ for the corresponding one-dimensional process.

3.2 Theorem For $d \geq 2$, we have that $0 < p_c < 1$.

The inequalities may be strengthened using counts of self-avoiding walks, as in Theorem 3.12. It is an important open problem to prove the following conjecture. The conclusion is currently known only for $d = 2$ and $d \geq 11$ (see the computer-assisted proof in [107]).

3.3 Conjecture For $d \geq 2$, we have that $\theta(p_c) = 0$.

It is the edges (or ‘bonds’) of the lattice that are declared open or closed above. If, instead, we designate the vertices (or ‘sites’) to be open or closed, the ensuing model is termed site percolation. Subject to (generally) minor changes, the theory of site percolation may be developed just as that of bond percolation. See [127] for a general account of percolation theory.

Proof of Theorem 3.2. This proof introduces two basic methods, namely the counting of paths and the use of planar duality. We show first by counting paths that $p_c > 0$.

A self-avoiding walk (SAW) is a lattice path that visits no vertex more than once. Let $\sigma_n$ be the number of SAWs with length $n$ beginning at the origin, and let $N_n$ be the number of such SAWs all of whose edges are open. Then

$$\theta(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(N_n \geq 1 \text{ for all } n \geq 1) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}_p(N_n \geq 1).$$
3.1 Percolation and Phase Transition

Now,
\[ \mathbb{P}_p(N_n \geq 1) \leq \mathbb{E}_p(N_n) = p^n \sigma_n. \]
As a crude upper bound for \( \sigma_n \), we have that
\[ \sigma_n \leq 2d(2d - 1)^{n-1}, \quad n \geq 1, \]
since the first step of a SAW from the origin can be to any of its \( 2d \) neighbours, and there are no more than \( 2d - 1 \) choices for each subsequent step. Thus
\[ \theta(p) \leq \lim_{n \to \infty} 2d(2d - 1)^{n-1} p^n, \]
which equals 0 whenever \( p(2d - 1) < 1 \). Therefore,
\[ p_c \geq \frac{1}{2d - 1}. \]

We turn now to the proof that \( p_c < 1 \). The first step is to observe that
\[ p_c(\mathbb{L}^d) \geq p_c(\mathbb{L}^{d+1}), \quad d \geq 2. \]
This follows from the observation that \( \mathbb{L}^d \) may be embedded in \( \mathbb{L}^{d+1} \) in such a way that the origin lies in an infinite open cluster of \( \mathbb{L}^{d+1} \) whenever it lies in an infinite open cluster of the smaller lattice \( \mathbb{L}^d \). By (3.6), it suffices to show that
\[ p_c(\mathbb{L}^2) < 1, \]
and to this end we shall use a technique known as planar duality, which arises as follows.

Let \( G \) be a planar graph, drawn in the plane. The planar dual of \( G \) is the graph constructed in the following way. We place a vertex in every face of \( G \) (including the infinite face if it exists) and we join two such vertices by an edge if and only if the corresponding faces of \( G \) share a boundary edge. It is easy to see that the dual of the square lattice \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) is a copy of \( \mathbb{L}^2 \), and we refer therefore to the square lattice as being self-dual. See Figure 1.5.

There is a natural one–one correspondence between the edge-set of the dual lattice \( \mathbb{L}^d \) and that of the primal \( \mathbb{L}^2 \), and this gives rise to a percolation model on \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) as follows: for an edge \( e \in \mathbb{L}^2 \) and its dual edge \( e_d \), we declare \( e_d \) to be open if and only if \( e \) is open. As illustrated in Figure 3.1, each finite open cluster of \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) lies in the interior of a closed cycle of \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) lying ‘just outside’ the cluster.

We use a so-called Peierls argument\(^2\) to obtain (3.7). Let \( M_n \) be the number of closed cycles of the dual lattice having length \( n \) and containing

\(^2\)This method was used by Peierls [236] to prove phase transition in the two-dimensional Ising model.
0 in their interior. Note that $|C| < \infty$ if and only if $M_n \geq 1$ for some $n$.

Therefore,

$$1 - \theta(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(|C| < \infty) = \mathbb{P}_p\left(\sum_n M_n \geq 1\right)$$

$$\leq \mathbb{E}_p\left(\sum_n M_n\right)$$

$$= \sum_{n=4}^\infty \mathbb{E}_p(M_n) \leq \sum_{n=4}^\infty (n4^n)(1 - p)^n,$$

where we have used the facts that the shortest dual cycle containing 0 has length 4, and that the total number of dual cycles, having length $n$ and surrounding the origin, is no greater than $n4^n$ (see Exercise 3.12). The final sum may be made strictly smaller than 1 by choosing $p$ sufficiently close to 1, say $p > 1 - \epsilon$ where $\epsilon > 0$. This implies that $p_c(\mathbb{L}^2) \leq 1 - \epsilon$ as required for (3.7).

\[ \square \]

### 3.2 Self-Avoiding Walks

How many self-avoiding walks of length $n$ exist, starting from the origin? What is the ‘shape’ of a SAW chosen at random from this set? In particular, what can be said about the distance between its endpoints? These and related questions have attracted a great deal of attention since the publication in 1954 of the pioneering paper [158] of Hammersley and Morton, and never more so than in recent years. It is believed but not proved that a typical SAW on $\mathbb{L}^2$, 

![Figure 3.1](image-url)
starting at the origin, converges in a suitable manner as \( n \to \infty \) to a SLE\(_{8/3}\) curve, and the proof of this statement is an open problem of outstanding interest. See Section 2.5, in particular Figure 2.1, for an illustration of the geometry, and [223, 259, 268] for discussion and results.

The use of subadditivity was one of the several stimulating ideas of [158], and it has proved extremely fruitful in many contexts since. Consider the lattice \( \mathbb{L}^d \), and let \( \delta_n \) be the set of SAWs with length \( n \) starting at the origin, with \( \sigma_n = |\delta_n| \) as before.

### 3.9 Lemma
We have that \( \sigma_{m+n} \leq \sigma_m \sigma_n \), for \( m, n \geq 0 \).

#### Proof.
Let \( \pi \) and \( \pi' \) be finite SAWs starting at the origin, and denote by \( \pi \ast \pi' \) the walk obtained by following \( \pi \) from 0 to its other endpoint \( x \), and then following the translated walk \( \pi' + x \). Every \( \nu \in \delta_{m+n} \) may be written in a unique way as \( \nu = \pi \ast \pi' \) for some \( \pi \in \delta_m \) and \( \pi' \in \delta_n \). The claim of the lemma follows. \( \square \)

### 3.10 Theorem [158]
The limit \( \kappa = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( \sigma_n \right)^{1/n} \) exists and satisfies \( d \leq \kappa \leq 2d - 1 \).

This is in essence a consequence of the ‘sub-multiplicative’ inequality of Lemma 3.9. The constant \( \kappa \) is called the **connective constant** of the lattice. The exact value of \( \kappa = \kappa(\mathbb{L}^d) \) is unknown for every \( d \geq 2 \); see [171, Sect. 7.2, pp. 481–483]. On the other hand, the ‘hexagonal’ (or ‘honeycomb’) lattice (see Figure 1.5) has a special structure which has permitted a proof by Duminil-Copin and Smirnov [90] that its connective constant equals \( \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2}} \). See Theorem 3.14.

Hammersley [156] showed that the connective constant \( \mu(G) \) may be defined for any infinite, simple, quasi-transitive graph \( G \). Results for connective constants are reviewed in [140].

#### Proof.
By Lemma 3.9, \( x_m = \log \sigma_m \) satisfies the ‘subadditive inequality’
\[
x_{m+n} \leq x_m + x_n.
\]
The existence of the limit
\[
\lambda = \lim_{n \to \infty} \{x_n/n\}
\]
follows immediately (see Exercise 3.1), and
\[
\lambda = \inf_{m \to \infty} \{x_m/m\} \in [-\infty, \infty).
\]
By (3.5), \( \kappa = e^\lambda \leq 2d - 1 \). Finally, \( \sigma_n \) is at least the number of ‘stiff’ walks every step of which is in the direction of an increasing coordinate. The number of such walks is \( d^n \), and therefore \( \kappa \geq d \).

The bounds of Theorem 3.2 may be improved as follows.
3.12 Theorem The critical probability of bond percolation on $L^d$, with $d \geq 2$, satisfies
\[ \frac{1}{\kappa(d)} \leq p_c \leq 1 - \frac{1}{\kappa(2)}, \]
where $\kappa(d)$ denotes the connective constant of $L^d$.

Proof. As in (3.4),
\[ \theta(p) \leq \lim_{n \to \infty} p^n \sigma_n. \]

Now, $\sigma_n = \kappa(d)^{(1+o(1))n}$, so that $\theta(p) = 0$ if $p \kappa(d) < 1$.

For the upper bound, we elaborate on the proof of the corresponding part of Theorem 3.2. Let $F_m$ be the event that there exists a closed cycle of the dual lattice $\mathbb{L}_2^d$ containing the primal box $\Lambda(m) = [-m, m]^2$ in its interior, and let $G_m$ be the event that all edges of $\Lambda(m)$ are open. These two events are independent, since they are defined in terms of disjoint sets of edges. As in (3.8),
\[ P_p(F_m) \leq \sum_{n=4m}^{\infty} M_n \geq 1 \]
\[ \leq \sum_{n=4m}^{\infty} n(1-p)^n \sigma_n. \]

Recall that $\sigma_n = \kappa(2)^{(1+o(1))n}$, and choose $p$ such that $(1-p)\kappa(2) < 1$.

By (3.13), we may find $m$ such that $P_p(F_m) < \frac{1}{2}$. Then,
\[ \theta(p) \geq P_p(F_m \cap G_m) = P_p(F_m) P_p(G_m) \geq \frac{1}{2} P_p(G_m) > 0. \]

The upper bound on $p_c$ follows.

There are some extraordinary conjectures concerning SAWs in two dimensions. We mention the conjecture that
\[ \sigma_n \sim An^{11/32} \kappa^n \] when $d = 2$.

This is expected to hold for any lattice in two dimensions, with an appropriate choice of constant $A$ depending on the choice of lattice. It is known in contrast that no polynomial correction is necessary when $d \geq 5$,
\[ \sigma_n \sim A \kappa^n \] when $d \geq 5$,
for the cubic lattice at least. Related to the above conjecture is the belief that a random SAW of $\mathbb{Z}^2$, starting at the origin and of length $n$, converges weakly as $n \to \infty$ to SLE$_{8/3}$. See [26, 223, 259, 268] for further details of these and other conjectures and results.
3.3 Connective Constant of the Hexagonal Lattice

Arguably the most interesting exact calculation of a connective constant is of that of the hexagonal lattice $\mathbb{H}$ of Figure 1.5. This striking and important result of Duminil-Copin and Smirnov [90] provides a rigorous and provocative verification of a prediction of Nienhuis [234] based on conformal field theory.

3.14 Theorem The connective constant of the hexagonal lattice $\mathbb{H}$ satisfies

$$\kappa(\mathbb{H}) = \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}.$$ 

The proof falls short of a proof of conformal invariance for self-avoiding walks on $\mathbb{H}$. Theorem 3.14 may be applied to obtain the connective constant of the Archimedean lattice $(3, 12^2)$ of Figure 3.2; see [139] and Exercise 3.13.

The reader may wonder about the special nature of the hexagonal lattice. It is something of a mystery why certain results for this lattice (for example, the above exact calculation, and the conformal scaling limit of ‘face’ percolation of $\mathbb{H}$; see Section 5.13) have not yet been extended to other lattices.

Proof. This exploits the relationship between $\mathbb{R}^2$ and the Argand diagram of the complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$. We embed $\mathbb{H} = (V, E)$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ in a natural way as illustrated in Figure 3.3: edges have length 1 and are inclined at angles $\pi/2, 7\pi/6, -\pi/6$ to the $x$-axis, the origins of $\mathbb{H}$ and $\mathbb{R}^2$ coincide, and the
Figure 3.3 The hexagonal lattice $\mathbb{H}$ embedded in the plane.

line-segment from $(0, 0)$ to $(0, 1)$ is an edge of $\mathbb{H}$. Any point in $\mathbb{H}$ may thus be represented by a complex number. Let $\mathcal{M}$ be the set of midpoints of edges of $\mathbb{H}$. Rather than counting paths between vertices of $\mathbb{H}$, we count paths between midpoints.

Fix $a \in \mathcal{M}$, and let

$$Z(x) = \sum_{\gamma} x^{\gamma}, \quad x \in (0, \infty),$$

where the sum is over all SAWs $\gamma$ starting at $a$, and $|\gamma|$ is the number of vertices visited by $\gamma$. Theorem 3.14 is equivalent to the assertion that the radius of convergence of the power series $Z$ is

$$\chi := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2}}}.\tag{3.15}$$

We shall verify this by proving that

$$Z(\chi) = \infty,\tag{3.15}$$

$$Z(x) < \infty \quad \text{for} \quad x < \chi.\tag{3.16}$$

Towards this end we introduce a function that records the turning angle of a SAW. A SAW $\gamma$ departs from its initial midpoint $a$ in one of two possible directions, and its direction changes by $\pm \pi/3$ each time it reaches a vertex. On arriving at its other endpoint $b$, it has turned through some total turning angle $T(\gamma)$, measured anticlockwise in radians.

We work within some bounded region $M$ of $\mathbb{H}$. Let $S \subseteq V$ be a finite set of vertices that induces a connected subgraph of $\mathbb{H}$, and let $\mathcal{M}$ be the set of midpoints of edges of $\mathbb{H}$ touching points in $S$. Let $\Delta \mathcal{M}$ be the set of midpoints for which the corresponding edge of $\mathbb{H}$ has exactly one endpoint in $S$. We take $M$ to be the region of $\mathbb{H}$ comprising vertices $S$, midpoints $\mathcal{M}$, and half-edges between such vertices and midpoints. Later in the proof we shall restrict $M$ to a region of the type illustrated in Figure 3.4.
3.3 Connective Constant of the Hexagonal Lattice

Let \( a \in \Delta M \) and \( \sigma, x \in (0, \infty) \), and define the so-called ‘parafermionic observable’ of [90] by

\[
F_{\sigma, x}(z) = \sum_{\gamma : a \rightarrow z} e^{-i\sigma T(\gamma)x[\gamma]} |z|, \quad z \in M,
\]

where the summation is over all SAWs from \( a \) to \( z \) lying entirely in \( M \). We shall suppress some of the notation in \( F_{\sigma, x} \) when no ambiguity ensues. The key ingredient of the proof is the following lemma, which is strongly suggestive of discrete analyticity.

3.18 Lemma Let \( \sigma = \frac{5}{8} \) and \( x = \chi \). For \( v \in S \),

\[
(p - v)F(p) + (q - v)F(q) + (r - v)F(r) = 0,
\]

where \( p, q, r \in M \) are the midpoints of the three edges incident to \( v \), and the quantities in (3.19) are to be interpreted as complex numbers.

Proof. Let \( v \in S \). We assume for definiteness that the star at \( v \) is as drawn on the left of Figure 3.5. The other configurations are handled similarly.

Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be the set of SAWs in \( M \) starting at \( a \) whose intersection with the set \( \{p, q, r\} \) has cardinality \( k \), for \( k = 1, 2, 3 \). We shall show that the aggregate contribution to (3.19) of \( \mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2 \) is zero, and similarly that of \( \mathcal{P}_3 \).

Consider first \( \mathcal{P}_3 \). Let \( \gamma \in \mathcal{P}_3 \), and write \( b_1, b_2, b_3 \) for the ordering of \( \{p, q, r\} \) encountered along \( \gamma \) starting at \( a \). Thus \( \gamma \) comprises:

- a SAW \( \rho \) from \( a \) to \( b_1 \),
Figure 3.5 The star centred at the vertex $v$ is on the left. Two SAWs lying in $P_3$, visiting the midpoints of edges in the respective orders $pqr$ and $prq$. They follow the same SAWs $\rho$ and $\tau$ (in one or the other direction), and differ only within the star.

- a SAW of length 1 from $b_1$ to $b_2$,
- a SAW $\tau$ from $b_2$ to $b_3$ that is disjoint from $\rho$,

as illustrated in Figure 3.5. We partition $P_3$ according to the pair $\rho, \tau$. For given $\rho, \tau$, the aggregate contribution of these two paths to the left side of (3.19) is

$$c \left( \theta e^{-i \sigma \pi/3} + \theta e^{i \sigma \pi/3} \right)$$

where $c = (b_1 - v)e^{-i \sigma T(\rho)}\chi_{\rho}^{\left|v\right|+\left|\tau\right|+1}$ and

$$\theta = \frac{q - v}{p - v} = e^{i 2\pi/3}.$$

The contents of the parenthesis in (3.20) equal $2 \cos\left(\frac{2}{3} \pi (2\sigma + 1)\right)$, which equals 0 when $\sigma = \frac{5}{8}$.

Consider now $P_1 \cup P_2$. This set may be partitioned according to the point $b$ in $(p, q, r)$ visited first, and by the route $\rho$ of the SAW from $a$ to $b$. For given $b, \rho$, there are exactly three such SAWs, as in Figure 3.6. Their aggregate contribution to the left side of (3.19) is

$$c \left( 1 + x\theta e^{i \sigma \pi/3} + x\theta e^{-i \sigma \pi/3} \right)$$

where $x$ is the variable of integration.
3.3 Connective Constant of the Hexagonal Lattice

The left SAW, denoted \( \rho \), intersects the set \( \{ p, q, r \} \) only once. The other two paths are extensions of the first.

where \( c = (b - v)e^{-i\sigma T(\rho)}x^{\left| \rho \right|} \). With \( \sigma = \frac{5}{8} \), we set this to 0 and solve for \( x \), to find

\[
x = \frac{1}{2\cos(\pi/8)} = \chi.
\]

The lemma is proved. \( \square \)

We return to the proof of Theorem 3.14, and we set \( \sigma = \frac{5}{8} \) henceforth. Let \( M = M_{m,n} \) be as in Figure 3.4, and let \( L_m, T_{m,n}^\pm, U_{m,n} \) be the sets of midpoints indicated in the figure (note that \( a \) is excluded from \( L_m \)). Let

\[
\lambda_{m,n}^x = \sum_{\gamma : a \to L_m} x^{\left| \gamma \right|},
\]

where the sum is over all SAWs in \( M_{m,n} \) from \( a \) to some point in \( L_m \). We shall suppress explicit reference to \( x \) and write \( \lambda_{m,n} = \lambda_{m,n}^x \). All such \( \gamma \) have \( T(\gamma) = \pm \pi \). The sums \( \tau_{m,n}^\pm \) and \( \nu_{m,n} \) are defined similarly in terms of SAWs ending in \( T_{m,n}^\pm \) and \( U_{m,n} \),

\[
\tau_{m,n}^\pm = \sum_{\gamma : a \to T_{m,n}^\pm} x^{\left| \gamma \right|}, \quad \nu_{m,n} = \sum_{\gamma : a \to U_{m,n}} x^{\left| \gamma \right|},
\]

and all such \( \gamma \) have \( T(\gamma) = \mp 2\pi/3 \) and \( T(\gamma) = 0 \) respectively.

In summing (3.19) over all vertices \( v \) of \( M_{m,n} \) with \( x = \chi \), all midpoint contributions cancel except those from the boundary midpoints. Using the symmetry of \( M_{m,n} \), we deduce after a short calculation that, when \( x = \chi \),

\[
-i F(a) - i\text{Re}(e^{i\sigma \pi})\lambda_{m,n} + i\theta e^{-i\sigma 2\pi/3} \tau_{m,n}^+ - i\nu_{m,n} + i\theta e^{i\sigma 2\pi/3} \tau_{m,n}^- = 0.
\]
Divide by $i$ and use the fact that $F(a) = 1$, to obtain

$$
(3.21) \quad \alpha \lambda_{m,n} + \beta \tau_{m,n} + \nu_{m,n} = 1 \quad \text{when } x = \chi,
$$

where $\tau_{m,n} = \tau_{m,n}^+ + \tau_{m,n}^-$ and

$$
\alpha = \cos(3\pi/8), \quad \beta = \cos(\pi/4).
$$

Let $x \in (0, \infty)$. Since $\lambda_{m,n}$ and $\nu_{m,n}$ are increasing in $m$, the limits

$$
\lambda_n = \lim_{m \to \infty} \lambda_{m,n}, \quad \nu_n = \lim_{m \to \infty} \nu_{m,n}, \quad \text{where } x \in (0, \infty),
$$

exist. Hence, by (3.21), when $x = \chi$ the decreasing limit

$$
(3.22) \quad \tau_{m,n} \downarrow \tau_n \quad \text{as } m \to \infty,
$$

exists also. Furthermore, by (3.21),

$$
(3.23) \quad \alpha \lambda_n + \beta \nu_n + \nu_n = 1, \quad \text{when } x = \chi.
$$

We shall use (3.22) and (3.23) to prove (3.15) and (3.16), as follows.

**Proof of (3.15).** There are two cases depending on whether

$$
(3.24) \quad \text{when } x = \chi, \quad \tau_n > 0 \text{ for some } n \geq 1.
$$

Assume first that (3.24) holds, and pick $n \geq 1$ accordingly. By (3.22),

$$
\tau_{m,n} \geq \tau_n \quad \text{for all } m, \quad \text{so that, when } x = \chi,
$$

$$
Z(\chi) \geq \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \tau_{m,n} = \infty,
$$

and (3.15) follows.

Assume now that (3.24) is false. Let $x = \chi$ until further notice. By (3.23),

$$
(3.25) \quad \alpha \lambda_n + \nu_n = 1, \quad n \geq 1.
$$

We propose to bound $Z(\chi)$ below in terms of the $\nu_n$. The difference $\lambda_{n+1} - \lambda_n$ is the sum of $\chi |\gamma|$ over all $\gamma$ from $a$ to $L_\infty$ whose highest vertex lies between $U_{\infty,n}$ and $U_{\infty,n+1}$. See Figure 3.7. We split such a $\gamma$ into two pieces at its first highest vertex, and add two half-edges to obtain two self-avoiding paths from a given midpoint, $b$ say, of $U_{\infty,n+1}$ to $L_\infty \cup \{a\}$. Therefore,

$$
\lambda_{n+1} - \lambda_n \leq \chi^{-1}(v_{n+1})^2, \quad n \geq 1.
$$

By (3.25),

$$
\alpha \chi^{-1}(v_{n+1})^2 + v_{n+1} \geq \nu_n, \quad n \geq 1,
$$

In fact, (3.24) does not hold; see [28].
3.3 Connective Constant of the Hexagonal Lattice

Figure 3.7 A SAW contributing to $\lambda_{n+1}^x$ but not $\lambda_n^x$ is broken at its first highest vertex into two SAWs, as marked. By adding two half-edges, we obtain two SAWs from $b \in U_{\infty,n+1}$ to $L_\infty$.

whence, by induction on $n$,

$$\nu_n \geq \frac{C}{n}$$

where $C = \min\{v_1, \frac{X}{\alpha}\}$.

Therefore,

$$Z(\chi) \geq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \nu_n = \infty.$$
be the sub-SAW from $c'$ to $b$, where $c'$ is the midpoint of the earliest vertical edge following $v$. The vertical displacement of $\gamma_2$ is strictly less than that of $\gamma_1$. This process is iterated until the final midpoint $b$ is reached. If $b$ is not on a vertical edge, we add two half-edges and a further midpoint, as illustrated. By iteration, $\gamma$ is decomposable into an ordered set of bridges with vertical displacements, written $T_0 > T_1 > \cdots > T_j$. See Figure 3.8.

Now, let $\gamma$ be a SAW that starts at $a$ and moves immediately upwards (not necessarily a half-plane walk), and assume $\gamma$ is not a bridge. Find the earliest vertex of $\gamma$ that is highest, and add a half-edge and a midpoint, $c$ say. Let $\gamma_1$ be the sub-SAW from $a$ to $c$, and let $\gamma_2$ be the subsequent sub-SAW from $c$ to the final midpoint of $\gamma$. Thus, $\gamma$ gives rise to a SAW $\gamma_1$ from $a$ to $c$, together with the remaining SAW $\gamma_2$. Now, $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$ (viewed backwards) are half-plane walks. On applying the above procedure, we obtain a decomposition of $\gamma_1$ into bridges with vertical displacements written $T_{-i} < \cdots < T_{-1}$, Similarly, $\gamma_2$ has a decomposition with $T_0 > \cdots > T_j$. The original walk $\gamma$ may be reconstructed from knowledge of the constituent bridges. A similar argument is valid if the first move of $\gamma$ is instead downwards.

One may deduce a bound for $Z(x)$ in terms of the $\nu_n$. Any SAW from $a$ has two choices for its initial direction, and thereafter has a bridge decomposition as above. Therefore,

$$Z(x) \leq 2 \sum_{T_{-i} \cdots T_{-1}} \prod_{k=-i}^j v_k^x = 2 \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} (1 + \nu_n^x)^2, \quad \text{for } x \in (0, \infty).$$

Figure 3.8 A half-plane walk $\gamma$ may be decomposed into three bridges by the addition of half-edges and midpoints at chosen locations.
It remains to bound the right side. Since all SAWs from \(a\) to \(U_{\infty,n}\) have length at least \(n\),
\[
v_n^X \leq \left(\frac{x}{\chi}\right)^n v_n^X \leq \left(\frac{x}{\chi}\right)^n,
\]
when \(x \leq \chi\), since \(v_n^X \leq 1\) by (3.23). Therefore,
\[
\prod_{n=1}^{\infty} (1 + v_n^X) < \infty, \quad \text{when } x < \chi,
\]
and (3.16) follows by (3.26). \(\square\)

### 3.4 Coupled Percolation

The use of coupling in probability theory goes back at least as far as the beautiful proof by Doeblin of the ergodic theorem for Markov chains, [82, 150]. In percolation, we couple together the bond models with different values of \(p\) as follows. Let \((U_e : e \in \mathbb{E}^d)\) be independent random variables with the uniform distribution on \([0, 1]\). For \(p \in [0, 1]\), let
\[
\eta_p(e) = \begin{cases} 
1 & \text{if } U_e < p, \\
0 & \text{otherwise.}
\end{cases}
\]
Thus, the configuration \(\eta_p \in \Omega\) has law \(P_p\), and in addition
\[
\eta_p \leq \eta_r \quad \text{if } p \leq r.
\]

#### 3.27 Theorem

For any increasing integrable random variable \(f : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}\), the function \(g(p) = P_p(f)\) is non-decreasing.

**Proof.** For \(p \leq r\), we have that \(\eta_p \leq \eta_r\), whence \(f(\eta_p) \leq f(\eta_r)\). Therefore,
\[
g(p) = P_p(f(\eta_p)) \leq P_p(f(\eta_r)) = g(r),
\]
as required. \(\square\)

### 3.5 Oriented Percolation

The ‘north-east’ lattice \(\mathbb{L}^d\) is obtained by orienting each edge of \(\mathbb{L}^d\) in the direction of increasing coordinate-value (see Figure 3.9 for a two-dimensional illustration). There are many parallels between results for oriented percolation and those for ordinary percolation; on the other hand, the corresponding proofs often differ, largely because the existence of one-way streets restricts the degree of spatial freedom of the traffic.
Figure 3.9 Part of the two-dimensional ‘north-east’ lattice in which each edge has been deleted with probability $1-p$, independently of all other edges.

Let $p \in [0, 1]$. We declare an edge of $\mathbb{Z}^d$ to be open with probability $p$ and otherwise closed. The states of different edges are taken to be independent. We supply fluid at the origin, and allow it to travel along open edges in the directions of their orientations only. Let $\bar{C}$ be the set of vertices that may be reached from the origin along open directed paths. The percolation probability is

$$\bar{\theta}(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(|\bar{C}| = \infty),$$

and the critical probability $\bar{p}_c(d)$ is

$$\bar{p}_c(d) = \sup \{ p : \bar{\theta}(p) = 0 \}.$$

3.30 Theorem For $d \geq 2$, we have that $0 < \bar{p}_c(d) < 1$.

Proof. Since an oriented path is also a path, it is immediate that $\bar{\theta}(p) \leq \theta(p)$, whence $\bar{p}_c(d) \geq p_c > 0$. As in the proof of Theorem 3.2, for the upper bound it suffices to show that $\bar{p}_c(2) < 1$.

Let $d = 2$. The cluster $\bar{C}$ comprises the endvertices of open edges that are oriented northwards or eastwards. Assume $|\bar{C}| < \infty$. We may draw a dual cycle $\Delta$ surrounding $\bar{C}$ in the manner illustrated in Figure 3.10. As
Figure 3.10 As we trace the dual cycle \( \Delta \), we traverse edges exactly one half of which cross closed boundary edges of the cluster \( \tilde{C} \) at the origin.

we traverse \( \Delta \) in the clockwise direction, we move along dual edges each of which is oriented in one of the four compass directions. Any edge of \( \Delta \) that is oriented either eastwards or southwards crosses a primal edge that is closed. Exactly one half of the edges of \( \Delta \) are oriented thus, so that, as in (3.8),

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(|\tilde{C}| < \infty) \leq \sum_{n \geq 4} 4 \cdot 3^{n-2} (1 - p)\frac{1}{2^{n-1}}.
\]

In particular, \( \tilde{\theta}(p) > 0 \) if \( 1 - p \) is sufficiently small and positive.

The process is understood quite well when \( d = 2 \); see [96]. By looking at the set \( A_n \) of wet vertices on the diagonal \( \{x \in \mathbb{Z}^2 : x_1 + x_2 = n\} \) of \( \mathbb{Z}^2 \), we may reformulate two-dimensional oriented percolation as a one-dimensional contact process in discrete time (see [206, Chap. 6]). It turns out that \( \bar{p}_c(2) \) may be characterized in terms of the velocity of the rightwards edge of a contact process on \( \mathbb{Z} \) whose initial distribution places infectives to the left of the origin and susceptibles to the right. With the support of arguments from branching processes and ordinary percolation, we may prove such results as the exponential decay of the cluster-size distribution when \( p < \bar{p}_c(2) \), and its sub-exponential decay when \( p > \bar{p}_c(2) \): there exist \( \alpha(p), \beta(p) > 0 \)
such that
\[
(3.31) \quad e^{-\alpha(p)\sqrt{n}} \leq \mathbb{P}_p(n \leq |\mathcal{C}| < \infty) \leq e^{-\beta(p)\sqrt{n}} \quad \text{if } \tilde{p}_c(2) < p < 1.
\]

There is a close relationship between oriented percolation and the contact model (see Chapter 6), and methods developed for the latter model may often be applied to the former. It has been shown in particular that \(\tilde{\theta}(\tilde{p}_c) = 0\) for general \(d \geq 2\); see [135].

We close this section with an open problem of a different sort. Suppose that each edge of \(\mathbb{L}^2\) is oriented in a random direction, horizontal edges being oriented eastwards with probability \(p\) and westwards otherwise, and vertical edges being oriented northwards with probability \(p\) and southwards otherwise. Let \(\eta(p)\) be the probability that there exists an infinite oriented path starting at the origin. It is not hard to show that \(\eta\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0\) (see Exercise 3.9). We ask whether \(\eta(p) > 0\) if \(p \neq \frac{1}{2}\). Partial results in this direction may be found in [129]; see also [213, 214].

3.6 Exercises

3.1 Subadditive inequality. Let \((x_n : n \geq 1)\) be a real sequence satisfying \(x_{m+n} \leq x_m + x_n\) for \(m, n \geq 1\). Show that the limit \(\lambda = \lim_{n \to \infty} \{x_n / n\}\) exists and satisfies \(\lambda = \inf_{k} \{x_k / k\} \in [-\infty, \infty)\).

3.2 (continuation) Find reasonable conditions on the sequence \((\alpha_n)\) such that the generalized inequality

\[x_{m+n} \leq x_m + x_n + \alpha_m, \quad m, n \geq 1,
\]

implies the existence of the limit \(\lambda = \lim_{n \to \infty} \{x_n / n\}\).

3.3 [147] Bond and site critical probabilities. Let \(G\) be an infinite connected graph with maximal vertex degree \(\Delta\). Show that the critical probabilities for bond and site percolation on \(G\) satisfy

\[\tilde{p}_c^{\text{bond}} \leq \tilde{p}_c^{\text{site}} \leq 1 - (1 - \tilde{p}_c^{\text{bond}})^\Delta.
\]

The second inequality is in fact valid with \(\Delta\) replaced by \(\Delta - 1\).

3.4 Show that bond percolation on a graph \(G\) may be reformulated in terms of site percolation on a graph derived suitably from \(G\).

3.5 Show that the connective constant of \(\mathbb{L}^2\) lies strictly between 2 and 3.

3.6 Show the strict inequality \(p_c(d) < \tilde{p}_c(d)\) for the critical probabilities of unoriented and oriented percolation on \(\mathbb{L}^d\) with \(d \geq 2\).

3.7 One-dimensional percolation. Each edge of the one-dimensional lattice \(\mathbb{L}\) is declared open with probability \(p\). For \(k \in \mathbb{Z}\), let \(r(k) = \max\{u : k \leftrightarrow k + u\}\)
and \( L_n = \max \{ r(k) : 1 \leq k \leq n \} \). Show that \( \mathbb{P}_p(L_n > u) \leq np^u \), and deduce that, for \( \epsilon > 0 \),

\[
\mathbb{P}_p \left( L_n > \frac{(1 + \epsilon) \log n}{\log(1/p)} \right) \to 0 \quad \text{as} \ n \to \infty.
\]

This is the famous problem of the longest run of heads in \( n \) tosses of a coin.

**3.6 Exercises**

3.8 (continuation) Show that, for \( \epsilon > 0 \),

\[
\mathbb{P}_p \left( L_n < \frac{(1 - \epsilon) \log n}{\log(1/p)} \right) \to 0 \quad \text{as} \ n \to \infty.
\]

By suitable refinements of the error estimates above, show that, for \( \epsilon > 0 \),

\[
\mathbb{P}_p \left( \frac{(1 - \epsilon) \log n}{\log(1/p)} < L_n < \frac{(1 + \epsilon) \log n}{\log(1/p)} \right) = 1.
\]

3.9 [129] Each edge of the square lattice \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) is oriented in a random direction, horizontal edges being oriented eastwards with probability \( p \) and westwards otherwise, and vertical edges being oriented northwards with probability \( p \) and southwards otherwise. Let \( \eta(p) \) be the probability that there exists an infinite oriented path starting at the origin. By coupling with undirected bond percolation (for which we have that \( \theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0 \) by Theorem 5.25), or otherwise, show that \( \eta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0 \).

It is an open problem to decide whether \( \eta(p) > 0 \) for \( p \neq \frac{1}{2} \).

3.10 The vertex \((i, j)\) of \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) is called even if \( i + j \) is even, and odd otherwise. Vertical edges are oriented from the even endpoint to the odd, and horizontal edges vice versa. Each edge is declared open with probability \( p \) and closed otherwise (independently between edges). Show that, for \( p \) sufficiently close to 1, there is a strictly positive probability that the origin is the endpoint of an infinite open oriented path.

3.11 [132, 210, 211] A word is an element of the set \( \{0, 1\}^\mathbb{N} \) of singly infinite 0/1 sequences. Let \( p \in (0, 1) \) and \( M \geq 1 \). Consider oriented site percolation on \( \mathbb{Z}^2 \), in which the state \( \omega(x) \) of a vertex \( x \) equals 1 with probability \( p \), and 0 otherwise. A word \( w = (w_1, w_2, \ldots) \) is said to be \( M \)-seen if there exists an infinite oriented path \( x_0 = 0, x_1, x_2, \ldots \) of vertices such that \( \omega(x_i) = w_i \) and \( d(x_{i-1}, x_i) \leq M \) for \( i \geq 1 \). [Here, as usual, \( d \) denotes graph-theoretic distance.]

Calculate the probability that the square \( \{1, 2, \ldots, k\}^2 \) contains both a 0 and a 1. Deduce by a block argument that

\[
\psi_p(M) = \mathbb{P}_p(\text{all words are } M\text{-seen})
\]

satisfies \( \psi_p(M) > 0 \) for \( M \geq M(p) \), and determine an upper bound on the required \( M(p) \).
3.12 By counting dual SAWs or otherwise, show that there exist at most $n^{4n}$ cycles of the dual lattice of $L^2$ with length $n$ and containing the origin in their interior.

3.13 [139, 177] Show that the connective constants of the Archimedean lattice $A$ and the hexagonal lattice $H$ (of Figures 3.2 and 1.5, respectively) satisfy

$$\frac{1}{\kappa(A)^2} + \frac{1}{\kappa(A)^3} = \frac{1}{\kappa(H)}$$
Association and Influence

Correlation inequalities have played a significant role in the theory of disordered spatial systems. The Holley inequality provides a sufficient condition for the stochastic ordering of two measures, and also a route to a proof of the famous FKG inequality. For product measures, the complementary BK inequality involves the concept of 'disjoint occurrence'. Two concepts of concentration are considered here. The Hoeffding inequality provides a bound on the tail of a martingale with bounded differences. Another concept of 'influence' developed by Kahn, Kalai, and Linial leads to sharp-threshold theorems for increasing events under either product or FKG measures.

4.1 Holley Inequality
We review the stochastic ordering of probability measures on a discrete space. Let $E$ be a non-empty finite set and $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$. The sample space $\Omega$ is partially ordered by

$$\omega_1 \leq \omega_2 \quad \text{if} \quad \omega_1(e) \leq \omega_2(e) \quad \text{for all} \quad e \in E.$$ 

A non-empty subset $A \subseteq \Omega$ is called increasing if

$$\omega \in A, \quad \omega \leq \omega' \quad \Rightarrow \quad \omega' \in A,$$

and decreasing if

$$\omega \in A, \quad \omega' \leq \omega \quad \Rightarrow \quad \omega' \in A.$$ 

If $A (\neq \Omega)$ is increasing then its complement $\overline{A} = \Omega \setminus A$ is decreasing.

4.1 Definition Given two probability measures $\mu_1$, $\mu_2$ on $\Omega$, we write $\mu_1 \leq_{st} \mu_2$ and say that $\mu_1$ is stochastically dominated by $\mu_2$ if

$$\mu_1(A) \leq \mu_2(A) \quad \text{for all increasing events} \quad A.$$ 

Equivalently, $\mu_1 \leq_{st} \mu_2$ if and only if $\mu_1(f) \leq \mu_2(f)$ for all increasing functions $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. There is an important and useful result, often termed
Strassen’s theorem, that asserts that measures satisfying \( \mu_1 \leq_{st} \mu_2 \) may be coupled in a ‘pointwise monotone’ manner. Such a statement is valid for very general spaces (see [212]), but we restrict ourselves here to the current context. The proof is omitted, and may be found in many places, including [221, 283].

4.2 Theorem [271] Let \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \) be probability measures on \( \Omega \). The following two statements are equivalent.

(a) \( \mu_1 \leq_{st} \mu_2 \).

(b) There exists a probability measure \( \nu \) on \( \Omega^2 \) such that

\[
\nu(\{ (\pi, \omega) : \pi \leq \omega \}) = 1,
\]

and whose marginal measures are \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \).

For \( \omega_1, \omega_2 \in \Omega \), we define the (pointwise) maximum and minimum configurations by

\[
\omega_1 \lor \omega_2(e) = \max\{\omega_1(e), \omega_2(e)\},
\]

\[
\omega_1 \land \omega_2(e) = \min\{\omega_1(e), \omega_2(e)\},
\]

for \( e \in E \). A probability measure \( \mu \) on \( \Omega \) is called positive if \( \mu(\omega) > 0 \) for all \( \omega \in \Omega \).

4.4 Theorem (Holley inequality) [170] Let \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \) be positive probability measures on \( \Omega \) satisfying

\[
\mu_2(\omega_1 \lor \omega_2)\mu_1(\omega_1 \land \omega_2) \geq \mu_1(\omega_1)\mu_2(\omega_2), \quad \omega_1, \omega_2 \in \Omega.
\]

Then \( \mu_1 \leq_{st} \mu_2 \).

Condition (4.5) is not necessary for the stochastic inequality, but is equivalent to a stronger property of ‘monotonicity’; see [130, Thm 2.3].

Proof. The main step is the proof that \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \) can be ‘coupled’ in such a way that the component with marginal measure \( \mu_2 \) lies above (in the sense of sample realizations) that with marginal measure \( \mu_1 \). This is achieved by constructing a certain Markov chain with the coupled measure as unique invariant measure. Elementary introductions to Markov chains may be found at [148, Chap. 6] and [150, Chap. 12].

Here is a preliminary calculation. Let \( \mu \) be a positive probability measure on \( \Omega \). We can construct a time-reversible Markov chain with state space \( \Omega \) and unique invariant measure \( \mu \) by choosing a suitable generator \( G \) satisfying the detailed balance equations. The dynamics of the chain involve the ‘switching on or off’ of single components of the current state.
For $\omega \in \Omega$ and $e \in E$, we define the configurations $\omega^e$, $\omega_e$ by

$$
\omega^e(f) = \begin{cases} 
\omega(f) & \text{if } f \neq e, \\
1 & \text{if } f = e,
\end{cases}
\omega_e(f) = \begin{cases} 
\omega(f) & \text{if } f \neq e, \\
0 & \text{if } f = e.
\end{cases}
$$

Let $G : \Omega^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by

$$
G(\omega^e, \omega^e) = 1, \quad G(\omega^e, \omega_e) = \frac{\mu(\omega^e)}{\mu(\omega^e)},
$$

for all $\omega \in \Omega$, $e \in E$. Set $G(\omega, \omega) = 0$ for all other pairs $\omega, \omega'$ with $\omega \neq \omega'$. The diagonal elements are chosen in such a way that

$$
\sum_{\omega' \in \Omega} G(\omega, \omega') = 0, \quad \omega \in \Omega.
$$

It is elementary that $\mu$ satisfies the so-called ‘detailed balance equations’

$$
\mu(\omega) G(\omega, \omega') = \mu(\omega') G(\omega', \omega), \quad \omega, \omega' \in \Omega,
$$

and therefore $G$ generates a time-reversible Markov chain on the state space $\Omega$. This chain is irreducible (using (4.7)), and therefore possesses a unique invariant measure $\mu$ (see [148, Thm 6.5.4]).

We next follow a similar route for pairs of configurations. Let $\mu_1$ and $\mu_2$ satisfy the hypotheses of the theorem, and let $S$ be the set of all pairs $(\pi, \omega)$ of configurations in $\Omega$ satisfying $\pi \leq \omega$. We define $H : S \times S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$
H(\pi^e, \omega; \pi_e, \omega^e) = 1,
$$

$$
H(\pi, \omega^e; \pi_e, \omega_e) = \frac{\mu_2(\omega_e)}{\mu_2(\omega^e)},
$$

$$
H(\pi^e, \omega^e; \pi_e, \omega^e) = \frac{\mu_1(\pi_e)}{\mu_1(\pi^e)} - \frac{\mu_2(\omega_e)}{\mu_2(\omega^e)},
$$

for all $(\pi, \omega) \in S$ and $e \in E$; all other off-diagonal values of $H$ are set to 0. The diagonal terms are chosen in such a way that

$$
\sum_{\pi', \omega'} H(\pi, \omega; \pi', \omega') = 0, \quad (\pi, \omega) \in S.
$$

Equation (4.8) specifies that, for $\pi \in \Omega$ and $e \in E$, an edge $e$ is acquired by $\pi$ (if it does not already contain it) at rate 1; any edge so acquired is added also to $\omega$ if it does not already contain it. (Here, we speak of a configuration $\psi$ containing an edge $e$ if $\psi(e) = 1$.) Equation (4.9) specifies that, for $\omega \in \Omega$ and $e \in E$ with $\omega(e) = 1$, the edge $e$ is removed from $\omega$ (and also from $\pi$ if $\pi(e) = 1$) at the rate given in (4.9). For $e$ with $\pi(e) = 1$, there is an additional rate given in (4.10) at which $e$ is removed from $\pi$ but not
from \( \omega \). We need to check that this additional rate is indeed non-negative, and the required inequality,

\[
\mu_2(\omega e) \mu_1(\pi e) \geq \mu_1(\pi e) \mu_2(\omega e), \quad \pi \leq \omega,
\]

follows from (and is indeed equivalent to) assumption (4.5).

Let \((X_t, Y_t)_{t \geq 0}\) be a Markov chain on \( S \) with generator \( H \), and set \((X_0, Y_0) = (0, 1)\), where 0 (respectively, 1) is the state of all 0s (respectively, 1s). By examination of (4.8)–(4.10), we see that \( X = (X_t)_{t \geq 0} \) is a Markov chain with generator given by (4.7) with \( \mu = \mu_1 \), and that \( Y = (Y_t)_{t \geq 0} \) arises similarly with \( \mu = \mu_2 \).

Let \( \kappa \) be an invariant measure for the paired chain \((X_t, Y_t)_{t \geq 0}\). Since \( X \) and \( Y \) have (respective) unique invariant measures \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \), the marginals of \( \kappa \) are \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \). We have by construction that \( \kappa(S) = 1 \), and \( \kappa \) is the required ‘coupling’ of \( \mu_1 \) and \( \mu_2 \).

Let \((\pi, \omega) \in S\) be chosen according to the measure \( \kappa \). Then

\[
\mu_1(f) = \kappa(f(\pi)) \leq \kappa(f(\omega)) = \mu_2(f),
\]

for any increasing function \( f \). Therefore, \( \mu_1 \preceq \mu_2 \).

\[\square\]

### 4.2 FKG Inequality

The FKG inequality for product measures was discovered by Harris [164], and is often named now after the authors Fortuin, Kasteleyn, and Ginibre of [112], who proved the more general version that is the subject of this section. See the appendix of [130] for a historical account. Let \( E \) be a finite set and \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^E \), as usual.

#### 4.11 Theorem (FKG inequality) [112]

Let \( \mu \) be a positive probability measure on \( \Omega \) such that

\[
(4.12) \quad \mu(\omega_1 \lor \omega_2) \mu(\omega_1 \land \omega_2) \geq \mu(\omega_1) \mu(\omega_2), \quad \omega_1, \omega_2 \in \Omega.
\]

Then \( \mu \) is ‘positively associated’ in that

\[
(4.13) \quad \mu(fg) \geq \mu(f) \mu(g)
\]

for all increasing random variables \( f, g : \Omega \to \mathbb{R} \).

It is explained in [112] how the condition of (strict) positivity can be removed. Condition (4.12) is sometimes called the ‘FKG lattice condition’.

**Proof.** Assume that \( \mu \) satisfies (4.12), and let \( f \) and \( g \) be increasing functions. By adding a constant to the function \( g \), we see that it suffices to prove (4.13) under the additional hypothesis that \( g \) is strictly positive. Assume the
last holds. Define positive probability measures $\mu_1$ and $\mu_2$ on $\Omega$ by $\mu_1 = \mu$ and
\[
\mu_2(\omega) = \frac{g(\omega)\mu(\omega)}{\sum_{\omega'} g(\omega')\mu(\omega')}, \quad \omega \in \Omega.
\]
Since $g$ is increasing, the Holley condition (4.5) follows from (4.12). By the Holley inequality, Theorem 4.4,
\[\mu_1(f) \leq \mu_2(f),\]
which is to say that
\[
\sum_{\omega} f(\omega)g(\omega)\mu(\omega) \geq \sum_{\omega} f(\omega)\mu(\omega),
\]
as required. $\square$

4.3 BK Inequality

In the special case of product measure on $\Omega$, there is a type of converse inequality to the FKG inequality, named the BK inequality after van den Berg and Kesten [41]. This is based on a concept of ‘disjoint occurrence’, which we make more precise as follows.

For $\omega \in \Omega$ and $F \subseteq E$, we define the cylinder event $C(\omega, F)$ generated by $\omega$ on $F$ by
\[C(\omega, F) = \{\omega' \in \Omega : \omega'(e) = \omega(e) \text{ for all } e \in F\}\]
\[= (\omega(e) : e \in F) \times \{0, 1\}^{E \setminus F}.
\]
We define the event $A \Box B$ as the set of all $\omega \in \Omega$ for which there exists a set $F \subseteq E$ such that $C(\omega, F) \subseteq A$ and $C(\omega, E \setminus F) \subseteq B$. Thus, $A \Box B$ is the set of configurations $\omega$ for which there exist disjoint sets $F, G$ of indices with the property that: knowledge of $\omega$ restricted to $F$ (respectively, $G$) implies that $\omega \in A$ (respectively, $\omega \in B$). In the special case when $A$ and $B$ are increasing, $C(\omega, F) \subseteq A$ if and only if $\omega_F \in A$, where
\[\omega_F(e) = \begin{cases} \omega(e) & \text{for } e \in F, \\ 0 & \text{for } e \notin F. \end{cases}
\]
Thus, in this case, $A \Box B = A \circ B$, where
\[A \circ B = \{\omega : \text{there exists } F \subseteq E \text{ such that } \omega_F \in A, \ \omega_{E \setminus F} \in B\}.
\]
The set $F$ is permitted to depend on the choice of configuration $\omega$.

Three notes about disjoint occurrence:
(4.14) $A \Box B \subseteq A \cap B$,
(4.15) if $A$ and $B$ are increasing, then so is $A \Box B (= A \circ B)$,
(4.16) if $A$ is increasing and $B$ is decreasing, then $A \Box B = A \cap B$. 

Let $P$ be the product measure on $\Omega$ with local densities $p_e, e \in E$, that is

$$P = \prod_{e \in E} \mu_e,$$

where $\mu_e(0) = 1 - p_e$ and $\mu_e(1) = p_e$.

4.17 Theorem (BK inequality) [41] For increasing subsets $A, B$ of $\Omega$,

(4.18) \[ P(A \circ B) \leq P(A) P(B). \]

It is not known for which non-product measures (4.18) holds, although it was shown in [40] that (4.18) holds for the measure $P_k$ that selects a $k$-subset of $E$ uniformly at random. It would be very useful to show that the random-cluster measure $\phi_{p,q}$ on $\Omega$ satisfies (4.18) whenever $0 < q < 1$, although we may have to survive with rather less. See Chapter 8 and [130, Sect. 3.9].

The conclusion of the BK inequality is in fact valid for all pairs $A, B$ of events, regardless of whether they are increasing. This is much harder to prove, and it has not yet been as valuable as originally expected in the analysis of disordered systems.

4.19 Theorem (Reimer inequality) [248] For $A, B \subseteq \Omega$,

$$P(A \Box B) \leq P(A) P(B).$$

Let $A$ and $B$ be increasing. By applying Reimer’s inequality to the events $A$ and $B$, we obtain by (4.16) that $P(A \cap B) \geq P(A) P(B)$. Therefore, Reimer’s inequality includes both the FKG and BK inequalities for the product measure $P$. The proof of Reimer’s inequality is omitted; see [57, 248].

Proof of Theorem 4.17. We present the ‘simple’ proof given in [38, 127, 283]. Those who prefer proofs by induction are directed to [55]. Let $1, 2, \ldots, N$ be an ordering of $E$. We shall consider the duplicated sample space $\Omega \times \Omega'$, where $\Omega = \Omega' = \{0, 1\}^E$, with which we associate the product measure $\tilde{P} = \tilde{P} \times \tilde{P}$. Elements of $\Omega$ (respectively, $\Omega'$) are written as $\omega$ (respectively, $\omega'$). Let $A$ and $B$ be increasing subsets of $\{0, 1\}^E$. For $1 \leq j \leq N + 1$ and $(\omega, \omega') \in \Omega \times \Omega'$, define the $N$-vector $\omega_j$ by

$$\omega_j = (\omega'(1), \omega'(2), \ldots, \omega'(j - 1), \omega(j), \ldots, \omega(N)),$$

so that the $\omega_j$ interpolate between $\omega_1 = \omega$ and $\omega_{N+1} = \omega'$. Let the events $\tilde{A}_j, \tilde{B}$ of $\Omega \times \Omega'$ be given by

$$\tilde{A}_j = \{(\omega, \omega') : \omega_j \in A\}, \quad \tilde{B} = \{(\omega, \omega') : \omega \in B\}.$$
Note that:
(a) \( \hat{A}_1 = A \times \Omega' \) and \( \hat{B} = B \times \Omega' \), so that \( \hat{P}(\hat{A}_1 \circ \hat{B}) = P(A \circ B) \).
(b) \( \hat{A}_{N+1} \) and \( \hat{B} \) are defined in terms of disjoint subsets of \( E \), so that
\[
\hat{P}(\hat{A}_{N+1} \circ \hat{B}) = \hat{P}(\hat{A}_{N+1}) \hat{P}(\hat{B}) = P(A)P(B).
\]

It therefore suffices to show that
\[
(4.20) \quad \hat{P}(\hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B}) \leq \hat{P}(\hat{A}_{j+1} \circ \hat{B}), \quad 1 \leq j \leq N,
\]
and this we do, for given \( j \), by conditioning on the values of the \( \omega(i), \omega'(i) \) for all \( i \neq j \). Suppose these values are given, and classify them as follows.

There are three cases.
1. \( \hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B} \) does not occur when \( \omega(j) = \omega'(j) = 1 \).
2. \( \hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B} \) occurs when \( \omega(j) = \omega'(j) = 0 \), in which case \( \hat{A}_{j+1} \circ \hat{B} \) occurs also.
3. Neither of the two cases above holds.

Consider the third case. Since \( \hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B} \) does not depend on the value \( \omega'(j) \), we have in this case that \( \hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B} \) occurs if and only if \( \omega(j) = 1 \), and therefore the conditional probability of \( \hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B} \) is \( p_j \). When \( \omega(j) = 1 \), edge \( j \) is `contributing' to either \( \hat{A}_j \) or \( \hat{B} \) but not both. Replacing \( \omega(j) \) by \( \omega'(j) \), we find similarly that the conditional probability of \( \hat{A}_{j+1} \circ \hat{B} \) is at least \( p_j \).

In each of the three cases above, the conditional probability of \( \hat{A}_j \circ \hat{B} \) is no greater than that of \( \hat{A}_{j+1} \circ \hat{B} \), and (4.20) follows. \( \square \)

### 4.4 Hoeffding Inequality

Let \((Y_n, \mathcal{F}_n), n \geq 0\) be a martingale. We can obtain bounds for the tail of \( Y_n \) in terms of the sizes of the martingale differences \( D_k = Y_k - Y_{k-1} \). These bounds can be surprisingly tight, and they have substantial impact in various areas of application, especially those with a combinatorial structure. We describe such a bound in this section for the case when the \( D_k \) are bounded random variables.

#### 4.21 Theorem (Hoeffding inequality)

Let \((Y_n, \mathcal{F}_n), n \geq 0\) be a martingale such that \( |Y_k - Y_{k-1}| \leq K_k \) (a.s.) for all \( k \) and some real sequence \((K_k)\). Then
\[
P(Y_n - Y_0 \geq x) \leq \exp(-\frac{x^2}{2L_n}), \quad x > 0,
\]
where \( L_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} K_k^2 \).

Since \( Y_n \) is a martingale, so is \(-Y_n\), and thus the same bound is valid for \( \mathbb{P}(Y_n - Y_0 \leq -x) \). Such inequalities are often named after Azuma [23] and Hoeffding [168].
Theorem 4.21 is one of a family of inequalities frequently used in probabilistic combinatorics, in what is termed the ‘method of bounded differences’. See the discussion in [226]. Its applications are of the following general form. Suppose that we are given $N$ random variables $X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N$, and we wish to study the behaviour of some function $Z = Z(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_N)$. For example, the $X_i$ might be the sizes of objects to be packed into bins, and $Z$ the minimum number of bins required to pack them. Let $\mathcal{F}_n = \sigma(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_n)$, and define the martingale $Y_n = \mathbb{E}(Z | \mathcal{F}_n)$. Thus, $Y_0 = \mathbb{E}(Z)$ and $Y_N = Z$. If the martingale differences are bounded, Theorem 4.21 provides a bound for the tail probability $\mathbb{P}(|Z - \mathbb{E}(Z)| \geq x)$. We shall see an application of this type at Theorem 11.13, which deals with the chromatic number of random graphs. Further applications may be found in [148, Sect. 12.2], for example.

**Proof.** The function $g(d) = e^{\psi d}$ is convex for $\psi > 0$, and therefore

$$e^{\psi d} \leq \frac{1}{2} (1 - d) e^{-\psi} + \frac{1}{2} (1 + d) e^{\psi}, \quad |d| \leq 1. \quad (4.22)$$

Applying this to a random variable $D$ having mean 0 and satisfying $\mathbb{P}(|D| \leq 1) = 1$, we obtain

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{\psi D}) \leq \frac{1}{2} (e^{-\psi} + e^{\psi}) < e^{\psi^2}, \quad \psi > 0, \quad (4.23)$$

where the final inequality is shown by a comparison of the coefficients of the powers $\psi^n$.

By Markov’s inequality,

$$\mathbb{P}(Y_n - Y_0 \geq x) \leq e^{-\theta x} \mathbb{E}(e^{\theta(Y_n - Y_0)}), \quad \theta > 0. \quad (4.24)$$

With $D_n = Y_n - Y_{n-1}$,

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{\theta(Y_n - Y_0)}) = \mathbb{E}(e^{\theta(Y_{n-1} - Y_0)} e^{\theta D_n}).$$

Since $Y_{n-1} - Y_0$ is $\mathcal{F}_{n-1}$-measurable,

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{\theta(Y_{n-1} - Y_0)} | \mathcal{F}_{n-1}) = e^{\theta(Y_{n-1} - Y_0)} \mathbb{E}(e^{\theta D_n} | \mathcal{F}_{n-1}) \leq e^{\theta(Y_{n-1} - Y_0)} \exp \left( \frac{1}{2} \theta^2 K_n^2 \right), \quad (4.25)$$

by (4.23) applied to the random variable $D_n/K_n$. Take expectations of (4.25) and iterate to obtain

$$\mathbb{E}(e^{\theta(Y_n - Y_0)}) \leq \mathbb{E}(e^{\theta(Y_{n-1} - Y_0)}) \exp \left( \frac{1}{2} \theta^2 K_n^2 \right) \leq \exp \left( \frac{1}{2} \theta^2 L_n \right).$$

Therefore, by (4.24),

$$\mathbb{P}(Y_n - Y_0 \geq x) \leq \exp(-\theta x + \frac{1}{2} \theta^2 L_n), \quad \theta > 0.$$
4.5 Influence for Product Measures

Let \( x > 0 \), and set \( \theta = x/L_n \) (this is the value that minimizes the exponent). Then

\[
P(Y_n - Y_0 \geq x) \leq \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}x^2/L_n\right), \quad x > 0,
\]

as required. \( \square \)

4.5 Influence for Product Measures

Let \( N \geq 1 \) and \( E = \{1, 2, \ldots, N\} \), and write \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^E \). Let \( \mu \) be a probability measure on \( \Omega \) and \( A \) an event (that is, a subset of \( \Omega \)). Two ways of defining the ‘influence’ of an element \( e \in E \) on the event \( A \) come to mind. The conditional influence is defined to be

\[
J_A(e) = \mu(A | \omega(e) = 1) - \mu(A | \omega(e) = 0).
\]

The absolute influence is

\[
I_A(e) = \mu(1_A(\omega^e) \neq 1_A(\omega_e)),
\]

where \( 1_A \) is the indicator function of \( A \), and \( \omega^e, \omega_e \) are the configurations given by (4.6). Note that the above influences depend on the choice of measure \( \mu \).

In a voting analogy, each of \( N \) voters has one vote, and \( A \) is the set of vote-vectors that result in a given outcome. With the vote-vector chosen according to \( \mu \), the quantities \( I_A(e), J_A(e) \) may be interpreted as the ‘influence’ of voter \( e \) on the outcome.

We make two remarks concerning the above definitions.

(a) First, if \( A \) is increasing,

\[
I_A(e) = \mu(A^c) - \mu(A_e),
\]

where

\[
A^c = \{\omega \in \Omega : \omega^c \notin A\}, \quad A_e = \{\omega \in \Omega : \omega_e \in A\}.
\]

(b) It is not generally the case that \( I_A(e) = J_A(e) \); see [121] and the remark after Theorem 4.35 below. If \( A \) is increasing and, in addition, \( \mu \) is a product measure, then \( I_A(e) = J_A(e) \).

Let \( \phi_p \) be product measure with density \( p \) on \( \Omega \), and write \( \varphi = \phi_{1/2} \), the uniform measure. All logarithms are taken to base 2 until further notice.

There has been extensive study of the largest absolute influence, namely \( \max_e I_A(e) \), when \( \mu \) is a product measure, and this has been used to obtain ‘sharp threshold’ theorems for the probability \( \phi_p(A) \) of an increasing event \( A \) viewed as a function of \( p \). The principal theorems are given in this section, with proofs in the next. The account presented here differs in a number of respects from the original references.
4.28 Theorem (Influence) [179] There exists a constant $c \in (0, \infty)$ such that the following holds. Let $N \geq 1$, let $E$ be a finite set with $|E| = N$, and let $A$ be a subset of $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$ with $\phi(A) \in (0, 1)$. Then

$$\sum_{e \in E} I_A(e) \geq c\phi(A)(1 - \phi(A)) \log[1 / \max_e I_A(e)],$$

where the reference measure is $\phi = \phi_1$. There exists $e \in E$ such that

$$I_A(e) \geq c\phi(A)(1 - \phi(A)) \frac{\log N}{N}.$$ 

Note that

$$\phi(A)(1 - \phi(A)) \geq \frac{1}{2} \min\{\phi(A), 1 - \phi(A)\}.$$ 

We indicate at this stage the reason why (4.29) implies (4.30). We may assume that $m = \max_e I_A(e)$ satisfies $m > 0$, since otherwise

$$\phi(A)(1 - \phi(A)) = 0.$$ 

Since

$$\sum_{e \in E} I_A(e) \leq Nm,$$

we have by (4.29) that

$$\frac{m}{\log(1/m)} \geq \frac{c\phi(A)(1 - \phi(A))}{N}.$$

Inequality (4.30) follows with an amended value of $c$, by the monotonicity of $m/\log(1/m)$ or otherwise.\footnote{When $N = 1$, there is nothing to prove. The case $N \geq 2$ is left as an exercise.}

Such results have applications to several topics including random graphs, random walks, and percolation; see [181]. We summarize two such applications next, and we defer until Section 5.8 an application to site percolation on the triangular lattice.

I. First-passage percolation This is the theory of passage times on a graph whose edges have random ‘travel-times’. Suppose we assign to each edge $e$ of the $d$-dimensional cubic lattice $\mathbb{Z}^d$ a random travel-time $T_e$, the $T_e$ being non-negative and independent with a common distribution function $F$. The passage time of a path $\pi$ is the sum of the travel-times of its edges. Given two vertices $u, v$, the passage time $T_{u,v}$ is defined as the infimum of the passage times of the set of paths joining $u$ to $v$. The main question is to understand the asymptotic properties of $T_{0,v}$ as $|v| \to \infty$. This model for
4.5 Influence for Product Measures

the time-dependent flow of material was introduced by Hammersley and Welsh [160] and has been studied extensively since.

It is a consequence of the subadditive ergodic theorem that, subject to a suitable moment condition, the (deterministic) limit

$$\mu_v = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{1}{n} T_{0,nv}$$

exists almost surely. Indeed, the subadditive ergodic theorem was conceived originally in order to prove such a statement for first-passage percolation. The constant $\mu_v$ is called the time constant in the direction $v$. It is an open problem to understand the asymptotic behaviour of $\text{var}(T_{0,v})$ as $|v| \to \infty$.

Various relevant results are known, and one of the best uses an influence theorem due to Talagrand [276] and related to Theorem 4.28. Specifically, it is proved in [36] that $\text{var}(T_{0,v}) \leq C|v|/\log|v|$ for some constant $C = C(a, b, d)$, in the situation when each $T_e$ is equally likely to take either of the two positive values $a$, $b$. It has been predicted that $\text{var}(T_{0,v}) \sim |v|^{2/3}$ when $d = 2$. This work was continued in [34, 80].

II. Voronoi percolation model This continuum model is constructed as follows in $\mathbb{R}^2$. Let $\Pi$ be a Poisson process of intensity 1 in $\mathbb{R}^2$. With any $u \in \Pi$, we associate the ‘tile’

$$T_u = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |x - u| \leq |x - v| \text{ for all } v \in \Pi\}.$$ 

Two points $u, v \in \Pi$ are declared adjacent, written $u \sim v$, if $T_u$ and $T_v$ share a boundary segment. We now consider site percolation on the graph $\Pi$ with this adjacency relation. It was long believed that the critical percolation probability of this model is $\frac{1}{2}$ (almost surely, with respect to the Poisson measure), and this was proved by Bollobás and Riordan [53] using a version of the threshold Theorem 4.69 below, that is consequent on Theorem 4.28.

Bollobás and Riordan [54] indicated a similar argument leading to an approach to the proof that the critical probability of bond percolation on $\mathbb{Z}^2$ equals $\frac{1}{2}$. They used Theorem 4.69 in place of Kesten’s explicit proof of sharp threshold for this model; see [186, 187]. A “shorter” version of [54] is presented in Section 5.8 for the case of site percolation on the triangular lattice.

We return to the influence theorem and its ramifications. There are several useful references concerning influence for product measures; see [113, 114, 179, 181, 184] and their bibliographies.\(^2\) The order of magnitude $N^{-1} \log N$ is the best possible in (4.30), as shown by the following ‘tribes’ example

\(^2\)The treatment presented here makes heavy use of the work of the ‘Israeli’ school.
taken from [35]. A population of \( N \) individuals comprises \( t \) ‘tribes’, each of cardinality \( s = \log N - \log \log N + \alpha \). Each individual votes 1 with probability \( \frac{1}{2} \) and otherwise 0, and different individuals vote independently of one another. Let \( A \) be the event that there exists a tribe all of whose members vote 1. It is easily seen that

\[
1 - P(A) = \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2^s} \right)^t \sim e^{-t/2^s} \sim e^{-1/2^u},
\]

and, for all \( i \),

\[
I_A(i) = \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2^s} \right)^{t-1} \frac{1}{2^{t-1}} \sim e^{-1/2^u} 2^{-\alpha + 1} \log N \frac{N}{N}.
\]

The ‘basic’ Theorem 4.28 on the discrete cube \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^E \) can be extended to the ‘continuum’ cube \( K = [0, 1]^E \), and thence to other product spaces. We state the result for \( K \) next. Let \( \lambda \) be uniform (Lebesgue) measure on \( K \). For a measurable subset \( A \subseteq K \), it is usual (see, for example, [58]) to define the influence of \( e \in E \) on \( A \) as

\[
L_A(e) = \lambda_{N-1}(\{ \omega \in K : 1_A(\omega) \text{ is a non-constant function of } \omega(e) \}).
\]

That is, \( L_A(e) \) is the \((N - 1)\)-dimensional Lebesgue measure of the set of all \( \psi \in [0, 1]^{E \setminus \{e\}} \) with the property that: both \( A \) and its complement \( \overline{A} \) intersect the ‘fibre’

\[
F_\psi = \{ \psi \} \times [0, 1] = \{ \omega \in K : \omega(f) = \psi(f), \ f \neq e \}.
\]

It is more natural to consider elements \( \psi \) for which \( A \cap F_\psi \) has Lebesgue measure strictly between 0 and 1, and thus we define the influence in this text by

\[
I_A(e) = \lambda_{N-1}(\{ \psi \in [0, 1]^{E \setminus \{e\}} : 0 < \lambda_1(A \cap F_\psi) < 1 \}).
\]

Here and later, when convenient, we write \( \lambda_k \) for \( k \)-dimensional Lebesgue measure. Note that \( I_A(e) \leq L_A(e) \).

4.32 Theorem [58] There exists a constant \( c \in (0, \infty) \) such that the following holds. Let \( N \geq 1 \), let \( E \) be a finite set with \( |E| = N \), and let \( A \) be
an increasing subset of the cube $K = [0, 1]^E$ with $\lambda(A) \in (0, 1)$. Then
\[
\sum_{e \in E} I_A(e) \geq c\lambda(A)(1 - \lambda(A)) \log\left[\frac{1}{2m}\right],
\]
where $m = \max_e I_A(e)$, and the reference measure on $K$ is Lebesgue measure $\lambda$. There exists $e \in E$ such that
\[
I_A(e) \geq c\lambda(A)(1 - \lambda(A)) \log\left[\frac{1}{2m}\right],
\]
with $m = \max_e I_A(e) = \max_e J_A(e)$. We shall see in Theorem 4.38 that the condition of monotonicity of $A$ can be removed. The factor ‘2’ in (4.33) is innocent in the following regard. The inequality is important only when $m$ is small, and, for $m \leq \frac{1}{3}$ say, we may remove the ‘2’ and replace $c$ by a smaller positive constant.

Results similar to those of Theorems 4.28 and 4.32 were proved in [121] for certain non-product measures and all increasing events.

4.35 Theorem [121] Let $\mu$ be a positive probability measure on the discrete space $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$ satisfying the FKG lattice condition (4.12). For any increasing subset $A$ of $\Omega$ with $\mu(A) \in (0, 1)$, we have that
\[
\sum_{e \in E} J_A(e) \geq c\mu(A)(1 - \mu(A)) \log\left[\frac{1}{2m}\right],
\]
where $m = \max_e J_A(e)$. Furthermore, there exists $e \in E$ such that
\[
J_A(e) \geq c\mu(A)(1 - \mu(A)) \log\left[\frac{1}{2m}\right].
\]

Note the use of conditional influence $J_A(e)$, with non-product reference measure $\mu$. Indeed, (4.37) can fail for all $e$ when $J_A$ is replaced by $I_A$. The proof of (4.36) makes use of Theorem 4.32 and is omitted here; see [121, 122].

Theorem 4.32 is concerned with products of the Lebesgue probability space $([0, 1], \lambda_1)$. It may be extended as follows to powers of an arbitrary probability space, that is, with $([0, 1], \lambda_1)$ replaced by a general probability space. Let $|E| = N$ and let $X = (\Sigma, F, P)$ be a probability space. We write $X^E$ for the product space of $X$. Let $A \subseteq \Sigma^E$ be measurable. The influence of $e \in E$ is given as in (4.31) by
\[
I_A(e) = \mathbb{P}(\{\psi \in \Sigma^E : \psi(e) \neq 0 < P(A \cap F_\psi) < 1\}),
\]
with $P = P^E$ and $F_\psi = \{\psi\} \times \Sigma$, the ‘fibre’ of all $\omega \in X^E$ such that $\omega(f) = \psi(f)$ for $f \neq e$.

The following theorem amounts to two statements: that the influence inequalities are valid for general product spaces, and that they hold for non-increasing events.
4.38 Theorem [58, 137] There exists a constant $c \in (0, \infty)$ such that, for any probability space $X = (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, P)$, any finite set $E$, and any event $A \in \mathcal{F}^E$ satisfying $P(A) \in (0, 1)$,

$$\sum_{e \in E} I_A(e) \geq cP(A)(1 - P(A)) \log(1/m),$$

where $\mathcal{P} = P^E$ and $m = \max_e I_A(e)$. There exists $e \in E$ with

$$I_A(e) \geq cP(A)(1 - P(A)) \log \frac{N}{N}.$$

The proof of Theorem 4.38 is omitted here, and readers are referred to [137].

4.6 Proofs of Influence Theorems

This section contains the proofs of the theorems in the last.

Proof of Theorem 4.28. We use a (discrete) Fourier analysis of functions $f : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$. Define the inner product by

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \phi(fg), \quad f, g : \Omega \to \mathbb{R},$$

where $\phi = \phi_\mathbb{R}$, so that the $L^2$-norm of $f$ is given by

$$\|f\|_2 = \sqrt{\phi(f^2)} = \sqrt{\langle f, f \rangle}.$$

We call $f$ Boolean if it takes values in the set $\{0, 1\}$. Boolean functions are in one–one correspondence with the power set of $E$ via the relation $f = 1_A \iff A$. If $f$ is Boolean, say $f = 1_A$, then

$$\|f\|_2^2 = \phi(f^2) = \phi(f) = \phi(A).$$

For $F \subseteq E$, let

$$u_F(\omega) = \prod_{e \in F} (-1)^{\omega(e)} = (-1)^{\sum_{e \in F} \omega(e)}, \quad \omega \in \Omega.$$

It can be checked that the functions $u_F$, $F \subseteq E$, form an orthonormal basis for the function space. Thus, a function $f : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$ may be expressed in the form

$$f = \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{f}(F)u_F,$$

where the so-called Fourier–Walsh coefficients of $f$ are given by

$$\hat{f}(F) = \langle f, u_F \rangle, \quad F \subseteq E.$$
In particular, \[
\hat{f}(\emptyset) = \phi(f),
\]
and \[
\langle f, g \rangle = \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{f}(F) \hat{g}(F).
\]
The last formula yields the Parseval relation
\[
(4.42) \quad \|f\|_2^2 = \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{f}(F)^2.
\]

Fourier analysis operates harmoniously with influences as follows. For \(f = 1_A\) and \(e \in E\), let \(f_e(\omega) = f(\omega) - f(\kappa_e \omega)\), where \(\kappa_e \omega\) is the configuration \(\omega\) with the state of \(e\) flipped. Since \(f_e\) takes values in the set \(-1, 0, +1\), we have that \(|f_e| = \hat{f}_e^2\). The Fourier–Walsh coefficients of \(f_e\) are given by
\[
\hat{f}_e(F) = \langle f_e, u_F \rangle = \sum_{\omega \in \Omega} \frac{1}{2^n} [f(\omega) - f(\kappa_e \omega)] (-1)^{|B \cap F|}
\]
\[
= \sum_{\omega \in \Omega} \frac{1}{2^n} f(\omega) \left[ (-1)^{|B \cap F|} - (-1)^{|(B \Delta \{e\}) \cap F|} \right],
\]
where \(B = \eta(\omega) := \{ e \in E : \omega(e) = 1 \}\) is the set of \(\omega\)-open indices. Now,
\[
\left[ (-1)^{|B \cap F|} - (-1)^{|(B \Delta \{e\}) \cap F|} \right] = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } e \notin F, \\ 2(-1)^{|B \cap F|} = 2u_F(\omega) & \text{if } e \in F,
\end{cases}
\]
so that
\[
(4.43) \quad \hat{f}_e(F) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } e \notin F, \\ 2\hat{f}(F) & \text{if } e \in F.
\end{cases}
\]
The influence \(I(e) = I_A(e)\) is the mean of \(|f_e| = \hat{f}_e^2\), so that, by (4.42),
\[
(4.44) \quad I(e) = \|f_e\|_2^2 = 4 \sum_{F : e \in F} \hat{f}(F)^2,
\]
and the total influence is
\[
(4.45) \quad \sum_{e \in E} I(e) = 4 \sum_{F \subseteq E} |F| \hat{f}(F)^2.
\]

We propose to find an upper bound for the sum \(\phi(A) = \sum_F \hat{f}(F)^2\). From (4.45), we will extract an upper bound for the contributions to this sum.
from the $\hat{f}(F)^2$ for large $|F|$. This will be combined with a corresponding estimate for small $|F|$ that will be obtained by considering a re-weighted sum $\sum_{F} \hat{f}(F)^2 \rho^2 |F|$ for $0 < \rho < 1$, as follows.

For $w \in [1, \infty)$, we define the $L^w$-norm
\[
\|g\|_w = \phi(|g|^w)^{1/w}, \quad g : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R},
\]
recalling that $\|g\|_w$ is non-decreasing in $w$. For $\rho \in \mathbb{R}$, let $T_\rho g$ be the function
\[
T_\rho g = \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{g}(F) \rho^{|F|} u_F,
\]
so that
\[
\|T_\rho g\|_2^2 = \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{g}(F)^2 \rho^2 |F|.
\]

When $\rho \in [-1, 1]$, $T_\rho g$ has a probabilistic interpretation. For $\omega \in \Omega$, let $\Psi_\omega = (\Psi_\omega(e) : e \in E)$ be a vector of independent random variables with
\[
\Psi_\omega(e) = \begin{cases} 
\omega(e) & \text{with probability } \frac{1}{2}(1 + \rho), \\
1 - \omega(e) & \text{otherwise}.
\end{cases}
\]
We claim that
\[
(4.46) \quad T_\rho g(\omega) = \mathbb{E}(g(\Psi_\omega)),
\]
thus explaining why $T_\rho$ is sometimes called the ‘noise operator’. Equation (4.46) is proved as follows. First, for $F \subseteq E$,
\[
\mathbb{E}(u_F(\Psi_\omega)) = \mathbb{E}\left(\prod_{e \in F} (-1)^{\Psi_\omega(e)}\right)
= \prod_{e \in F} (-1)^{\Psi_\omega(e)}\left[\frac{1}{2}(1 + \rho) - \frac{1}{2}(1 - \rho)\right]
= \rho^{|F|} u_F(\omega).
\]
Now, $g = \sum_{F} \hat{g}(F) u_F$, so that
\[
\mathbb{E}(g(\Psi_\omega)) = \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{g}(F) \mathbb{E}(u_F(\Psi_\omega))
= \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{g}(F) \rho^{|F|} u_F(\omega) = T_\rho g(\omega),
\]
as claimed at (4.46).

The next proposition is pivotal for the proof of the theorem. It is sometimes referred to as the ‘hypercontractivity’ lemma, and it is related to the log-Sobolev inequality. It is commonly attributed to subsets of Bonami [56], Gross [152], Beckner [29], each of whom has worked on estimates of this type. The proof is omitted.
4.6 Proofs of Influence Theorems

4.47 Proposition For $g : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$ and $\rho > 0$,

$$\|T_\rho g\|_2 \leq \|g\|_{1+\rho^2}.$$

Let $0 < \rho < 1$. Set $g = f_e$ where $f = 1_A$, noting that $g$ takes the values $0, \pm 1$ only. Then,

$$\sum_{F : e \in F} 4 \hat{f}(F)^2 \rho^{2|F|}$$

by (4.43)

$$= \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{f}_e(F)^2 \rho^{2|F|}$$

by (4.47)

$$\leq \|f_e\|^2_{1+\rho^2} = \left[\phi((f_e)^{1+\rho^2})\right]^{2/(1+\rho^2)}$$

by Proposition 4.47

$$= \|f_e\|^2_{2/(1+\rho^2)} = I(e)^{2/(1+\rho^2)}$$

by (4.44).

Therefore,

$$\sum_{e \in E} I(e)^{2/(1+\rho^2)} \geq 4 \sum_{F \subseteq E} |F| \hat{f}(F)^2 \rho^{2|F|}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.48)

Let $t = \phi(A) = \hat{f}(\emptyset)$. By (4.48),

$$\sum_{e \in E} I(e)^{2/(1+\rho^2)} \geq 4 \rho^{2b} \sum_{0 < |F| \leq b} \hat{f}(F)^2$$

$$= 4 \rho^{2b} \left( \sum_{|F| \leq b} \hat{f}(F)^2 - t^2 \right),$$

where $b \in (0, \infty)$ will be chosen later. By (4.45),

$$\sum_{e \in E} I(e) \geq 4b \sum_{|F| > b} \hat{f}(F)^2,$$

which we add to (4.49) to obtain

$$\rho^{-2b} \sum_{e \in E} I(e)^{2/(1+\rho^2)} + \frac{1}{b} \sum_{e \in E} I(e)$$

$$\geq 4 \sum_{F \subseteq E} \hat{f}(F)^2 - 4t^2$$

$$= 4t(1 - t) \quad \text{by (4.42)}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (4.50)

We are now ready to prove (4.29). Let $m = \max_e I(e)$, noting that $m > 0$ since $\phi(A) \neq 0, 1$. The claim is trivial if $m = 1$, and we assume that $m < 1$. Then

$$\sum_{e \in E} I(e)^{4/3} \leq m^{1/3} \sum_{e \in E} I(e),$$
whence, by (4.50) and the choice $\rho^2 = \frac{1}{2}$,

\[(4.51) \quad \left(2^b m^{1/3} + \frac{1}{2}\right) \sum_{e \in E} I(e) \geq 4t(1-t).\]

We choose $b$ such that $2^b m^{1/3} = b^{-1}$, and it is an easy exercise to show that $b \geq A \log(1/m)$ for some absolute constant $A > 0$. With this choice of $b$, (4.29) follows from (4.51) with $c = 2A$. Inequality (4.34) follows, as explained after the statement of the theorem. $\square$

**Proof of Theorem 4.32.** We follow [113]. The idea of the proof is to `discretize' the cube $K$ and the increasing event $A$, and to apply Theorem 4.28.

Let $k \in \{1, 2, \ldots\}$, to be chosen later, and partition the $N$-cube $K = [0, 1]^E$ into $2^k N$ disjoint smaller cubes each of side-length $2^{-k}$. These small cubes are of the form

\[(4.52) \quad B(l) = \prod_{e \in E} [l_e, l_e + 2^{-k}),\]

where $l = (l_e : e \in E)$ and each $l_e$ is a ‘binary decimal’ of the form $l_e = 0.l_e_1l_e_2\cdots l_e_k$ with each $l_e_j \in \{0, 1\}$. There is a special case. When $l_e = 0.11\cdots 1$, we put the closed interval $[l_e, l_e + 2^{-k}]$ into the product of (4.52). Lebesgue measure $\lambda$ on $K$ induces product measure $\phi$ with density $\frac{1}{2}$ on the space $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^k$ of 0/1 vectors $(l_e^j : j = 1, 2, \ldots, k, e \in E)$. We call each $B(l)$ a ‘small cube’.

Let $A \subseteq K$ be increasing. For later convenience, we assume that the complement $\overline{A}$ is a closed subset of $K$. This amounts to reallocating the ‘boundary’ of $A$ to its complement. Since $A$ is increasing, this changes neither $\lambda(A)$ nor any influence.

We claim that it suffices to consider events $A$ that are the unions of small cubes. For a measurable subset $A \subseteq K$, let $\hat{A}$ be the subset of $K$ that ‘approximates’ to $A$, given by $\hat{A} = \bigcup_{B(l) \cap A \neq \emptyset} B(l)$, where

$$\mathcal{A} = \{l \in \Omega : B(l) \cap A \neq \emptyset\}. $$

Note that $\mathcal{A}$ is an increasing subset of the discrete $kN$-cube $\Omega$. We write $I_{\hat{A}}(e, j)$ for the influence of the index $(e, j)$ on the subset $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \Omega$ under the measure $\phi$. The next task is to show that, when replacing $A$ by $\hat{A}$, the measure and influences of $A$ are not greatly changed.

**4.53 Lemma [58]** In the above notation,

\[(4.54) \quad 0 \leq \lambda(\hat{A}) - \lambda(A) \leq N2^{-k},\]

\[(4.55) \quad I_{\hat{A}}(e) - I_A(e) \leq N2^{-k}, \quad e \in E.\]
Proof. Clearly $A \subseteq \hat{A}$, whence $\lambda(A) \leq \lambda(\hat{A})$. Let $\mu : K \rightarrow K$ be the projection that maps $(x_f : f \in E)$ to $(x_f - m : f \in E)$, where $m = \min_{g \in E} x_g$. We have that

\[ (4.56) \quad \lambda(\hat{A}) - \lambda(A) \leq |R| 2^{-kN}, \]

where $R$ is the set of small cubes that intersect both $A$ and its complement $\overline{A}$. Since $A$ is increasing, $R$ cannot contain two distinct elements $r, r'$ with $\mu(r) = \mu(r')$. Therefore, $|R|$ is no larger than the number of faces of small cubes lying in the ‘hyperfaces’ of $K$, that is,

\[ (4.57) \quad |R| \leq N 2^{k(N-1)}. \]

Inequality (4.54) follows by (4.56).

Let $e \in E$, and let $K^e = \{ \omega \in K : \omega(e) = 1 \}$. The hyperface $K^e$ of $K$ is the union of ‘small faces’ of small cubes. Each such small face $L$ corresponds to a ‘tube’ $T(L)$ comprising small cubes of $K$, based on $L$ with axis parallel to the $e$th direction (see Figure 4.1). Such a tube has ‘last’ face $L$ and ‘first’ face $F = F(L) := T(F) \cap \{ \omega \in K : \omega(e) = 0 \}$, and we write $B_L$ (respectively, $B_F$) for the (unique) small cube with face $L$ (respectively, $F$). Let $\mathcal{L}$ denote the set of all last faces.

We shall consider the contribution to $\Delta := I_{\hat{A}}(e) - I_A(e)$ made by each $L \in \mathcal{L}$. Since $\hat{A}$ is a union of small cubes, the contribution of $L \in \mathcal{L}$ to $I_{\hat{A}}(e)$, denoted $\hat{k}(L)$, equals either 0 or $\lambda_{N-1}(L) = 2^{-k(N-1)}$. As in (4.31), the contribution of $L$ to $I_A(e)$ is

\[ (4.58) \quad \kappa(L) = \lambda_{N-1}(\{ \psi \in L : 0 < \lambda_1(A \cap F_\psi) < 1 \}). \]

(Here, $F_\psi$ denotes the fibre associated with $(\psi_f : f \in E \setminus \{e\}$.) Note that $0 < \kappa(L) \leq \lambda_{N-1}(L)$, and write $\Delta(L) = \hat{k}(L) - \kappa(L)$.

Since (4.57) is an upper bound for $\Delta$, we need consider only those $L$ for which $\Delta(L) > 0$. We may assume that $\hat{k}(L) = \lambda_{N-1}(L)$, since otherwise $\Delta(L) = -\kappa(L) \leq 0$. Under this assumption, it follows that $A \cap B_F = \emptyset$ and $A \cap B_L \neq \emptyset$. Since $A$ is increasing, there exists $\alpha \in A \cap L$.

We may assume that $\kappa(L) < \lambda_{N-1}(L)$, since otherwise $\Delta(L) \leq 0$. Since $A \cap B_F = \emptyset$, the subset $\{ \psi \in L : \lambda_1(A \cap F_\psi) = 0 \}$ has strictly positive $\lambda_{N-1}$-measure. Since $\overline{A}$ is closed, there exists $\beta \in \overline{A} \cap L$.

We adapt the argument leading to (4.57), working within the $(N-1)$-dimensional set $K^e$, to deduce that the total contribution to $\Delta$ from all such $L \in \mathcal{L}$ is bounded above by $(N-1) 2^{k(N-2)} \times 2^{-k(N-1)} \leq N 2^{-k}$. \(\square\)

Assume $0 < t = \lambda(A) < 1$, and let $m = \max_\varepsilon I_A(e)$. We may assume that $0 < m < \frac{1}{2}$, since otherwise (4.33) is a triviality. With $\hat{A}$ given as
above for some value of \( k \) to be chosen soon, we write \( \hat{t} = \lambda(\hat{A}) \) and \( \hat{m} = \max_e I_{\hat{A}}(e) \). We shall prove below that

\[
\sum_{e \in E} I_{\hat{A}}(e) \geq c\hat{t}(1 - \hat{t})\log[1/(2\hat{m})],
\]

for some absolute constant \( c > 0 \). Suppose for the moment that this has been proved. Let \( \epsilon = \epsilon_k = N2^{-k} \), and let \( k = k(N, A) \) be sufficiently large that the following inequalities hold:

\[
\epsilon < \min \left\{ \frac{1}{2}t(1 - t), \frac{1}{2} - \hat{m} \right\}, \quad \log \left( \frac{1}{2(m + \epsilon)} \right) \geq \frac{1}{2} \log \left( \frac{1}{2m} \right),
\]

\[
N\epsilon < \frac{1}{8}c\hat{t}(1 - t) \log[1/(2m)].
\]

By Lemma 4.53,

\[
|t - \hat{t}| \leq \epsilon, \quad \hat{m} \leq m + \epsilon,
\]

whence, by (4.60),

\[
|t - \hat{t}| \leq \frac{1}{2}t(1 - t), \quad \hat{m} < \frac{1}{2}, \quad \log[1/(2\hat{m})] \geq \frac{1}{2} \log[1/(2m)].
\]
4.6 Proofs of Influence Theorems

By Lemma 4.53 again,
\[ \sum_{e \in A} I_A(e) \geq \sum_{e \in A} I_{\hat{A}}(e) - N\epsilon. \]

The required inequality follows thus by (4.59), (4.61), and (4.63):
\[
\sum_{e \in A} I_A(e) \geq c[t(1 - t) - |t - \hat{t}|] \log[1/(2\hat{m})] - N\epsilon \\
\geq \frac{1}{8}ct(1 - t) \log[1/(2m)].
\]

It suffices therefore to prove (4.59), and we shall henceforth assume that (4.64) holds. We return to the proof of (4.59). Assume that \( m = \max_e I_A(e) < \frac{1}{2} \).

**4.65 Lemma [58, 113]** For \( e \in E \),
\[
\sum_{j=1}^{k} I_A(e, j) \leq 2I_A(e).
\]

**Proof.** Let \( e \in E \), and let \( r = (r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_{N-1}) \in ([0, 1]^k \setminus \{e\}) \). Consider the 'tube' \( T(r) \) comprising the union of the small cubes \( B(r, s) \) of (4.52) over the \( 2^k \) possible values in \( s \in [0, 1]^k \). We see after a little thought (see Figure 4.1) that
\[
I_A(e, j) = \sum_{r} \left( \frac{1}{2} ight)^{kN - 1} K(r, j),
\]
where \( K(r, j) \) is the number of unordered pairs \( S = B(r, s), \ S' = B(r, s') \) of small cubes of \( T(r) \) such that: \( S \subseteq A, \ S' \not\subseteq A, \) and \( |s - s'| = 2^{-j} \). Since \( A \) is an increasing subset of \( K \), we can see that
\[
K(r, j) \leq 2^{k-j}, \quad j = 1, 2, \ldots, k,
\]
whence
\[
\sum_j I_A(e, j) \leq \frac{2^k}{2^{kN-1}} J_N = \frac{2}{2^{k(N-1)}} J_N,
\]
where \( J_N \) is the number of tubes \( T(r) \) that intersect both \( A \) and its complement \( \overline{A} \). By (4.64),
\[
I_A(e) = \frac{1}{2^{k(N-1)}} J_N,
\]
and the lemma is proved. \( \square \)

We return to the proof of (4.59). Assume that \( m = \max_e I_A(e) < \frac{1}{2} \). By Lemma 4.65,
\[
I_A(e, j) \leq 2m \quad \text{for all } e, j.
\]
By (4.29) applied to the event $A$ of the $kN$-cube $\Omega$,

$$\sum_{e,j} I_A(e, j) \geq c_1 t(1 - t) \log[1/(2m)]$$

where $c_1$ is an absolute positive constant and $t = \lambda(A)$. By Lemma 4.65 again,

$$\sum_{e \in E} I_A(e) \geq \frac{1}{2} c_1 t(1 - t) \log[1/(2m)]$$

as required at (4.59). 

\[\square\]

### 4.7 Russo’s Formula and Sharp Thresholds

Let $|E| = N$, and let $\phi_p$ denote product measure with density $p$ on the finite product space $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$.

#### 4.66 Theorem (Russo’s formula) For any event $A \subseteq \Omega$,

$$\frac{d}{dp} \phi_p(A) = \sum_{e \in E} [\phi_p(A^e) - \phi(A_e)].$$

Russo’s formula, or its equivalent, has been discovered independently by a number of authors. See, for example, [25, 224, 255]. The element $e \in E$ is called pivotal for the event $A$ if the occurrence or not of $A$ depends on the state of $e$, that is, if $1_A(\omega_e) \neq 1_A(\omega^e)$. When $A$ is increasing, the above summation equals $\sum_e I_A(e)$, where the absolute influence $I_A(e)$ is given in (4.27). That is, Russo’s formula for increasing events states that the derivative $\phi'_p(A)$ equals the mean number of pivotal elements of $E$.

**Proof.** This is standard; see for example [127]. Since

$$\phi_p(A) = \sum_{\omega} 1_A(\omega) \phi_p(\omega),$$

it is elementary that

$$\frac{d}{dp} \phi_p(A) = \sum_{\omega \in \Omega} \left( \frac{\eta(\omega)}{p} - \frac{N - |\eta(\omega)|}{1 - p} \right) 1_A(\omega) \phi_p(\omega),$$

where $\eta(\omega) = \{e \in E : \omega(e) = 1\}$ and $N = |E|$. Let $1_e$ be the indicator function that $e$ is open. Since $\phi_p(1_e) = p$ for all $e \in E$, and $|\eta| = \sum 1_e$,

$$p(1 - p) \frac{d}{dp} \phi_p(A) = \phi_p(1|\eta| - pN)1_A$$

$$= \sum_{e \in E} [\phi_p(1_e1_A) - \phi_p(1_e)\phi_p(1_A)].$$
The summand equals 

\[ p\phi_p(A^c) - p\left[p\phi_p(A^c) + (1-p)\phi_p(A_e)\right], \]

and the formula is proved. \(\square\)

Let \(A\) be an increasing subset of \(\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E\) that is non-trivial in that \(A \neq \emptyset, \Omega\). The function \(f(p) = \phi_p(A)\) is non-decreasing, with \(f(0) = 0\) and \(f(1) = 1\). The next theorem is an immediate consequence of Theorems 4.38 and 4.66 (or of Exercise 4.13).

4.68 Theorem \([276]\) There exists a constant \(c > 0\) such that the following holds. Let \(A\) be an increasing subset of \(\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E\) that is non-trivial in that \(A \neq \emptyset, \Omega\). For \(p \in (0, 1)\),

\[ \frac{d}{dp}\phi_p(A) \geq c\phi_p(A)(1 - \phi_p(A)) \log[1/(2 \max I_A(e))], \]

where \(I_A(e)\) is the influence of \(e\) on \(A\) with respect to the measure \(\phi_p\).

Theorem 4.68 takes an especially simple form when \(A\) has a certain symmetry property. In such a case, the sharp-threshold theorem given below implies that \(f(p) = \phi_p(A)\) increases from (near) 0 to (near) 1 over an interval of \(p\)-values with length of order not exceeding \(1/\log N\).

Let \(\Pi\) be the group of permutations of \(E\). Any \(\pi \in \Pi\) acts on \(\Omega\) by \(\pi \omega = (\omega(\pi_e) : e \in E)\). We say that a subgroup \(A\) of \(\Pi\) acts transitively on \(E\) if, for all pairs \(j, k \in E\), there exists \(\alpha \in A\) with \(\alpha_j = k\).

Let \(A\) be a subgroup of \(\Pi\). A probability measure \(\phi\) on \((\Omega, \mathcal{F})\) is called \(A\)-invariant if \(\phi(\omega) = \phi(\alpha \omega)\) for all \(\alpha \in A\). An event \(A \in \mathcal{F}\) is called \(A\)-invariant if \(A = \alpha A\) for all \(\alpha \in A\). It is easily seen that, for any subgroup \(A\), \(\phi_p\) is \(A\)-invariant.

4.69 Theorem (Sharp threshold) \([114]\) There exists a constant \(c\) satisfying \(c \in (0, \infty)\) such that the following holds. Let \(N = |E| \geq 1\). Let \(A \in \mathcal{F}\) be an increasing event, and suppose there exists a subgroup \(A\) of \(\Pi\) acting transitively on \(E\) such that \(A\) is \(A\)-invariant. Then

\[ \frac{d}{dp}\phi_p(A) \geq c\phi_p(A)(1 - \phi_p(A)) \log N, \quad p \in (0, 1). \]

From amongst the issues arising from the sharp-threshold Theorem 4.69, we identify two. First, to what degree is information about the group \(A\) relevant to the sharpness of the threshold? Secondly, what can be said when \(p = p_N\) tends to 0 as \(N \to \infty\)? The reader is referred to \([181]\) for some answers to these questions.
Proof. We show first that the influences \( I_A(e) \) are constant for \( e \in E \). Let \( e, f \in E \), and find \( \alpha \in A \) such that \( \alpha e = f \). Under the given conditions,
\[
\phi_p(A, 1_f = 1) = \sum_{\omega \in A} \phi_p(\omega) 1_f(\omega) = \sum_{\omega \in A} \phi_p(\alpha \omega) 1_e(\alpha \omega)
\]
\[
= \sum_{\omega' \in A} \phi_p(\omega') 1_e(\omega') = \phi_p(A, 1_e = 1),
\]
where \( 1_e \) is the indicator function that \( \omega(e) = 1 \). On setting \( A = \Omega \), we deduce that \( \phi_p(1_f = 1) = \phi_p(1_e = 1) \). On dividing, we obtain that \( \phi_p(A | 1_f = 1) = \phi_p(A | 1_e = 1) \). A similar equality holds with \( 1 \) replaced by \( 0 \), and therefore \( I_A(e) = I_A(f) \).

It follows that
\[
\sum_{f \in E} I_A(f) = NI_A(e).
\]
By Theorem 4.38 applied to the product space \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \phi_p)\), the right side is at least \( c \phi_p(A)(1 - \phi_p(A)) \log N \), and (4.70) is a consequence of Theorem 4.66.

Let \( \epsilon \in (0, \frac{1}{2}) \) and let \( A \) be increasing and non-trivial. Under the conditions of Theorem 4.69, \( \phi_p(A) \) increases from \( \epsilon \) to \( 1 - \epsilon \) over an interval of values of \( p \) having length of order not exceeding \( 1 / \log N \). This amounts to a quantification of the so-called S-shape results described and cited in [127, Sect. 2.5]. An early step in the direction of sharp thresholds was taken by Russo [256] (see also [276]), but without the quantification of \( \log N \).

Essentially the same conclusions hold for a family \((\mu_p : p \in (0, 1))\) of probability measures given as follows in terms of a positive probability measure \( \mu \) satisfying the FKG lattice condition. For \( p \in (0, 1) \), let \( \mu_p \) be given by
\[
\mu_p(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z_p} \left( \prod_{e \in E} p^{\omega(e)}(1 - p)^{1 - \omega(e)} \right) \mu(\omega), \quad \omega \in \Omega,
\]
where \( Z_p \) is chosen in such a way that \( \mu_p \) is a probability measure. It is easy to check that each \( \mu_p \) satisfies the FKG lattice condition. It turns out that, for an increasing event \( A \neq \emptyset, \Omega \),
\[
\frac{d}{dp} \mu_p(A) \geq \frac{c \xi_p}{p(1 - p)} \mu_p(A)(1 - \mu_p(A)) \log[1/(2 \max_e J_A(e))],
\]
where
\[
\xi_p = \min_{e \in E} \left[ \mu_p(\omega(e) = 1) \mu_p(\omega(e) = 0) \right].
\]
Note the use of conditional influence \( J_A(e) \) rather than absolute influence.
The proof of (4.72) uses inequality (4.36); see [121, 122]. This extension of Theorem 4.68 is useful in the study of the random-cluster model (see Chapter 8) and of the Ising model with external field (see [122]).

A slight variant of Theorem 4.69 is valid for measures µ_p given by (4.71).

4.73 Theorem (Sharp threshold) [121, 130] Let µ_p be given by (4.71) where µ is a positive probability measure satisfying the FKG lattice condition. There exists a constant c satisfying c ∈ (0, ∞) such that the following holds. Let N = |E| ≥ 1. Let A ∈ F be an increasing event, and suppose there exists a subgroup A of Π acting transitively on E such that both A and µ are A-invariant. Then

\[ \frac{d}{dp} \mu_p(A) \geq c \xi_p p(1 - p)^{-1} \mu_p(A)(1 - \phi_p(A)) \log N, \quad p \in (0, 1). \]

The proof follows that of Theorem 4.69, with (4.72) in place of Theorem 4.68.

4.8 Exercises

4.1 Let X_n, Y_n ∈ L^2(\Omega, F, P) be such that X_n → X, Y_n → Y in L^1. Show that X_nY_n → XY in L^1. [Reminder: L^p is the set of random variables Z with E(|Z|^p) < ∞, and Z_n → Z in L^p if E(|Z_n - Z|^p) → 0. You may use any standard fact such as the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality.]

4.2 [164] Let \( \mathbb{P}_p \) be the product measure on the space \([0, 1]^n\) with density \( p \). Show by induction on \( n \) that \( \mathbb{P}_p \) satisfies the Harris–FKG inequality, which is to say that \( \mathbb{P}_p(A \cap B) \geq \mathbb{P}_p(A)\mathbb{P}_p(B) \) for any pair \( A, B \) of increasing events.

4.3 (continuation) Consider bond percolation on the square lattice \( \mathbb{Z}^2 \). Let X and Y be increasing functions on the sample space such that \( \mathbb{E}_p(X^2), \mathbb{E}_p(Y^2) < \infty \). Show that X and Y are positively correlated in that \( \mathbb{E}(XY) \geq \mathbb{E}(X)\mathbb{E}(Y) \).

4.4 Coupling. (a) Take \( \Omega = [0, 1] \), with the Borel \( \sigma \)-field and Lebesgue measure \( \mathbb{P} \). For any distribution function \( F \), define a random variable \( Z_F \) on \( \Omega \) by

\[ Z_F(\omega) = \inf\{z : \omega \leq F(z)\}, \quad \omega \in \Omega. \]

Prove that

\[ \mathbb{P}(Z_F \leq z) = \mathbb{P}(\{0, F(z)\}) = F(z), \]

whence \( Z_F \) has distribution function \( F \).

(b) For real-valued random variables \( X, Y \), we write \( X \leq_{st} Y \) if \( \mathbb{P}(X \leq u) \geq \mathbb{P}(Y \leq u) \) for all \( u \). Show that \( X \leq_{st} Y \) if and only if there exist random variables \( X', Y' \) on \( \Omega \), with the same respective distributions as \( X \) and \( Y \), such that \( \mathbb{P}(X' \leq Y') = 1 \).

4.5 [130] Let \( \mu \) be a positive probability measure on the finite product space \( \Omega = [0, 1]^E \).
(a) Show that $\mu$ satisfies the FKG lattice condition

$$
\mu(\omega_1 \lor \omega_2) \mu(\omega_1 \land \omega_2) \geq \mu(\omega_1) \mu(\omega_2), \quad \omega_1, \omega_2 \in \Omega,
$$

if and only if this inequality holds for all pairs $\omega_1, \omega_2$ that differ on exactly two elements of $E$.

(b) Show that the FKG lattice condition is equivalent to the statement that $\mu$ is monotone in that, for $e \in E$,

$$
f(e, \xi) := \mu(\omega(e) = 1 \mid \omega(f) = \xi(f) \text{ for } f \neq e)
$$

is non-decreasing in $\xi \in \{0, 1\}^{E \setminus \{e\}}$.

4.6 [130] Let $\mu_1, \mu_2$ be positive probability measures on the finite product $\Omega = [0, 1]^E$. Assume that they satisfy

$$
\mu_2(\omega_1 \lor \omega_2) \mu_1(\omega_1 \land \omega_2) \geq \mu_1(\omega_1) \mu_2(\omega_2),
$$

e for all pairs $\omega_1, \omega_2 \in \Omega$ that differ on exactly one element of $E$, and, in addition, assume that either $\mu_1$ or $\mu_2$ satisfies the FKG lattice condition. Show that $\mu_2 \geq_{st} \mu_1$.

4.7 Let $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ be independent Bernoulli random variables with parameter $p$, and let $S_n = X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n$. Show by Hoeffding’s inequality or otherwise that

$$
P(|S_n - np| \geq x \sqrt{n}) \leq 2 \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{m^2}\right), \quad x > 0,
$$

where $m = \max\{p, 1 - p\}$.

4.8 Let $G_{n,p}$ be the random graph with vertex set $V = \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$ obtained by joining each pair of distinct vertices by an edge with probability $p$ (different pairs are joined independently). Show that the chromatic number $\chi_{n,p}$ satisfies

$$
P(|\chi_{n,p} - E\chi_{n,p}| \geq x) \leq 2 \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{n}\right), \quad x > 0.
$$

4.9 Russo’s formula. Let $X$ be a random variable on the finite sample space $\Omega = [0, 1]^E$. Show that

$$
\frac{d}{dp} E_p(X) = \sum_{e \in E} E_p(\delta_e X),
$$

where $\delta_e X(\omega) = X(\omega') - X(\omega)$, and $\omega'$ (respectively, $\omega$) is the configuration obtained from $\omega$ by replacing $\omega(e)$ by 1 (respectively, 0).

Let $A$ be an increasing event, with indicator function $1_A$. An edge $e$ is called pivotal for the event $A$ in the configuration $\omega$ if $\delta_e 1_A(\omega) = 1$. Deduce from the above that the derivative of $P_p(A)$ equals the mean number of pivotal edges for $A$. Find a related formula for the second derivative of $P_p(A)$.

What can you show for the third derivative, and so on?
4.10 [121] Show that every increasing subset of the cube \([0, 1]^N\) is Lebesgue-measurable.

4.11 Heads turn up with probability \(p\) on each of \(N\) coin flips. Let \(A\) be an increasing event, and suppose there exists a subgroup \(\mathcal{A}\) of permutations of \([1, 2, \ldots, N]\) acting transitively, such that \(A\) is \(\mathcal{A}\)-invariant. Let \(p_c\) be the value of \(p\) such that \(\mathbb{P}_p(A) = \frac{1}{2}\). Show that there exists an absolute constant \(c > 0\) such that

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(A) \geq 1 - N^{-c(p - p_c)}, \quad p \geq p_c,
\]

with a similar inequality for \(p \leq p_c\).

4.12 Let \(\mu\) be a positive measure on \(\Omega = [0, 1]^E\) satisfying the FKG lattice condition. For \(p \in (0, 1)\), let \(\mu_p\) be the probability measure given by

\[
\mu_p(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z_p} \left( \prod_{e \in E} \mu^{\omega(e)}(1 - p)^{1 - \omega(e)} \right) \mu(\omega), \quad \omega \in \Omega.
\]

Let \(A\) be an increasing event. Show that there exists an absolute constant \(c > 0\) such that

\[
\mu_{p_1}(A) \left[ 1 - \mu_{p_2}(A) \right] \leq \lambda^{B(p_2 - p_1)}, \quad 0 < p_1 < p_2 < 1,
\]

where

\[
B = \inf_{p \in (p_1, p_2)} \left\{ \frac{c \xi_p}{p(1 - p)} \right\}, \quad \xi_p = \min_{e \in E} \left\{ \mu_p(\omega(e) = 1) \mu_p(\omega(e) = 0) \right\},
\]

and \(\lambda\) satisfies

\[
2 \max_{e \in E} J_A(e) \leq \lambda, \quad e \in E, \ p \in (p_1, p_2),
\]

with \(J_A(e)\) the conditional influence of \(e\) on \(A\).

4.13 Let \(\phi_p\) be the product measure on \(\Omega = [0, 1]^E\) with density \(p \in (0, 1)\), and let \(A\) be an increasing subset of \(\Omega\). Apply the influence theorem for the continuous cube \([0, 1]^E\) in order to obtain the corresponding inequality for the pair \(\phi_p, A\). That is, use Theorem 4.32 to prove (4.29) with \(\phi\) replaced by \(\phi_p\).
Further Percolation

The subcritical and supercritical phases of percolation are characterized respectively by the absence and presence of an infinite open cluster. Connection probabilities decay exponentially when \( p < p_c \), and there is a unique infinite cluster when \( p > p_c \). There is a power-law singularity at the point of phase transition. It is shown that \( p_c = \frac{1}{2} \) for bond percolation on the square lattice. The Russo–Seymour–Welsh (RSW) method is described for site percolation on the triangular lattice, and this leads to a statement and proof of Cardy’s formula.

5.1 Subcritical Phase

In language borrowed from the theory of branching processes, a percolation process is termed subcritical if \( p < p_c \), and supercritical if \( p > p_c \).

In the subcritical phase, all open clusters are (almost surely) finite. The chance of a long-range connection is small, and it approaches zero as the distance between the endpoints diverges. The process is considered to be ‘disordered’, and the probabilities of long-range connectivities tend to zero exponentially in the distance. Exponential decay may be proved by elementary means for sufficiently small \( p \), as in the proof of Theorem 3.2, for example. It is somewhat harder to prove exponential decay for all \( p < p_c \), and the story of the proof of this is slightly complicated. Exponential decay was proved for percolation around 1986 by Aizenman and Barsky [6] in the USA and independently by Menshikov [230, 231] in the USSR. The two proofs, while distinct, have certain elements in common, and are quite deep; they may be found in [127]. A third proof emerged only in 2015, namely that of Duminil-Copin and Tassion [92]. This proof is much simpler than the first two, and may be regarded as an optimized version of the 1957 proof by Hammersley [155] that exponential decay holds whenever \( \chi(p) = E_p |C| \) satisfies \( \chi(p) < \infty \). That is, in the language of physics, finite susceptibility
implies exponential decay.\footnote{A further method was introduced in \cite{87, 88}. This powerful approach may be applied to a range of percolation-type processes including finitely dependent percolation, Voronoi percolation, and the random-cluster model.}

The methods of Sections 5.1–5.4 are fairly robust with respect to the choice of process and lattice. For concreteness, we consider bond percolation on $\mathbb{L}^d$ with $d \geq 2$. The first principal result is the following theorem.

Part (b) is actually a result for the supercritical regime, but it forms part of the proof of part (a) of the theorem. We write $\Lambda(n) = [-n, n]^d$ and $\partial\Lambda(n) = \Lambda(n) \setminus \Lambda(n - 1)$.

### 5.1 Subcritical Phase

#### Theorem

(a) \cite{6, 230, 231} There exists $\psi(p)$, satisfying $\psi(p) > 0$ when $p < p_c$, such that

\begin{equation}
\mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow \partial\Lambda(n)) \leq e^{-\psi(p)n}, \quad n \geq 1.
\end{equation}

(b) \cite{71, 72, 229} For $p > p_c$,

$$\theta(p) \geq \frac{p - p_c}{p(1 - p_c)}.$$ 

\textbf{Proof.} We follow Duminil-Copin and Tassion\cite{92}, and shall first derive an upper bound for $\mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow \partial\Lambda(n))$. Then we optimize this bound, and finally we show that it is, in a sense, sharp.

Let $S$ be a finite set of vertices containing the origin 0, with external edge-boundary

$$\Delta S = \{ e = \langle x, y \rangle : x \in S, \ y \notin S \}.$$ 

For $e = \langle x, y \rangle \in \Delta S$, we shall always write $x$ to denote the endpoint of $e$ that lies in $S$. Let

$$\phi_p(S) = p \sum_{e = \langle x, y \rangle \in \Delta S} \mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow x),$$

where $\{ 0 \leftrightarrow x \}$ is the event that there exists an open path from 0 to $x$ using only vertices of $S$.

Here is some further notation. Let $E_n(y) = \{ y \leftrightarrow \partial\Lambda(n) \}$, and write $E_n = E_n(0)$ and $g_p(n) = \mathbb{P}_p(E_n)$. Choose $L$ such that $S \subseteq \Lambda(L)$. As
Figure 5.1 If $0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda(kL)$, there exists $e = (x, y) \in \Delta S$ such that:

- $0 \leftrightarrow x$, $e$ is open,
- $y \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda(kL)$, and furthermore these three events occur disjointly.

Illustrated in Figure 5.1, for $k \geq 1$, by the BK inequality,

$$g_p(kL) \leq \sum_{e = (x, y) \in \Delta S} \mathbb{P}_p \left( 0 \leftrightarrow x \right) \circ \mathbb{P}(e \text{ is open}) \circ E_{kL}(y) \leq g_p((k - 1)L) \left\{ p \sum_{e \in \Delta S} \mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow x) \right\} = \phi_p(S)g_p((k - 1)L).$$

Therefore, by iteration,

$$g_p(kL) \leq \phi_p(S)^k, \quad k \geq 0.$$

Since $g_p(n)$ is non-increasing in $n$,

$$g_p(n) \leq \phi_p(S)^{\lfloor n/L \rfloor}, \quad n \geq 1.$$  \hspace{1cm} (5.3)

Equation (5.3) is only useful if $\phi_p(S) < 1$. Since $\phi_p(S)$ is non-decreasing in $p$, it is natural to define

$$\bar{p}_c = \sup \left\{ p : \text{there exists } S \ni 0 \text{ with } |S| < \infty \text{ and } \phi_p(S) < 1 \right\}. $$  \hspace{1cm} (5.4)

By (5.3) and the fact that $g_p(n) < 1$ for $n \geq 1$ and $p < 1$,

$$\text{for } p < \bar{p}_c, (5.2) \text{ holds with some } \psi \text{ satisfying } \psi(p) > 0.$$  \hspace{1cm} (5.5)
5.1 Subcritical Phase

We move now to the second part of the proof. Let $n \geq 1$ and 
$$\mathcal{S} = \{ x \in \Lambda(n) : x \not\leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda(n) \}.$$

By Russo’s formula,

$$g'_p(n) = \sum_e \mathbb{P}_p(e \text{ is pivotal for } E_n)$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-p} \sum_e \mathbb{P}_p(e \text{ is closed, and pivotal for } E_n)$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-p} \sum_{S \ni 0} \sum_{e=x \in \Lambda(n)} \mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow x, \mathcal{S} = S)$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-p} \sum_{S \ni 0} \sum_{e=x \in \Lambda(n)} \mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow x) \mathbb{P}_p(\mathcal{S} = S)$$

$$= \frac{1}{p(1-p)} \sum_{S \ni 0} \phi_p(S) \mathbb{P}_p(\mathcal{S} = S),$$

where we have used the fact that, for a given $S$, the events \{0 $\leftrightarrow S x\} and \{\mathcal{S} = S\} are independent. Let $p > \tilde{p}_c$, so that $\phi_p(S) \geq 1$ for all appropriate $S$ in (5.4). Then,

$$g'_p(n) \geq \frac{1}{p(1-p)} \sum_{S \ni 0} \mathbb{P}_p(\mathcal{S} = S) \geq \frac{1}{p(1-p)} (1 - g_p(n)).$$

(5.6)

We integrate (5.6) from $\tilde{p}_c$ to $p$ to obtain

$$\left[ - \log(1 - g_p(n)) \right]^{\tilde{p}_c}_p \geq \left[ \log \left( \frac{p}{1-p} \right) \right]^{\tilde{p}_c}_p.$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{1}{1 - g_p(n)} \geq \frac{1 - g_p(n)}{1 - g_p(n)} \geq \frac{p(1 - \tilde{p}_c)}{\tilde{p}_c(1 - p)},$$

which we reorganize to obtain

$$g_p(n) \geq \frac{p - \tilde{p}_c}{p(1 - \tilde{p}_c)}.$$

On letting $n \to \infty$,

(5.7) \[ \theta(p) \geq \frac{p - \tilde{p}_c}{p(1 - \tilde{p}_c)}, \quad p > \tilde{p}_c. \]
It is immediate from (5.5) and (5.7) that \( \hat{\rho}_c = \rho_c \), and the proof is complete. \( \square \)

5.2 Supercritical Phase

The critical value \( \rho_c \) is the value of \( \rho \) above which the percolation probability \( \theta(\rho) \) becomes strictly positive. It is widely believed that \( \theta(\rho_c) = 0 \), and this is perhaps the major conjecture of the subject.

5.8 Conjecture For percolation on \( \mathbb{L}^d \) with \( d \geq 2 \), it is the case that \( \theta(\rho_c) = 0 \).

It is known that \( \theta(\rho_c) = 0 \) when either \( d = 2 \) (by results in [164]; see Theorem 5.25) or \( d \geq 11 \) (by the lace expansions in [107, 161, 162]). The claim is believed to be canonical for percolation models on all lattices and in all dimensions.

Suppose now that \( \rho > \rho_c \), so that \( \theta(\rho) > 0 \). What can be said about the number \( N \) of infinite open clusters? Since the event \( \{ N \geq 1 \} \) is translation-invariant, it is trivial under the product measure \( \mathbb{P}_\rho \) (see Exercise 5.8). Now,

\[
\mathbb{P}_\rho(N \geq 1) \geq \theta(\rho) > 0,
\]

whence

\[
\mathbb{P}_\rho(N \geq 1) = 1, \quad \rho > \rho_c.
\]

We shall see in the forthcoming Theorem 5.14 that \( \mathbb{P}_\rho(N = 1) = 1 \) whenever \( \theta(\rho) > 0 \), which is to say that there exists a unique infinite open cluster throughout the supercritical phase.

A supercritical percolation process in two dimensions may be studied in either of two ways. The first of these is by duality. Consider bond percolation on \( \mathbb{L}^2 \) with density \( \rho \). The dual process (as in the proof of the upper bound of Theorem 3.2) is bond percolation with density \( 1 - \rho \). We shall see in Theorem 5.25 that the self-dual point \( \rho = \frac{1}{2} \) is also the critical point. Thus, the dual of a supercritical process is subcritical, and this enables a study of supercritical percolation on \( \mathbb{L}^2 \). A similar argument is valid for certain other lattices, although the self-duality of the square lattice is special.

While duality is the technique for studying supercritical percolation in two dimensions, this process may also be studied by the block argument that follows. The block method was devised expressly for three and more dimensions in the hope that, amongst other things, it would imply the claim of Conjecture 5.8. Block arguments are a work-horse of the theory of general interacting systems.
We assume henceforth that $d \geq 3$ and that $p$ is such that $\theta(p) > 0$; under this hypothesis, we wish to gain some control of the geometry of the infinite open paths. The main result is the following, of which an outline proof is included later in the section. Let $A \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^d$, and write $p_c(A)$ for the critical probability of bond percolation on the subgraph of $\mathbb{L}^d$ induced by $A$. Thus, for example, $p_c = p_c(\mathbb{Z}^d)$. Recall that $\Lambda(k) = [-k, k]^d$.

5.9 Theorem [142] Let $d \geq 3$. If $F$ is an infinite connected subset of $\mathbb{Z}^d$ with $p_c(F) < 1$, then for each $\eta > 0$ there exists an integer $k$ such that

$$p_c(2kF + \Lambda(k)) \leq p_c + \eta.$$

That is, for any set $F$ sufficiently large that $p_c(F) < 1$, we may ‘fatten’ $F$ to a set having critical probability as close to $p_c$ as required. One particular application of this theorem is to the limit of slab critical probabilities, and we elaborate on this next.

Many results have been proved for subcritical percolation under the ‘finite susceptibility’ hypothesis that $\chi(p) < \infty$. The validity of this hypothesis for $p < p_c$ is implied by Theorem 5.1. Similarly, several important results for supercritical percolation have been proved under the hypothesis that ‘percolation occurs in slabs’. The two-dimensional slab $F_k$ of thickness $2k$ is the set

$$F_k = \mathbb{Z}^2 \times [-k, k]^{d-2} = (\mathbb{Z}^2 \times \{0\}^{d-2}) + \Lambda(k),$$

with critical probability $p_c(F_k)$. Since $F_k \subseteq F_{k+1} \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^d$, the decreasing limit $p_c(F) = \lim_{k \to \infty} p_c(F_k)$ exists and satisfies $p_c(F) \geq p_c$. The hypothesis of ‘percolation in slabs’ is that $p > p_c(F)$. By Theorem 5.9,

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} p_c(F_k) = p_c.$$

One of the best examples of the use of ‘slab percolation’ is the following estimate of the extent of a finite open cluster. It asserts the exponential decay of a ‘truncated’ connectivity function when $d \geq 3$. A similar result may be proved by duality for $d = 2$.

5.11 Theorem [74] Let $d \geq 3$. The limit

$$\sigma(p) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left\{ -\frac{1}{n} \log P_p(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda(n), |\mathcal{C}| < \infty) \right\}$$

exists. Furthermore, $\sigma(p) > 0$ if $p > p_c$.

We turn briefly to a discussion of the so-called ‘Wulff crystal’, illustrated in Figure 5.2. Much attention has been paid to the sizes and shapes of clusters formed in models of statistical mechanics. When a cluster $C$ is
Further Percolation

Figure 5.2  Images of the Wulff crystal in two dimensions. These are in fact images created by numerical simulation of the Ising model, but the general features are similar to those of percolation. The simulations were for finite time, and the images are therefore only approximations to the true crystals. The pictures are 1024 pixels square, and the Ising inverse temperatures are $\beta = \frac{4}{3}, 10^{11}$. The corresponding random-cluster models have $q = 2$ and $p = 1 - e^{-4/3}, 1 - e^{-10/11}$, so that the right-hand picture is closer to criticality than the left.

infinite with a strictly positive probability, but is constrained to have some large finite size $n$, then $C$ is said to form a large ‘droplet’. The asymptotic shape of such a droplet as $n \to \infty$ is prescribed in general terms by the theory of the so-called Wulff crystal; see the original paper [289] of Wulff. Specializing to percolation, we ask for properties of the open cluster $C$ at the origin, conditioned on the event $\{|C| = n\}$.

The study of the Wulff crystal is bound up with the law of the volume of a finite cluster. This has a tail that is ‘quenched exponential’,

$$\mathbb{P}_p(|C| = n) \approx \exp(-\rho n^{(d-1)/d}),$$

where $\rho = \rho(p) \in (0, \infty)$ for $p > p_c$, and $\approx$ is to be interpreted in terms of logarithmic asymptotics. The explanation for the curious exponent is as follows. The ‘most economic’ way to create a large finite cluster is to find a region $R$ containing an open connected component $D$ of size $n$, satisfying $D \leftrightarrow \infty$, and then to cut all connections leaving $R$. Since $p > p_c$, such regions $R$ exist with $|R|$ (respectively, $|\partial R|$) having order $n$ (respectively, $n^{(d-1)/d}$), and the ‘cost’ of the construction is exponential in $|\partial R|$.

The above argument yields a lower bound for $\mathbb{P}_p(|C| = n)$ of quenched-exponential type, but considerably more work is required to show the exact
asymptotic of (5.12), and indeed one obtains more. The (conditional) shape of \( C n^{-1/d} \) converges as \( n \to \infty \) to the solution of a certain variational problem, and the asymptotic region is termed the ‘Wulff crystal’ for the model. This is not too hard to make rigorous when \( d = 2 \), since the external boundary of \( C \) is then a closed curve. Serious technical difficulties arise when pursuing this programme for \( d \geq 3 \). See [67] for an account and a bibliography.

Outline proof of Theorem 5.11. The existence of the limit is an exercise in subadditivity of a standard type, although with some complications in this case (see [73, 127]). We sketch here a proof of the important estimate \( \sigma(p) > 0 \).

Let \( S_k \) be the \((d-1)\)-dimensional slab

\[
S_k = [0, k] \times \mathbb{Z}^{d-1}.
\]

Since \( p > p_c \), we have by Theorem 5.9 that \( p > p_c(S_k) \) for some \( k \), and we choose \( k \) accordingly. Let \( H_n \) be the hyperplane of vertices \( x \) of \( \mathbb{L}^d \) with \( x_1 = n \). It suffices to prove that

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow H_n, |C| < \infty) \leq e^{-\gamma n}
\]

for some \( \gamma = \gamma(p) > 0 \). Define the slabs

\[
T_i = \{ x \in \mathbb{Z}^d : (i-1)k \leq x_1 < ik \}, \quad 1 \leq i < \lfloor n/k \rfloor.
\]

Any path from 0 to \( H_n \) traverses each \( T_i \). Since \( p > p_c(S_k) \), each slab contains (almost surely) an infinite open cluster (see Figure 5.3). If \( 0 \leftrightarrow H_n \) and \( |C| < \infty \), then all paths from 0 to \( H_n \) must evade all such clusters. There are \( \lfloor n/k \rfloor \) slabs to traverse, and a price is paid for each. Modulo a touch of rigour, this implies that

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow H_n, |C| < \infty) \leq [1 - \theta_k(p)]^{\lfloor n/k \rfloor},
\]

where

\[
\theta_k(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow \infty \text{ in } S_k) > 0.
\]

The inequality \( \sigma(p) > 0 \) is proved. \( \square \)

Outline proof of Theorem 5.9. The full proof can be found in [127, 142]. For simplicity, we take \( F = \mathbb{Z}^2 \times \{0\}^{d-2} \), so that

\[
2kF + \Lambda(k) = \mathbb{Z}^2 \times [-k, k]^{d-2}.
\]

There are two main steps in the proof. In the first, we show the existence of long finite paths. In the second, we show how to take such finite paths and build an infinite cluster in a slab.
The principal parts of the first step are as follows. Let $p$ be such that $\theta(p) > 0$.

1. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since $\theta(p) > 0$, there exists $m$ such that
   \[ \mathbb{P}_p(\Lambda = \infty) > 1 - \epsilon. \]
   [This holds since there exists, almost surely, an infinite open cluster.]

2. Let $n \geq 2m$, say, and let $k \geq 1$. We may choose $n$ sufficiently large that, with probability at least $1 - 2\epsilon$, $\Lambda(m)$ is joined to at least $k$ points in $\partial \Lambda(n)$. [If, for some $k$, this fails for unbounded $n$, then there exists almost surely $N > m$ such that $\Lambda(m) \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda(N)$.

3. By choosing $k$ sufficiently large, we may ensure that, with probability at least $1 - 3\epsilon$, $\Lambda(m)$ is joined to some point of $\partial \Lambda(n)$, which is itself connected to a copy of $\Lambda(m)$ lying ‘on’ the surface $\partial \Lambda(n)$ and every edge of which is open. [We may choose $k$ sufficiently large that there are many non-overlapping copies of $\Lambda(m)$ in the correct positions, indeed sufficiently many that, with high probability, one such copy is totally open.]

4. The open copy of $\Lambda(m)$, constructed above, may be used as a ‘seed’ for iterating the above construction. When doing this, we shall need some control over where the seed is placed. It may be shown that

Figure 5.3 All paths from the origin to $H_{3k}$ traverse the regions $T_i$, $i = 1, 2, 3$. 
5.2 Supercritical Phase

Figure 5.4 An illustration of the event that the block centred at the origin is open. Each black square is a seed.

every face of $\partial \Lambda(n)$ contains (with large probability) a point adjacent to some seed, and indeed many such points. See Figure 5.4. [There is sufficient symmetry to deduce this by the FKG inequality.]

Above is the scheme for constructing long finite paths, and we turn to the second step.

5. This construction is now iterated. At each stage there is a certain (small) probability of failure. In order that there be a strictly positive probability of an infinite sequence of successes, we iterate in two `independent' directions. With care, we may show that the construction dominates a certain supercritical site percolation process on $\mathbb{L}^2$.

6. We wish to deduce that an infinite sequence of successes entails an infinite open path of $\mathbb{L}^d$ within the corresponding slab. There are two difficulties with this. First, since we do not have total control of the positions of the seeds, the actual path in $\mathbb{L}^d$ may leave every slab. This may be overcome by a process of `steering', in which, at each stage, we choose a seed in such a position as to compensate for earlier deviations in space.

7. A greater problem is that, in iterating the construction, we carry with us a mixture of ‘positive’ and ‘negative’ information (of the form that ‘certain paths exist’ and ‘others do not’). In combining events, we cannot use the FKG inequality. The practical difficulty is that, although we may have an infinite sequence of successes, there will generally be
Further Percolation

breaks in any corresponding open route to \( \infty \). This is overcome by ‘sprinkling’ down a few more open edges, that is, by working at edge-density \( p + \delta \) where \( \delta > 0 \), rather than at density \( p \).

In conclusion, we find that, if \( \theta(p) > 0 \) and \( \delta > 0 \), there exists \( k \) such that, with large probability, an infinite \( (p + \delta) \)-open path exists in a slab of the form \( T_k = \mathbb{Z}^2 \times [-k, k]^{d-2} \). The claim of the theorem follows.

There are many details to be considered in carrying out the above programme, but these are omitted here.

5.3 Uniqueness of the Infinite Cluster

The principal result of this section is the following: for any value of \( p \) for which \( \theta(p) > 0 \), there exists (almost surely) a unique infinite open cluster. Let \( N = N(\omega) \) be the number of infinite open clusters.

5.14 Theorem [13] If \( \theta(p) > 0 \), then \( \mathbb{P}_p(N = 1) = 1 \).

A similar conclusion holds for more general probability measures. The two principal ingredients of the generalization are the translation-invariance of the measure, and the so-called ‘finite-energy property’, which states that, conditional on the states of all edges except \( e \), say, the state of \( e \) is 0 (respectively, 1) with a strictly positive (conditional) probability.

Proof. We follow [62]. The claim is trivial if \( p = 0, 1 \), and we assume henceforth that \( 0 < p < 1 \). Let \( S = S(n) \) be the ‘diamond’ \( S(n) = \{ x \in \mathbb{Z}^d : \delta(0, x) \leq n \} \), and let \( E_S \) be the set of edges of \( \mathbb{L}^d \) joining pairs of vertices in \( S \). We write \( N_S(0) \) (respectively, \( N_S(1) \)) for the total number of infinite open clusters when all edges in \( E_S \) are declared to be closed (respectively, open). Finally, \( M_S \) denotes the number of infinite open clusters that intersect \( S \).

The sample space \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^{\mathbb{L}^d} \) is a product space with a natural family of translations, and \( \mathbb{P}_p \) is a product measure on \( \Omega \). Since \( N \) is a translation-invariant function on \( \Omega \), it is almost surely constant (see Exercise 5.8):

\[
\exists k = k(p) \in \{0, 1, 2, \ldots\} \cup \{\infty\} \text{ such that } \mathbb{P}_p(N = k) = 1.
\]

(5.15)

Next we show that the \( k \) in (5.15) necessarily satisfies \( k \in \{0, 1, \infty\} \). Suppose that (5.15) holds with \( k < \infty \). Since every configuration on \( E_S \) has a strictly positive probability, it follows by the almost-sure constancy of \( N \) that

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(N_S(0) = N_S(1) = k) = 1.
\]
5.3 Uniqueness of the Infinite Cluster

Now \( N_S(0) = N_S(1) \) if and only if \( S \) intersects at most one infinite open cluster (this is where we use the assumption that \( k < \infty \)), and therefore
\[
P_p(M_S \geq 2) = 0.
\]

Clearly, \( M_S \) is non-decreasing in \( S = S(n) \), and \( M_{S(n)} \to N \) as \( n \to \infty \). Therefore,
\[
0 = \mathbb{P}_p(M_{S(n)} \geq 2) \to \mathbb{P}_p(N \geq 2),
\]
which is to say that \( k \leq 1 \).

It remains to rule out the case \( k = \infty \). Suppose that \( k = \infty \). We will derive a contradiction by using a geometrical argument. We call a vertex \( x \) a \textit{trifurcation} if:
(a) \( x \) lies in an infinite open cluster,
(b) there exist three or more open edges incident to \( x \), and
(c) the deletion of \( x \) and its incident open edges splits this infinite cluster into three or more disjoint infinite clusters and no finite clusters.

Let \( T_x \) be the event that \( x \) is a trifurcation. By translation-invariance, \( \mathbb{P}_p(T_x) \) is constant for all \( x \), and therefore
\[
0 = \mathbb{P}_p(M_{S(n)} \geq 2) \to \mathbb{P}_p(N \geq 2),
\]
which will be useful to know that the quantity \( \mathbb{P}_p(T_0) \) is strictly positive, and it is here that we use the assumed infinity of infinite clusters.

Let \( M_S(0) \) be the number of infinite open clusters that intersect \( S \) when all edges of \( E_S \) are declared closed. Since \( M_S(0) \geq M_S \), by the remarks around (5.16),
\[
\mathbb{P}_p(M_{S(n)}(0) \geq 3) \geq \mathbb{P}_p(M_{S(n)} \geq 3)
\to \mathbb{P}_p(N \geq 3) = 1 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.
\]

Therefore, there exists \( m \) such that
\[
\mathbb{P}_p(M_{S(m)}(0) \geq 3) \geq \frac{1}{2}.
\]

We set \( S = S(m) \) and \( \partial S = S(m) \setminus S(m - 1) \). Note that:
(a) the event \( \{M_S(0) \geq 3\} \) is independent of the states of edges in \( E_S \),
(b) if the event \( \{M_S(0) \geq 3\} \) occurs, there exist \( x, y, z \in \partial S \) lying in distinct infinite open clusters of \( E^d \setminus E_S \).

Let \( \omega \in \{M_S(0) \geq 3\} \), and pick \( x = x(\omega), y = y(\omega), z = z(\omega) \) according to (b). If there is more than one possible such triple, we pick such a triple according to some predetermined rule. It is a minor geometrical exercise\(^2\) (see Figure 5.5) to verify that there exist in \( E_S \) three paths joining

\(^2\)This is where we use the fact that \( S \) is a ‘diamond’ rather than a ‘square’.
Further Percolation

Figure 5.5  Take a diamond $S$ that intersects at least three distinct infinite open clusters, and then alter the configuration inside $S$ in order to create a configuration in which $0$ is a trifurcation.

the origin to (respectively) $x$, $y$, and $z$, and that these paths may be chosen in such a way that:

(i) the origin is the unique vertex common to any two of them, and
(ii) each path touches exactly one vertex lying in $\partial S$.

Let $J_{x,y,z}$ be the event that all the edges in these paths are open, and that all other edges in $\mathbb{E}_S$ are closed.

Since $S$ is finite,

$$
\mathbb{P}_p(J_{x,y,z} \mid M_S(0) \geq 3) \geq [\min\{p, 1 - p\}]^R > 0,
$$

where $R = |\mathbb{E}_S|$. Now,

$$
\mathbb{P}_p(0 \text{ is a trifurcation}) \geq \mathbb{P}_p(J_{x,y,z} \mid M_S(0) \geq 3)\mathbb{P}_p(M_S(0) \geq 3) \\
\geq [\min\{p, 1 - p\}]^R > 0,
$$

which is to say that $\mathbb{P}_p(T_0) > 0$ in (5.17).

It follows from (5.17) that the mean number of trifurcations inside $S = S(n)$ grows in the manner of $|S|$ as $n \to \infty$. On the other hand, we shall see next that the number of trifurcations inside $S$ can be no larger than the size of the boundary of $S$, and this provides the necessary contradiction. The following rough argument is appealing. Select a trifurcation $(t_1, \text{say})$ of $S$, and choose some vertex $y_1 \in \partial S$ such that $t_1 \leftrightarrow y_1$ in $S$. We now select a new trifurcation $t_2 \in S$. It may be seen, using the definition of the term ‘trifurcation’, that there exists $y_2 \in \partial S$ such that $y_1 \neq y_2$ and $t_2 \leftrightarrow y_2$ in
5.4 Phase Transition

Macroscopic functions, such as the percolation probability and mean cluster size,

\[ \theta(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(|C| = \infty), \quad \chi(p) = \mathbb{E}_p|C|, \]

have singularities at \( p = p_c \), and there is overwhelming evidence that these are of ‘power law’ type. A great deal of effort has been invested by physicists and mathematicians towards understanding the nature of the percolation phase transition. The picture is now fairly clear when \( d = 2 \), owing to the very significant progress in recent years in relating critical percolation to the Schramm–Löwner curve SLE\(_6\). There remain however
Further Percolation

Table 5.6 Eight functions and their critical exponents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Behaviour</th>
<th>Exp.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>percolation probability</td>
<td>$\theta(p) = \mathbb{P}(</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truncated mean cluster size</td>
<td>$\chi_f^t(p) = \mathbb{E}_p(</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of clusters per vertex</td>
<td>$\kappa(p) = \mathbb{E}_p(</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cluster moments</td>
<td>$\chi_k^f(p) = \mathbb{E}_p(</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correlation length</td>
<td>$\xi(p)$</td>
<td>$\xi(p) \approx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cluster volume</td>
<td>$\mathbb{P}_{p_c}(</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cluster radius</td>
<td>$\mathbb{P}_{p_c}(\text{rad}(C) = n) \approx n^{-1-1/\rho}$</td>
<td>$\rho$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connectivity function</td>
<td>$\mathbb{P}_{p_c}(0 \leftrightarrow x) \approx |x|^{2-d-\eta}$</td>
<td>$\eta$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

substantial difficulties to be overcome before this chapter of percolation theory can be declared written, even when $d = 2$. The case of large $d$ (currently, $d \geq 11$) is also well understood, through work based on the so-called ‘lace expansion’. Most problems remain open in the obvious case $d = 3$, and ambitious and brave students are directed thence with caution.

The nature of the percolation singularity is supposed canonical, in that it is expected to have certain general features in common with phase transitions of other models of statistical mechanics. These features are sometimes referred to as ‘scaling theory’ and they relate to ‘critical exponents’. There are two sets of critical exponents, arising firstly in the limit as $p \to p_c$, and secondly in the limit over increasing distances when $p = p_c$. We summarize the notation in Table 5.6.
5.4 Phase Transition

The asymptotic relation \( \approx \) should be interpreted loosely (perhaps via logarithmic asymptotics\(^3\)). The radius of \( C \) is defined by

\[
\text{rad}(C) = \sup\{\|x\| : 0 \leftrightarrow x\},
\]

where

\[
\|x\| = \sup_i |x_i|, \quad x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_d) \in \mathbb{Z}^d,
\]

is the supremum (\( L^\infty \)) norm on \( \mathbb{Z}^d \). The limit as \( p \to p_c \) should be interpreted in a manner appropriate for the function in question (for example, as \( p \downarrow p_c \) for \( \theta(p) \), but as \( p \to p_c \) for \( \kappa(p) \)).

There are eight critical exponents listed in Table 5.6, denoted \( \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \nu, \eta, \rho, \Delta \), but there is no general proof of the existence of any of these exponents for arbitrary \( d \). In general, the eight critical exponents may be defined for phase transitions in a quite large family of physical systems. However, it is believed that they are not independent variables, but rather that they satisfy the scaling relations

\[
2 - \alpha = \gamma + 2\beta = \beta(\delta + 1),
\]

\[
\Delta = \delta\beta,
\]

\[
\gamma = \nu(2 - \eta),
\]

and, when \( d \) is not too large, the hyperscaling relations

\[
d\rho = \delta + 1,
\]

\[
2 - \alpha = d\nu.
\]

The upper critical dimension is the largest value \( d_c \) such that the hyperscaling relations hold for \( d \leq d_c \). It is believed that \( d_c = 6 \) for percolation. There is no general proof of the validity of the scaling and hyperscaling relations, although quite a lot is known when \( d = 2 \) and for large \( d \).

In the context of percolation, there is an analytical rationale behind the scaling relations, namely the ‘scaling hypotheses’ that

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(|C| = n) \sim n^{-\sigma} f\left(n/\xi(p)^\tau\right)
\]

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow x, |C| < \infty) \sim \|x\|^{2-d-\eta} g\left(\|x\|/\xi(p)\right)
\]

in the double limit as \( p \to p_c, n \to \infty \), and for some constants \( \sigma, \tau, \eta \) and functions \( f, g \). Playing loose with rigorous mathematics, the scaling relations may be derived from these hypotheses. Similarly, the hyperscaling

\(^3\)We say that \( f(x) \) is logarithmically asymptotic to \( g(x) \) (as either \( x \to 0 \) or \( x \to \infty \)) if \( \log f(x)/\log g(x) \to 1 \). This is often written as \( f(x) \approx g(x) \).
Further Percolation

relations may be shown to be not too unreasonable, at least when $d$ is not too large. For further discussion; see [127].

We note some further points.

**Universality.** It is believed that the numerical values of critical exponents depend only on the value of $d$ and are independent of the particular percolation model.

**Two dimensions.** When $d = 2$, perhaps the following hold:

$$\alpha = -\frac{2}{3}, \quad \beta = \frac{5}{36}, \quad \gamma = \frac{43}{18}, \quad \delta = \frac{9}{2}, \ldots$$

See (5.37) below.

**Large dimension.** When $d$ is sufficiently large (actually, $d \geq d_c$) it is believed that the critical exponents are the same as those for percolation on a tree (the ‘mean-field model’), namely $\delta = 2, \gamma = 1, \nu = \frac{1}{2}, \rho = \frac{1}{2}$, and so on (the other exponents are found to satisfy the scaling relations).

Using the first hyperscaling relation, this is consistent with the contention that $d_c = 6$. Such statements are known to hold for $d \geq 11$; see [107, 161, 162] and the remarks later in this section.

Open challenges include to prove:

– the existence of critical exponents,
– universality,
– the scaling and hyperscaling relations,
– the conjectured values when $d = 2$,
– the conjectured values when $d \geq 6$.

Progress towards these goals has been positive. For sufficiently large $d$, exact values are known for many exponents, namely the values from percolation on a regular tree. There has been remarkable progress in recent years for $d = 2$, inspired largely by the work of Schramm [258], enacted by Smirnov [266], and confirmed by the programme pursued by Lawler, Schramm, and Werner to understand SLE curves (see Section 5.6). Further progress towards proving universality in two dimensions may be found in the work [134, 141] of Grimmett and Manolescu, who proved that the values of certain critical exponents for bond percolation on isoradial graphs are independent of the choice of graph.

We close this section with some further remarks on the case of large $d$.

The expression ‘mean-field’ permits several interpretations depending on context. A narrow interpretation of the term ‘mean-field theory’ for percolation involves trees rather than lattices. For percolation on a regular tree, it is quite easy to perform exact calculations of many quantities, including the numerical values of critical exponents. That is, $\delta = 2, \gamma = 1, \nu = \frac{1}{2}$. 
ρ = \frac{1}{2}, and other exponents are given according to the scaling relations; see [127, Chap. 10].

Turning to percolation on \( \mathbb{L}^d \), it is known, as remarked above, that the critical exponents agree with those of a regular tree when \( d \) is sufficiently large. In fact, this is believed to hold if and only if \( d \geq 6 \), but progress so far assumes that \( d \geq 11 \). In the following theorem, we write \( f(x) \simeq g(x) \) if there exist positive constants \( c_1, c_2 \) such that \( c_1 f(x) \leq g(x) \leq c_2 f(x) \) for all \( x \) close to a limiting value.

**5.18 Theorem [107, 162]** For \( d \geq 11 \),
\[
\begin{align*}
\theta(p) &\simeq (p - p_c)^{1} \quad \text{as } p \downarrow p_c, \\
\chi(p) &\simeq (p_c - p)^{-1} \quad \text{as } p \uparrow p_c, \\
\xi(p) &\simeq (p_c - p)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad \text{as } p \uparrow p_c, \\
\frac{\chi_{k+1}(p)}{\chi_k(p)} &\simeq (p_c - p)^{-2} \quad \text{as } p \uparrow p_c \text{ for } k \geq 1.
\end{align*}
\]

Note the strong form of the asymptotic relation \( \simeq \), and the identification of the critical exponents \( \beta, \gamma, \Delta, \nu \). The proof of Theorem 5.18 centres on a property known as the ‘triangle condition’. Define
\begin{equation}
T(p) = \sum_{x, y \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \mathbb{P}_p(0 \leftrightarrow x)\mathbb{P}_p(x \leftrightarrow y)\mathbb{P}_p(y \leftrightarrow 0),
\end{equation}
and consider the triangle condition
\[ T(p_c) < \infty. \]

The triangle condition was introduced by Aizenman and Newman [16], who showed that it implied that \( \chi(p) \simeq (p_c - p)^{-1} \) as \( p \uparrow p_c \). Subsequently other authors showed that the triangle condition implied similar asymptotics for other quantities. It was Hara and Slade [161] who verified the triangle condition for \( d \geq 19 \), exploiting a technique known as the ‘lace expansion’, and Fitzner and van der Hofstad who improved the bound to \( d \geq 11 \).

### 5.5 Open Paths in Annuli

The remainder of this chapter is devoted to percolation in two dimensions, in the context of either the site model on the triangular lattice \( \mathbb{T} \) or the bond model on the square lattice \( \mathbb{L}^2 \).

There is a very useful technique for building certain open paths in two dimensions. It leads to a proof that the chance of an open cycle within an
annulus \([-3n, 3n]^2 \setminus [-n, n]^2\) is at least \(f(\delta)\), where \(\delta\) is the chance of an open crossing of the square \([-n, n]^2\), and \(f\) is a strictly positive function. This result was useful in some of the original proofs concerning the critical probability of bond percolation on \(\mathbb{L}^2\) (see [127, Sect. 11.7]), and it has re-emerged more recently as central to estimates that permit the proof of Cardy’s formula and conformal invariance. It is commonly named after Russo [254] and Seymour–Welsh [264]. The RSW lemma will be stated and proved in this section and utilized in the next three. Since our application in Sections 5.6–5.7 is to site percolation on the triangular lattice, we shall phrase the RSW lemma in that context. It is left to the reader to adapt and develop the arguments of this section for bond percolation on the square lattice; see Exercise 5.5. The triangular lattice \(\mathbb{T}\) is drawn in Figure 5.7, together with its dual hexagonal lattice \(\mathbb{H}\).

There is a special property that is common to the bond model on \(\mathbb{L}^2\) and the site model on \(\mathbb{T}\), namely that the ‘external’ boundary of a finite open cluster contains a closed cycle. This was illustrated in Figure 3.1 for bond percolation on \(\mathbb{L}^2\), and may be seen similarly for \(\mathbb{T}\). This property is central to the proofs that these models have critical probability \(p_c = \frac{1}{2}\).

RSW theory is presented in [127, Sect. 11.7] for the square lattice \(\mathbb{L}^2\) and general bond-density \(p\). We could follow the same route here for the triangular lattice, but for the sake of variation (and with an eye to later applications) we shall restrict ourselves to the case \(p = \frac{1}{2}\) and shall give a shortened proof due to Stanislav Smirnov. The more conventional approach may be found in [284]; see also [283], and [53] for a variant on the square lattice. Thus, in this section we restrict ourselves to site percolation on \(\mathbb{T}\).
with density \( \frac{1}{2} \). Each site of \( T \) is coloured black with probability \( \frac{1}{2} \), and white otherwise, and the relevant probability measure is denoted as \( \mathbb{P} \).

The triangular lattice is embedded in \( \mathbb{R}^2 \) with vertex-set \{\( mi + nj : (m, n) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 \)\}, where \( i = (1, 0) \) and \( j = \left( \frac{1}{2}, \sqrt{3} \right) \). Write \( R_{a,b} \) for the subgraph induced by vertices in the rectangle \([0, a] \times [0, b]\), and we shall restrict ourselves always to integers \( a \) and integer multiples \( b \) of \( \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{3} \). We shall consider left–right crossings of rectangles \( R_{a,b} \), and to this end we let its left edge \( L(R) \) (respectively, right edge \( R(R) \)) be the set of vertices of \( R \) within distance \( \frac{1}{2} \) of its left side (respectively, right side). This minor geometrical complication arises because the vertical line \( s \) of \( L_2 \) are not connected subgraphs of \( T \). Let \( H_{a,b} \) be the event that there exists a black path that traverses \( R_{a,b} \) from \( L(R_{a,b}) \) to \( R(R_{a,b}) \). The ‘engine room’ of the RSW method is the following lemma.

**5.20 Lemma** \( \mathbb{P}(H_{2a,b}) \geq \frac{1}{4} \mathbb{P}(H_{a,b})^2 \).

By iteration of the above inequality,

\[ \mathbb{P}(H_{2^k a,b}) \geq 4^k \left( \frac{1}{4} \mathbb{P}(H_{a,b}) \right)^2, \quad k \geq 0. \]

As ‘input’ to this inequality, we prove the following.

**5.22 Lemma** We have that \( \mathbb{P}(H_{a,a,0}) \geq \frac{1}{2} \).

Let \( \Lambda_m \) be the set of vertices in \( T \) at graph-theoretic distance \( m \) or less from the origin 0, and define the annulus \( A_n = \Lambda_{3n} \setminus \Lambda_{n-1} \). Let \( O_n \) be the event that \( A_n \) contains a black cycle \( C \) such that 0 lies in the bounded component of \( \mathbb{R}^2 \setminus C \).

**5.23 Theorem (RSW)** There exists \( \sigma > 0 \) such that \( \mathbb{P}(O_n) > \sigma \) for all \( n \geq 1 \).

*Proof of Lemma 5.20.* We follow a previously unpublished argument of Stanislav Smirnov.\(^4\) Let \( g \) be a path that traverses \( R_{a,b} \) from left to right. Let \( \rho \) denote reflection in the line \( x = a \), so that \( \rho g \) connects the left and right edges of \([a, 2a] \times [0, b]\). See Figure 5.8. Assume for the moment that \( g \) does not intersect the \( x \)-axis. Let \( U_g \) be the connected subgraph of \( R_{a,b} \) lying ‘strictly beneath’ \( g \), and \( \overline{U_g} \) the corresponding graph lying ‘on or beneath’ \( g \). Let \( J_g \) (respectively, \( J_b \)) be the part of the boundary \( \partial U_g \) (respectively, \( R_{a,b} \)) lying on either the \( x \)-axis or \( y \)-axis but not in \( g \), and let \( \rho J_g \) (respectively, \( \rho J_b \)) be its reflection.

\(^4\)See also [282].
Figure 5.8 The crossing $g$ and its reflection $\rho g$ in the box $R_{2a,b}$. The events $B_g$ and $W_{\rho g}$ are illustrated by the two lower paths, and exactly one of these events occurs.

Next we use the self-duality of site percolation on $T$. Let $B_g$ be the event that there exists a path of $U_g \cup \rho U_g$ joining some vertex of $g$ to some vertex of $\rho J_g$, with the property that every vertex not belonging to $g$ is black. Let $W_{\rho g}$ be defined similarly in terms of a white path of $U_g \cup \rho U_g$ from $\rho g$ to $J_g$.

The key fact is the following: $W_{\rho g}$ occurs whenever $B_g$ does not. This holds as follows. Assume $B_g$ does not occur. The set of vertices reached along black paths from $g$ does not intersect $\rho J_g$. Its external boundary (away from $g \cup \rho g$) is white and connected, and thus contains a path of the sort required for $W_{\rho g}$. There is a complication that does not arise for the bond model on $L^2$, namely that both $B_g$ and $W_{\rho g}$ can occur if the right endvertex of $g$ lies on the line $x = a$.

By symmetry, $P(B_g) = P(W_{\rho g})$, and by the above,

$$P(B_g) = P(W_{\rho g}) \geq \frac{1}{2},$$

The same holds if $g$ touches the $x$-axis, with $J_g$ suitably adapted.

Let $L$ be the left edge of $R_{2a,b}$ and $R$ its right edge. By the FKG inequality,

$$P(H_{2a,b}) \geq P(L \leftrightarrow \rho J_b, R \leftrightarrow J_b) \geq P(L \leftrightarrow \rho J_b)P(R \leftrightarrow J_b) = P(L \leftrightarrow \rho J_b)^2,$$

where $\leftrightarrow$ denotes connection by a black path.

Let $\gamma$ be the ‘highest’ black path from the left side to the right side of $R_{a,b}$, if such a path exists. Conditional on the event $\{\gamma = g\}$, the states of the
sites beneath $g$ are independent Bernoulli variables, whence, in particular, the events $B_g$ and $\{\gamma = g\}$ are independent. Therefore,

\[
P(L \leftrightarrow J_b) \geq \sum_g P(\gamma = g, B_g) = \sum_g P(B_g)P(\gamma = g) \geq \frac{1}{2} \sum_g P(\gamma = g) = \frac{1}{2}P(H_{a,b})
\]

by (5.24), and the lemma is proved.

**Proof of Lemma 5.22.** This is similar to the argument leading to (5.24). Consider the rhombus $R$ of $T$ comprising all vertices of the form $mi + nj$ for $0 \leq m, n \leq 2a$. Let $B$ be the event that $R$ is traversed from left to right by a black path, and $W$ the event that it is traversed from top to bottom by a white path. These two events are mutually exclusive and have the same probability, and one or the other necessarily occurs. Therefore, $P(B) = \frac{1}{2}$. On $B$, there exists a left–right crossing of the (sub-)rectangle $[a, 2a] \times [0, a\sqrt{3}]$, and the claim follows.

**Proof of Theorem 5.23.** By (5.21) and Lemma 5.22, there exists $\alpha > 0$ such that

\[
P(H_{8n, n\sqrt{3}}) \geq \alpha, \quad n \geq 1.
\]

We may represent the annulus $A_n$ as the pairwise-intersection of six copies of $R_{8n, n\sqrt{3}}$ obtained by translation and rotation, as illustrated in Figure 5.9. If each of these is traversed by a black path in its long direction, then the event $O_n$ occurs. By the FKG inequality,

\[
P(O_n) \geq \alpha^6,
\]

and the theorem is proved.

**5.6 The Critical Probability in Two Dimensions**

We revert to bond percolation on the square lattice in this section. The square lattice has a property of self-duality, illustrated in Figure 1.5. ‘Percolation of open edges on the primal lattice’ is dual to ‘percolation of closed edges on the dual lattice’. The self-dual value of $p$ is thus $p = \frac{1}{2}$, and it was long believed that the self-dual point is also the critical point $p_c$. Theodore Harris [164] proved by a geometric construction that $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$, whence $p_c(\mathbb{Z}^2) \geq \frac{1}{2}$. Harry Kesten [186] proved the complementary inequality.

**5.25 Theorem [164, 186]** The critical probability of bond percolation on the square lattice equals $\frac{1}{2}$. Furthermore, $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$. 
Figure 5.9 If each of the six long rectangles are traversed in the long direction by black paths, then the intersection of these paths contains a black cycle within the annulus $A_n$.

Before giving a proof, we make some comments on the original proof. Harris [164] showed that, if $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) > 0$, then we can construct closed dual cycles around the origin. Such cycles prevent the cluster $C$ from being infinite, and therefore $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$, a contradiction. Similar 'path-construction' arguments were developed by Russo [254] and Seymour–Welsh [264] in a proof that $p > p_c$ if and only if $\chi(1 - p) < \infty$. This so-called 'RSW method' has acquired prominence through recent work on SLE (see Sections 5.5 and 5.7).

The complementary inequality $p_c(\mathbb{Z}^2) \leq \frac{1}{2}$ was proved by Kesten in [186]. More specifically, he showed that, for $p < \frac{1}{2}$, the probability of an open left–right crossing of the rectangle $[0, 2^k] \times [0, 2^{k+1}]$ tends to zero as $k \to \infty$. With the benefit of hindsight, we may view his argument as establishing a type of sharp-threshold theorem for the event in question.

The arguments that prove Theorem 5.25 may be adapted to certain other situations. For example, Wierman [284] proved that the critical probabilities of bond percolation on the hexagonal/triangular pair of lattices (see Figure 5.7) are the dual pair of values satisfying the star–triangle transformation. Russo [255] adapted the arguments to site percolation on the square lattice. It is easily seen by the same arguments that site percolation on the triangular
lattice has critical probability $\frac{1}{2}$.

The proof of Theorem 5.25 is broken into two parts.

**Proof of Theorem 5.25:** $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$, and hence $p_c \geq \frac{1}{2}$. Zhang discovered a beautiful proof of this, using only the uniqueness of the infinite cluster; see [127, Sect. 11.3]. Set $p = \frac{1}{2}$, and assume that $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) > 0$. Let $T(n) = [0, n]^2$, and find $N$ sufficiently large that

$$\Pr_\frac{1}{2} (T(n) \leftrightarrow \infty) > 1 - \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^4, \quad n \geq N.$$  

We set $n = N + 1$. Let $A^l, A^r, A^t, A^b$ denote the (respective) events that the left, right, top, bottom sides of $T(n)$ are joined to $\infty$ off $T(n)$. By the FKG inequality,

$$\Pr_\frac{1}{2} (T(n) \leftrightarrow \infty) = \Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^l \cap A^r \cap A^t \cap A^b) \geq \Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^l) \Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^r) \Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^t) \Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^b)$$

by symmetry, for $g = l, r, t, b$. Therefore,

$$\Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^g) \geq 1 - \Pr_\frac{1}{2} (T(n) \leftrightarrow \infty)^{1/4} > \frac{7}{8}.$$  

We consider next the dual box, with vertex set

$$T(n)_d = [0, n - 1]^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right).$$

Let $A^l_d, A^r_d, A^t_d, A^b_d$ denote the (respective) events that the left, right, top, bottom sides of $T(n)_d$ are joined to $\infty$ by a closed dual path off $T(n)_d$. Since each edge of the dual is closed with probability $\frac{1}{2}$,

$$\Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A^g_d) > \frac{7}{8}, \quad g = l, r, t, b.$$  

Consider the event $A = A^l \cap A^r \cap A^t \cap A^b$, illustrated in Figure 5.10. Clearly, $\Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A) \leq \frac{1}{4}$, so that $\Pr_\frac{1}{2} (A) \geq \frac{1}{2}$. However, on $A$, either $\mathbb{L}_2$ has two infinite open clusters or its dual has two infinite closed clusters. By Theorem 5.14, each event has probability 0, a contradiction. We deduce that $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$, implying in particular that $p_c \geq \frac{1}{2}$.

**Proof of Theorem 5.25:** $p_c \leq \frac{1}{2}$. We give two proofs. The first uses the general exponential-decay Theorem 5.1. The second was proposed by Stanislav Smirnov, and avoids the appeal to Theorem 5.1. It is close in spirit to

$^5$See also Section 5.8.
Further Percolation

Figure 5.10  The left and right sides of the box $T(n)$ are joined to infinity by open paths of the primal lattice, and the top and bottom sides of the dual box $T(n)_d$ are joined to infinity by closed dual paths. Using the uniqueness of the infinite open cluster, the two open paths must be joined by an open path. This forces the existence of two disjoint infinite closed clusters in the dual.

Kesten’s original proof and resonates with Menshikov’s proof of Theorem 5.1. A third approach to the proof uses the sharp-threshold Theorem 4.68, and this is deferred to Section 5.8.

Proof A  Suppose instead that $p_c > \frac{1}{2}$. By Theorem 5.1, there exists $\gamma > 0$ such that

$$P_{\frac{1}{2}}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial[-n, n]^2) \leq e^{-\gamma n}, \quad n \geq 1. \quad (5.26)$$

Let $S(n)$ be the graph with vertex-set $[0, n + 1] \times [0, n]$ and edge-set containing all edges inherited from $\mathbb{Z}^2$ except those in either the left side or the right side of $S(n)$. Let $A$ be the event that there exists an open path joining the left side and right side of $S(n)$. If $A$ does not occur, then the top side of the dual of $S(n)$ is joined to the bottom side by a closed dual path. Since the dual of $S(n)$ is isomorphic to $S(n)$, and since $p = \frac{1}{2}$, it follows that

$$P_{\frac{1}{2}}(A) = \frac{1}{2} \quad (\text{see Figure 5.11}).$$

However, by (5.26),

$$P_{\frac{1}{2}}(A) \leq (n + 1)e^{-\gamma n}.$$
Figure 5.11 If there is no open left–right crossing of $S(n)$, there must exist a closed top–bottom crossing in the dual.

a contradiction for large $n$. We deduce that $p_c \leq \frac{1}{2}$.

Proof B Let $\Lambda(k) = [-k, k]^2$, and let $A_k = \Lambda(3k) \setminus \Lambda(k)$ be an ‘annulus’. The principal ingredient of the proof is an estimate that follows from the square-lattice version of the RSW Theorem 5.23. Let $p = \frac{1}{2}$. There exist $c, \sigma > 0$ such that:

(a) there are at least $c \log r$ disjoint annuli $A_k$ within $[-r, r]^2$,

(b) each such annulus contains, with probability at least $\alpha$, a dual closed cycle having $0$ in its inside.

Therefore, $g(r) = \mathbb{P}_{\frac{1}{2}}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda(r))$ satisfies

$$g(r) \leq (1 - \sigma)^{c \log r} = r^{-\alpha},$$

where $\alpha = \alpha(c, \sigma) > 0$. For future use, let $D$ be a random variable with

$$\mathbb{P}(D \geq r) = g(r), \quad r \geq 0.$$

There are a variety of ways of implementing the basic argument of this proof, of which we choose the following. Let $R_n = [0, 2n] \times [0, n]$, where $n \geq 1$, and let $H_n$ be the event that $R_n$ is traversed by an open path from left to right. The event $A$ given in Proof A satisfies $\mathbb{P}_{\frac{1}{2}}(A) = \frac{1}{2}$. Hence, by

\[\text{See Exercise 5.5.}\]
Lemma 5.20 rewritten for the square lattice, there exists $\gamma > 0$ such that
\begin{equation}
\mathbb{P}_{\frac{1}{2}}(H_n) \geq \gamma, \quad n \geq 1.
\end{equation}
This inequality will be used later in the proof.

We take $p \geq \frac{1}{4}$ and work with the dual model. Let $S_n$ be the dual box $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right) + [0, 2n-1] \times [0, n+1]$, and let $V_n$ be the event that $S_n$ is traversed from top to bottom by a closed dual path. Let $N = N_n$ be the number of pivotal edges for the event $V_n$, and let $\Pi$ be the event that $N \geq 1$ and all pivotal edges are closed (in the dual). We shall prove that
\begin{equation}
\mathbb{E}_p(N | \Pi) \geq c^{'n^a},
\end{equation}
for some absolute positive constant $c^{'}$.

For any top–bottom path $\lambda$ of $S_n$, we write $L(\lambda)$ (respectively, $R(\lambda)$) for the set of edges of $S_n$ lying strictly to the ‘left’ (respectively, ‘right’) of $\lambda$. On $\Pi$, there exists a closed top–bottom path of $S_n$, and from amongst such paths we may pick the leftmost, denoted $\Lambda$. As in the proof of Lemma 5.20, $\Lambda$ is measurable on the states of edges in and to the left of $\Lambda$; that is to say, for any admissible path $\lambda$, the event $\{\Lambda = \lambda\}$ depends only on the states of edges in $\lambda \cup L(\lambda)$. (See Figure 5.12.)

Assume as above that $\Pi$ occurs, and that $\Lambda = \lambda$. Every pivotal edge for $V_n$ lies in $\lambda$. Each edge $e = (x, y) \in \lambda$ has a dual edge $e_d = (u_l, u_r)$, for some $u_l, u_r \in \mathbb{Z}^2$. Since $\lambda$ is leftmost, exactly one of these endvertices, $u_l$ say, is necessarily connected to the left side of $R_n$ by an open primal path of edges dual to edges of $L(\lambda)$. In addition, $e$ is pivotal for $V_n$ if and only if $u_l$ is connected to the right side of $R_n$ by an open primal path.

We now take a walk along $\lambda$ from bottom to top, encountering its edges in order. Let $f_1, f_2, \ldots, f_N$ be the pivotal edges thus encountered, with $f_1 = (x_1, y_1)$, and let $y_0$ be the initial vertex of $\lambda$ and $x_{N+1}$ the final vertex. Given $\Pi$, we have that $N \geq 1$, and there exists a ‘lowest’ open path $\Psi$ connecting the right side of $R_n$ to an endvertex of the dual edge of $f_1$. By symmetry,
\begin{equation}
\mathbb{P}_p(y_1 \text{ lies in the lower half of } S_n | \Pi) \geq \frac{1}{2}.
\end{equation}

Consider now a configuration $\omega \in \Pi$, with $\Lambda = \lambda$ and $\Psi = \psi$, say. The states of edges in the region $T(\lambda, \psi)$ of $S_n$, lying both to the right of $\lambda$ and above $\psi$, are unaffected by the conditioning. That is, for given $\lambda, \psi$, the states of the edges in $T(\lambda, \psi)$ are governed by product measure. What is the distance from $f_1 = (x_1, y_1)$ to the next pivotal edge $f_2 = (x_2, y_2)$? No pivotal edge is encountered on the way, and therefore there exists a closed path of $T(\lambda, \psi)$ from $y_1$ to $x_2$. Since $1 - p \leq \frac{1}{2}$, the $L^\infty$ displacement of
such a path is no larger in distribution than a random variable $D$ satisfying (5.28). Having reached $f_2$, we iterate the argument until we attain the top of $S_n$. The vertical displacement between two consecutive pivotal edges is (conditional on the construction prior to the earlier such edge) bounded above in distribution by $D + 1$, where the extra 1 takes care of the length of an edge.

By (5.31) and the stochastic inequality, we have

\[
\mathbb{P}_p(N \geq k + 1 \mid \Pi) \geq \frac{1}{2} \mathbb{P}(\Sigma_k \leq n/2), \quad k \geq 0,
\]

where $D' = 1 + \min\{D, n/2\}$ and $\Sigma_i = D'_1 + D'_2 + \cdots + D'_i$ is a sum of independent copies of $D'$. There are at least two ways to continue. The first is to deduce that

\[
2\mathbb{P}_p(N \geq k + 1 \mid \Pi) \geq 1 - \mathbb{P}(D'_i > n/(2k) \text{ for some } 1 \leq i \leq k)
\]

\[
\geq 1 - kg\left(n/(2k) - 1\right).
\]

We choose here to use instead the renewal theorem as in the proof of Theorem 5.1. Sum (5.32) over $k$ to obtain that

\[
\mathbb{E}_p(N \mid \Pi) \geq \frac{1}{2} \mathbb{E}(K),
\]
where $K = \min\{k : \Sigma_k > n/2\}$. By Wald’s equation,

$$\frac{1}{n} \leq \mathbb{E}(\Sigma_K) = \mathbb{E}(K)\mathbb{E}(D'),$$

so that

$$\mathbb{E}(K) > \frac{n/2}{\mathbb{E}(D')} = \frac{n/2}{\sum_{r=0}^{n/2} g(r)}.$$  

Inequality (5.30) follows from (5.33), (5.34) and (5.27), (5.28).

We prove next that

$$\mathbb{P}_p(\Pi) \geq \mathbb{P}_p(H_n)\mathbb{P}_p(V_n).$$

Suppose $V_n$ occurs, with $\Lambda = \lambda$, and let $W_\lambda$ be the event that there exists $e \in \lambda$ such that: its dual edge $e_d = \langle u, v \rangle$ has an endpoint connected to the right side of $R_n$ by an open primal path of edges of $R(\lambda)$. The states of edges of $R(\lambda)$ are governed by product measure, so that

$$\mathbb{P}_p(W_\lambda \mid \Lambda = \lambda) \geq \mathbb{P}_p(H_n).$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbb{P}_p(H_n)\mathbb{P}_p(V_n) \leq \sum \mathbb{P}_p(W_j \mid \Lambda = \lambda)\mathbb{P}_p(\Lambda = \lambda) = \mathbb{P}_p(\Pi).$$

Since $\mathbb{P}_p(H_n) = 1 - \mathbb{P}_p(V_n)$, by (5.30) and Russo’s formula (Theorem 4.66), we have

$$\frac{d}{dp} \mathbb{P}_p(H_n) \geq \mathbb{E}_p(N) \geq c' n^\alpha \mathbb{P}_p(H_n)[1 - \mathbb{P}_p(H_n)], \quad p \geq \frac{1}{2}.$$ 

The resulting differential inequality

$$\left[ \frac{1}{\mathbb{P}_p(H_n)} + \frac{1}{1 - \mathbb{P}_p(H_n)} \right] \frac{d}{dp} \mathbb{P}_p(H_n) \geq c' n^\alpha$$

may be integrated over the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, p]$ to obtain via (5.29) that

$$1 - \mathbb{P}_p(H_n) \leq \frac{1}{\gamma} \exp\left[-c'(p - \frac{1}{2})n^\alpha\right].$$

This may be used to prove exponential decay in two dimensions (as in Theorem 5.1), but here we use only the (lesser) consequence that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [1 - \mathbb{P}_p(H_n)] < \infty, \quad p > \frac{1}{2}. $$

Readers are invited to complete the details of the above argument.

The same point may be reached using the theory of influence, as in Exercise 5.4.
5.7 Cardy’s Formula

There is a rich physical theory of phase transitions in theoretical physics, and critical percolation is at the heart of this theory. The case of two dimensions is very special, in that methods of conformality and complex analysis, bolstered by predictions of conformal field theory, have given rise to a beautiful and universal vision for the nature of such singularities. This vision is both analytical and geometrical. Its proof has been one of the principal targets of probability theory and theoretical physics over recent decades. The ‘road map’ to the proof is now widely accepted, and many key ingredients have become clear. There remain some significant problems.

The principal ingredient of the mathematical theory is the SLE process introduced in Section 2.5. In a classical theorem of Löwner [216], we see

\[ \theta(p) > 0 \]

whence \( p_c \leq \frac{1}{2} \).

---

Figure 5.13 The rectangles with aspect ratio 2 are arranged in such a way that, if all but finitely many are traversed in the long direction, then there must exist an infinite cluster.

We now use a block argument that was published in [70]. Let \( p > \frac{1}{2} \). Consider the nested rectangles

\[ B_{2r-1} = [0, 2^{2r}] \times [0, 2^{2r-1}], \quad B_{2r} = [0, 2^{2r}] \times [0, 2^{2r+1}], \quad r \geq 1, \]

illustrated in Figure 5.13. Let \( K_{2r-1} \) (respectively, \( K_{2r} \)) be the event that \( B_{2r-1} \) (respectively, \( B_{2r} \)) is traversed from left to right (respectively, top to bottom) by an open path, so that \( P_p(K_k) = P_p(H_k) \). By (5.36) and the Borel–Cantelli lemma, all but finitely many of the \( K_k \) occur, \( P_p \)-almost surely. By Figure 5.13 again, this entails the existence of an infinite open cluster, whence \( \theta(p) > 0 \), and hence \( p_c \leq \frac{1}{2} \). \( \square \)

---

\(^9\) An alternative block argument may be found in Section 5.8.
Further Percolation

that a growing path $\gamma$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ may be encoded via conformal maps $g_t$, in terms of a so-called `driving function' $b : [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$. Oded Schramm [258] predicted that a variety of scaling limits of stochastic processes in $\mathbb{R}^2$ may be formulated thus, with $b$ chosen as a Brownian motion with an appropriately chosen variance parameter $\kappa$. He gave a partial proof that LERW on $\mathbb{L}^2$, suitably re-scaled, has limit SLE$_2$, and he indicated that UST has limit SLE$_8$ and percolation SLE$_6$.

These observations did not come out of the blue. There was considerable earlier speculation around the idea of conformality, and we highlight the statement by John Cardy of his formula [66], and the discussions of Michael Aizenman and others concerning possible invariance under conformal maps (see, for example, [4, 5, 195]).

Much has been achieved since Schramm’s paper [258]. Stanislav Smirnov [266, 267] has proved that critical site percolation on the triangular lattice satisfies Cardy’s formula, and his route to `complete conformality’ and SLE$_6$ has been verified; see [63, 64] and [198, 272, 282]. Many of the critical exponents for the model have now been calculated rigorously, namely

$$\beta = \frac{5}{36}, \quad \gamma = \frac{43}{18}, \quad \nu = \frac{4}{3}, \quad \rho = \frac{48}{5},$$

together with the ‘two-arm’ exponent $\frac{2}{3}$; see [202, 270]. On the other hand, it has not yet been possible to extend such results to other principal percolation models such as bond or site percolation on the square lattice (some extensions have proved possible; see [75] for example).

On a related front, Smirnov [268, 269] proved convergence of the re-scaled cluster boundaries of the critical Ising model (respectively, the associated random-cluster model) on $\mathbb{L}^2$ to SLE$_3$ (respectively, SLE$_{16/3}$). This was extended in [77] to the Ising model on any so-called isoradial graph, that is, a graph embeddable in $\mathbb{R}^2$ in such a way that the vertices of any face lie on the circumference of some circle of given radius $r$. See also [76, 91].

The theory of SLE will soon constitute a book in its own right, and similarly for the theory of the several scaling limits that have now been proved. These general topics are beyond the scope of the current work. We restrict ourselves here to the statement and proof of Cardy’s formula for critical site percolation on the triangular lattice, and we make use of the accounts to be found in [282, 283]. See also [30, 55, 247].

We consider site percolation on the triangular lattice $\mathbb{T}$, with density $\rho = \frac{1}{2}$ of open (or “black”) vertices. It may be proved very much as in Theorem 5.25 that $\rho_c = \frac{1}{2}$ for this process (see also Section 5.8), but this

10See [197, 281].
fact does not appear to be directly relevant to the material that follows. It is, rather, the ‘self-duality’ or ‘self-matching’ property that counts.

Let \( D \neq \mathbb{C} \) be an open simply connected domain in \( \mathbb{R}^2 \); for simplicity we shall assume that its boundary \( \partial D \) is a Jordan curve. Let \( a, b, c \) be distinct points of \( \partial D \), taken in anticlockwise order around \( \partial D \). There exists a conformal map \( \phi \) from \( D \) to the interior of the equilateral triangle \( T \) of \( \mathbb{C} \) with vertices \( A = 0, B = 1, C = e^{\pi i/3} \), and this \( \phi \) can be extended to the boundary \( \partial D \) in such a way that it becomes a homeomorphism from \( D \cup \partial D \) (respectively, \( \partial D \)) to the closed triangle \( T \) (respectively, \( \partial T \)). There exists a unique such \( \phi \) that maps \( a, b, c \) to \( A, B, C \), respectively. With \( \phi \) chosen accordingly, the image \( X = \phi(x) \) of a fourth point \( x \in \partial D \), taken for example on the arc from \( b \) to \( c \), lies on the arc \( BC \) of \( T \) (see Figure 5.14).

![Figure 5.14](image-url)

The triangular lattice \( \mathbb{T} \) is re-scaled to have mesh-size \( \delta \), and we ask about the probability \( \mathbb{P}_\delta(ac \leftrightarrow bx \text{ in } D) \) of an open path joining the arc \( ac \) to the arc \( bx \), in an approximation to the intersection \( (\delta T) \cap D \) of the re-scaled lattice with \( D \). It is a standard application of the RSW method of the last section to show that \( \mathbb{P}_\delta(ac \leftrightarrow bx \text{ in } D) \) is uniformly bounded away from 0 and 1 as \( \delta \to 0 \). It thus seems reasonable that this probability should converge as \( \delta \to 0 \), and Cardy’s formula (together with conformality) tells us the value of the limit.

5.38 Theorem (Cardy’s formula) \([66, 266, 267]\) In the notation introduced above,

\[
\mathbb{P}_\delta(ac \leftrightarrow bx \text{ in } D) \to |BX| \quad \text{as } \delta \to 0.
\]

Some history: In \([66]\), Cardy stated the limit of \( \mathbb{P}_\delta(ac \leftrightarrow bx \text{ in } D) \) in terms of a hypergeometric function of a certain cross-ratio. His derivation was based on arguments from conformal field theory. Lennart Carleson recognized the hypergeometric function in terms of the conformal map from
Further Percolation

a rectangle to a triangle, and he was led to conjecture the simple form (5.39). The limit was proved in 2001 by Stanislav Smirnov [266, 267]. The proof utilizes the three-way symmetry of the triangular lattice in a somewhat mysterious manner.

Cardy’s formula is, in a sense, only the beginning of the story of the scaling limit of critical two-dimensional percolation. It leads naturally to a full picture of the scaling limits of open paths, within the context of the Schramm–Löwner evolution $\text{SLE}_\kappa$. While explicit application is towards the calculation of critical exponents [202, 270], $\text{SLE}_\kappa$ presents a much fuller picture than this. Further details may be found in [64, 65, 267, 282]. The principal open problem at the time of writing is to extend the scaling limit beyond the triangular site model to either the bond or site model on another major lattice.

We prove Theorem 5.38 in the remainder of this section. This will be done first with $D = T$, the unit equilateral triangle, followed by the general case. Assume then that $D = T$ with $T$ given as above. The vertices of $T$ are $A = 0, B = 1, C = e^{\pi i/3}$. We take $\delta = 1/n$ and shall later let $n \to \infty$.

Consider site percolation on $T_n = (n^{-1} T) \cap T$. We may draw either $T_n$ or its dual graph $H_n$, which comprises hexagons with centres at the vertices of $T_n$, illustrated in Figure 1.5. Each vertex of $T_n$ (or equivalently, each face of $H_n$) is declared black with probability $1/2$, and white otherwise. For ease of notation later, we write $A = A_1, B = A_{\tau}, C = A_{\tau^2}$, where

$$\tau = e^{2\pi i/3}.$$

For vertices $V, W$ of $T$ we write $VW$ for the arc of the boundary of $T$ from $V$ to $W$.

Let $z$ be the centre of a face of $T_n$ (or equivalently, $z \in V(H_n)$, the vertex-set of the dual graph $H_n$). The events to be studied are as follows. Let $E^n_j(z)$ be the event that there exists a self-avoiding black path from $A_1 A_\tau$ to $A_1 A_{\tau^2}$ that separates $z$ from $A_\tau A_{\tau^2}$. Let $E^n_{\tau}(z), E^n_{\tau^2}(z)$ be given similarly after rotating the triangle clockwise by $\tau$ and $\tau^2$, respectively. The event $E^n_1(z)$ is illustrated in Figure 5.15. We write

$$H^n_j(z) = \Pr(E^n_j(z)), \quad j = 1, \tau, \tau^2.$$

5.40 Lemma The functions $H^n_j$, $j = 1, \tau, \tau^2$, are uniformly Hölder on $V(H_n)$, in that there exist absolute constants $c \in (0, \infty), \epsilon \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$|H^n_j(z) - H^n_j(z')| \leq c|z - z'|^\epsilon, \quad z, z' \in V(H_n),$$

(5.41)

$$1 - H^n_j(z) \leq c|z - A_j|^\epsilon, \quad z \in V(H_n),$$

(5.42)
where \( A_j \) in these relations is interpreted as the complex number at the vertex \( A_j \).

The domain of the \( H_j^n \) may be extended as follows: the set \( V(H_n) \) may be viewed as the vertex-set of a triangulation of a region slightly smaller than \( T \), on each triangle of which \( H_j^n \) may be defined by linear interpolation between its values at the three vertices. Finally, the \( H_j^n \) may be extended up to the boundary of \( T \) in such a way that the resulting functions satisfy (5.41) for all \( z, z' \in T \), and

\[
(5.43) \quad H_j^n(A_j) = 1, \quad j = 1, \tau, \tau^2.
\]

**Proof.** It suffices to prove (5.41) for small \( |z - z'| \). Suppose \( |z - z'| \leq \frac{1}{1000} \), say, and let \( F \) be the event that there exist both a black and a white cycle of the entire re-scaled triangular lattice \( \mathbb{T}/n \), each of diameter smaller than \( \frac{1}{4} \), and each having both \( z \) and \( z' \) in the bounded component of its complement. If \( F \) occurs, then either both or neither of the events \( E_j^n(z), E_j^n(z') \) occur, whence

\[
|H_j^n(z) - H_j^n(z')| \leq 1 - \mathbb{P}(F).
\]

When \( z \) and \( z' \) are a ‘reasonable’ distance from \( A_j \), the white cycle prevents the occurrence of one of these events without the other. The black cycle is needed when \( z, z' \) are close to \( A_j \).
There exists $C > 0$ such that we may find $\log(C/|z - z'|)$ vertex-disjoint annuli, each containing $z, z'$ in their central ‘hole’, and each within distance $\frac{1}{8}$ of both $z$ and $z'$ (the definition of annulus precedes Theorem 5.23). By Theorem 5.23, the chance that no such annulus contains a black (respectively, white) cycle is no greater than
\[
(1 - \sigma)^{\log(C/|z - z'|)} = \left(\frac{|z - z'|}{C}\right)^{-\log(1 - \sigma)},
\]
whence $1 - \mathbb{P}(F) \leq c|z - z'|^{\epsilon}$ for suitable $c$ and $\epsilon$. Inequality (5.42) follows similarly with $z' = A_j$.

It is convenient to work in the space of uniformly H"{o}lder functions on the closed triangle $T$ satisfying (5.41) and (5.42). By the Arzel"{a}–Ascoli theorem (see, for example, [84, Sect. 2.4]), this space is relatively compact. Therefore, the sequence of triples $(H^n_1, H^n_\tau, H^n_\tau^2)$ possesses subsequential limits in the sense of uniform convergence, and we shall see that any such limit is of the form $(H_1, H_\tau, H_\tau^2)$, where the $H_j$ are harmonic with certain boundary conditions and satisfy (5.41) and (5.42). The boundary conditions guarantee the uniqueness of the $H_j$, and it will follow that $H^n_j \to H_j$ as $n \to \infty$.

We shall see in particular that
\[
H_\tau(z) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} |\text{Im}(z)|,
\]
the re-scaled imaginary part of $z$. The values of $H_1$ and $H_\tau$ are found by rotation. The claim of the theorem will follow by letting $z \to X \in BC$.

Let $(H_1, H_\tau, H_\tau^2)$ be a subsequential limit as above. That the $H_j$ are harmonic will follow from the fact that the functions
\[
G_1 = H_1 + H_\tau + H_\tau^2, \quad G_2 = H_1 + \tau H_\tau + \tau^2 H_\tau^2,
\]
are analytic, and this analyticity will be implied by Morera’s theorem on checking that the contour integrals of $G_1, G_2$ around triangles of a certain form are zero. The integration step amounts to summing the $H_j(z)$ over certain $z$ and using a cancellation property that follows from the next lemma.

Let $z$ be the centre of a face of $T_n$ with vertices labelled $s_1, s_2, s_3$ in anticlockwise order. Let $z_1, z_2, z_3$ be the centres of the neighbouring faces, labelled relative to the $s_j$ as in Figure 5.16.

5.45 Lemma We have that
\[
\mathbb{P}[E^n_1(z_1) \setminus E^n_1(z)] = \mathbb{P}[E^n_\tau(z_2) \setminus E^n_\tau(z)] = \mathbb{P}[E^n_\tau^2(z_3) \setminus E^n_\tau^2(z)].
\]

Before proving this, we introduce the exploration process illustrated in Figure 5.17. Suppose that all vertices ‘just outside’ the arc $A_1 A_2$
Figure 5.16 An illustration of the event $E_1^n(z_1) \setminus E_2^n(z)$. The path $l_1$ is white, and $l_2, l_3$ are black.

Proof. The event $E_1^n(z_1) \setminus E_2^n(z)$ occurs if and only if there exist disjoint paths $l_1, l_2, l_3$ of $\mathbb{H}_n$ such that:

(i) $l_1$ is white and joins $s_1$ to $A_1A_2$,
(ii) $l_2$ is black and joins $s_2$ to $A_1A_2$,
(iii) $l_3$ is black and joins $s_3$ to $A_1A_2$.

See Figure 5.16 for an explanation of the notation. On this event, the exploration path $\eta_n$ of Figure 5.17 passes through $z$, having arrived at $z$ along the edge $(z_1, z)$ of $\mathbb{H}_n$. Furthermore, up to the time at which it hits $z$, it lies in the region of $\mathbb{H}_n$ between $l_2$ and $l_1$. Indeed, we may take $l_2$ (respectively, $l_1$) to be the black path (respectively, white path) of $\mathbb{T}_n$ lying on the right side (respectively, left side) of $\eta_n$ up to this point.

Conditional on the event above, and with $l_1$ and $l_2$ given in terms of $\eta_n$ accordingly, the states of vertices of $\mathbb{T}_n$ lying below $l_1 \cup l_2$ are independent Bernoulli variables. Therefore, the conditional probability of a black path
Further Percolation

Figure 5.17 The exploration path $\eta_n$ started at the top vertex $A_{\tau^2}$ and stopped when it hits the bottom side $A_1A_{\tau}$ of the triangle.

$l_3$ satisfying (iii) is the same as that of a white path. We make this measure-preserving change, and then we interchange the colours white and black to conclude that: $E^n(\tau) \setminus E^n(\tau)$ has the same probability as the event that there exist disjoint paths $l_1, l_2, l_3$ of $\mathbb{T}_n$ such that:

(i) $l_1$ is black and joins $s_1$ to $A_{\tau}A_{\tau^2}$,
(ii) $l_2$ is white and joins $s_2$ to $A_1A_{\tau^2}$,
(iii) $l_3$ is black and joins $s_3$ to $A_1A_{\tau}$.

This is precisely the event $E^n(\tau) \setminus E^n(\tau)$, and the lemma is proved. □

We use Morera’s theorem in order to show the required analyticity. This theorem states that: if $f : R \to \mathbb{C}$ is continuous on the open region $R$, and $\oint_{\gamma} f \, dz = 0$ for all closed curves $\gamma$ in $R$, then $f$ is analytic. It is standard (see [252, p. 208]) that it suffices to consider triangles $\gamma$ in $R$. We may in fact restrict ourselves to equilateral triangles with one side parallel to the $x$-axis. This may be seen either by an approximation argument or by an argument based on the threefold Cauchy–Riemann equations

\begin{equation}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial 1} = \frac{1}{\tau} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \tau} = \frac{1}{\tau^2} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \tau^*},
\end{equation}

where $\partial / \partial j$ means the derivative in the direction of the complex number $j$. 

5.47 Lemma Let $\Gamma$ be an equilateral triangle contained in the interior of $T$ with sides parallel to those of $T$. Then

$$\oint_{\Gamma} H^n_1(z) \, dz = \oint_{\Gamma} \left[ H^n_1(z)/\tau \right] \, dz + O(n^{-\epsilon})$$

$$= \oint_{\Gamma} \left[ H^n_{1z}(z)/\tau^2 \right] \, dz + O(n^{-\epsilon}),$$

where $\epsilon$ is given in Lemma 5.40.

Proof. Every triangular facet of $T_n$ (that is, a triangular union of faces) points either upwards (in that its horizontal side is at its bottom) or downwards. Let $\hat{\Gamma}$ be an equilateral triangle contained in the interior of $T$ with sides parallel to those of $T$, and assume that $\hat{\Gamma}$ points upwards (the same argument works for downward-pointing triangles). Let $\hat{\Gamma}_n$ be the subgraph of $T_n$ lying within $\hat{\Gamma}$, so that $\hat{\Gamma}_n$ is a triangular facet of $T_n$. Let $D_n$ be the set of downward-pointing faces of $\hat{\Gamma}_n$. Let $\eta$ be a vector of $\mathbb{R}^2$ such that: if $z$ is the centre of a face of $D_n$, then $z + \eta$ is the centre of a neighbouring face, that is, $\eta \in \{i, i\tau, i\tau^2\}/(n\sqrt{3})$. Write

$$h^n_j(z, \eta) = \mathbb{P}[E^n_j(z + \eta) \setminus E^n_j(z)].$$

By Lemma 5.45,

$$H^n_1(z + \eta) - H^n_1(z) = h^n_1(z, \eta) - h^n_1(z + \eta, -\eta) = h^n_2(z, \eta\tau) - h^n_2(z + \eta, -\eta\tau).$$

Now,

$$H^n_1(z + \eta\tau) - H^n_1(z) = h^n_2(z, \eta\tau) - h^n_2(z + \eta\tau, -\eta\tau),$$

and so there is a cancellation in

$$I^n_\eta = \sum_{z \in D_n} [H^n_j(z + \eta) - H^n_j(z)] - \sum_{z \in D_n} [H^n_j(z + \eta\tau) - H^n_j(z)]$$

of all terms except those of the form $h^n_j(z', -\eta\tau)$ for certain $z'$ lying in faces of $T_n$ that abut $\partial\hat{\Gamma}_n$. There are $O(n)$ such $z'$, and therefore, by Lemma 5.40,

$$|I^n_\eta| \leq O(n^{1-\epsilon}).$$

Consider the sum

$$J^n = \frac{1}{n} (I^n_\eta + \tau I^n_{i\tau} + \tau^2 I^n_{i\tau^2}),$$

where $I^n_j$ is an abbreviation for the $I^n_{j/\tau^{i\epsilon}}$ of (5.48). The terms of the form $H^n_j(z)$ in (5.48) contribute 0 to $J^n$, since each is multiplied by

$$(1 + \tau + \tau^2)n^{-1} = 0.$$
The remaining terms of the form $H^n_j(z + \eta)$, $H^n_j(z + \eta \tau)$ mostly disappear also, and we are left only with terms $H^n_j(z')$ for certain $z'$ at the centre of the upwards-pointing faces of $\Gamma^n$ abutting $\partial \Gamma^n$. For example, the contribution from $z'$ if its face is at the bottom (but not the corner) of $\Gamma^n$ is
\[
\frac{1}{n} \left[ (\tau + \tau^2) H^n_1(z') - (1 + \tau) H^n_1(z') \right] = -\frac{1}{n} \left[ H^n_1(z') - H^n_1(z') / \tau \right].
\]
When $z'$ is at the right (respectively, left) edge of $\Gamma^n$, we obtain the same term multiplied by $\tau$ (respectively, $\tau^2$). Therefore,
\[
\oint_{\Gamma^n} \left[ H^n_1(z) - H^n_1(z) / \tau \right] dz = -J^n + O(n^{-\epsilon}) = O(n^{-\epsilon}),
\]
by (5.49), where the first $O(n^{-\epsilon})$ term covers the fact that the $z$ in (5.50) is a continuous rather than discrete variable. Since $\Gamma$ and $\Gamma^n$ differ only around their boundaries, and the $H^n_j$ are uniformly H"older,
\[
\oint_{\Gamma} \left[ H^n_1(z) - H^n_1(z) / \tau \right] dz = O(n^{-\epsilon}),
\]
and, by a similar argument,
\[
\oint_{\Gamma} \left[ H^n_1(z) - H^n_1(z) / \tau^2 \right] dz = O(n^{-\epsilon}).
\]
The lemma is proved.

As remarked after the proof of Lemma 5.40, the sequence $(H^n_1, H^n_\tau, H^n_{\tau^2})$ possesses subsequential limits, and it suffices for convergence to show that all such limits are equal. Let $(H_1, H_\tau, H_{\tau^2})$ be such a subsequential limit. By Lemma 5.47, the contour integrals of $H_1$, $H_\tau$, $H_{\tau^2}$ around any $\Gamma$ are equal. Therefore, the contour integrals of the $G_j$ in (5.44) around any $\Gamma$ equal zero. By Morera’s theorem [2, 252], $G_1$ and $G_2$ are analytic on the interior of $T$, and furthermore they may be extended by continuity to the boundary of $T$. In particular, $G_j$ is analytic and real-valued, whence $G_1$ is a constant. By (5.42), $G_1(z) \rightarrow 1$ as $z \rightarrow 0$, whence
\[
G_1 = H_1 + H_\tau + H_{\tau^2} \equiv 1 \text{ on } T.
\]
Therefore, the real part of $G_2$ satisfies
\[
\text{Re}(G_2) = H_1 - \frac{1}{2} (H_\tau + H_{\tau^2}) = \frac{1}{2} (3H_1 - 1),
\]
and similarly
\[
2 \text{Re}(G_2 / \tau) = 3H_\tau - 1, \quad 2 \text{Re}(G_2 / \tau^2) = 3H_{\tau^2} - 1.
\]
Since the $H_j$ are the real parts of analytic functions, they are harmonic. It remains to verify the relevant boundary conditions, and we will concentrate
on the function $H_{\tau^2}$. There are two ways of doing this, of which the first
specifies certain derivatives of the $H_j$ along the boundary of $T$.

By continuity, $H_{\tau^2}(C) = 1$ and $H_{\tau^2} \equiv 0$ on $AB$. We claim that the
horizontal derivative, $\partial H_{\tau^2}/\partial 1$, is 0 on $AC \cup BC$. Once this is proved, it
follows that $H_{\tau^2}(z)$ is the unique harmonic function on $T$ satisfying these
boundary conditions, namely the function $2 |\text{Im}(z)|/\sqrt{3}$. The remaining
claim is proved as follows. Since $G_2$ is analytic, it satisfies the threefold
Cauchy–Riemann equations (5.46). By (5.53) and (5.54),

$$\frac{\partial H_{\tau^2}}{\partial 1} = \frac{2}{3} \text{Re} \left( \frac{1}{\tau^2} \frac{\partial G_2}{\partial 1} \right) = \frac{2}{3} \text{Re} \left( \frac{1}{\tau^3} \frac{\partial G_2}{\partial \tau} \right) = \frac{\partial H_1}{\partial \tau}. \tag{5.55}$$

Now, $H_1 \equiv 0$ on $BC$, and $BC$ has gradient $\tau$, whence the right side of
(5.55)$^{11}$ equals 0 on $BC$. The same argument holds on $AC$ with $H_1$ replaced
by $H_\tau$.

The alternative is slightly simpler; see [30]. For $z \in T$, $G_2(z)$ is a convex
combination of $1, \tau, \tau^2$, and thus maps $T$ to the complex triangle $T'$ with
these three vertices. Furthermore, $G_2$ maps $\partial T$ to $\partial T'$, and $G_2(A_j) = j$
for $j = 1, \tau, \tau^2$. Since $G_2$ is analytic on the interior of $T$, it is conformal,
and there is a unique such conformal map with this boundary behaviour,
namely that composed of a suitable dilation, rotation, and translation of $T$.
This identifies $G_2$ uniquely, and the functions $H_j$ also by (5.53), (5.54).

This concludes the proof of Cardy’s formula when the domain $D$ is an
equilateral triangle. The proof for general $D$ is essentially the same, on
noting that a conformal image of a harmonic function is harmonic. First,
we approximate the boundary of $D$ by a cycle of the triangular lattice with
mesh $\delta$. That $G_1 (\equiv 1)$ and $G_2$ are analytic is proved as before, and hence
the corresponding limit functions $H_1, H_\tau, H_{\tau^2}$ are each harmonic with ap-
propriate boundary conditions. We now apply conformal invariance. By the
Riemann mapping theorem, there exists a conformal map $\phi$ from the inside
of $D$ to the inside of $T$ that may be extended uniquely to their boundaries,
and that maps $a$ (respectively, $b, c$) to $A$ (respectively, $B, C$). The triple
$(H_1 \circ \phi^{-1}, H_{\tau} \circ \phi^{-1}, H_{\tau^2} \circ \phi^{-1})$ solves the corresponding problem on $T$.
We have seen that there is a unique such triple on $T$, given as above, and
equation (5.39) is proved.

$^{11}$We need also that $G_2$ may be continued analytically beyond the boundary of $T$; see
[283].
5.8 The Critical Probability via the Sharp-Threshold Theorem

We use the sharp-threshold Theorem 4.68 to prove the following.

5.56 Theorem [284] The critical probability of site percolation on the triangular lattice satisfies \( p_c = \frac{1}{2} \). Furthermore, \( \theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0 \).

This can be proved in very much the same manner as Theorem 5.25, but we choose here to use the sharp-threshold theorem. This theorem provides a convenient ‘package’ for obtaining the steepness of a box-crossing probability, viewed as a function of \( p \). Other means, more elementary and discovered earlier, may be used instead. These include Kesten’s original proof [186] for bond percolation on the square lattice, Russo’s ‘approximate zero–one law’ [256], and, most recently, the proof of Smirnov presented in Section 5.6. Sharp-thresholds were first used in [53] in the current context, and later in [54, 121, 122]. The present proof may appear somewhat shorter than that of [54].

**Proof.** Let \( \theta(p) \) denote the percolation probability on the triangular lattice \( T \). We have that \( \theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0 \), just as in the proof of the corresponding lower bound for the critical probability \( p_c(L^2) \) in Theorem 5.25, and so we say no more about this. Therefore, \( p_c \geq \frac{1}{2} \).

Two steps remain. First, we shall use the sharp-threshold theorem to deduce that, when \( p > \frac{1}{2} \), long rectangles are traversed with high probability in the long direction. Then we shall use that fact, within a block argument, to show that \( \theta(p) > 0 \).

Each vertex is declared **black** (or open) with probability \( p \), and **white** otherwise. In the notation introduced just prior to Lemma 5.20, let \( H_n = H_{10n, n\sqrt{3}} \) be the event that the rectangle \( R_n = R_{16n, n\sqrt{3}} \) is traversed by a black path in the long direction. By Lemmas 5.20–5.22, there exists \( \tau > 0 \) such that

\[
\Pr_p(H_n) \geq \tau, \quad n \geq 1.
\]

Let \( x \) be a vertex of \( R_n \), and write \( I_{n,p}(x) \) for the influence of \( x \) on the event \( H_n \) under the measure \( \Pr_p \); see (4.27). Now, \( x \) is pivotal for \( H_n \) if and only if:

(i) the left and right sides of \( R_n \) are connected by a black path when \( x \) is black,
(ii) the top and bottom sides of \( R_n \) are connected by a white path when \( x \) is white.

This event is illustrated in Figure 5.18.
Figure 5.18  The vertex $x$ is pivotal for $H_n$ if and only if there is a left–right black crossing of $R_n$ when $x$ is black, and a top–bottom white crossing when $x$ is white.

Let $\frac{1}{2} \leq p \leq \frac{3}{4}$, say. By (ii),
\[
(1 - p)I_{n,p}(x) \leq \mathbb{P}_{1-p}(\text{rad}(C_x) \geq n),
\]
where
\[
\text{rad}(C_x) = \max\{|y - x| : x \leftrightarrow y\}
\]
is the radius of the cluster at $x$. (Here, $|z|$ denotes the graph-theoretic distance from $z$ to the origin.) Since $p \geq \frac{1}{2}$,
\[
\mathbb{P}_{1-p}(\text{rad}(C_x) \geq n) \leq \eta_n,
\]
where
\[
\eta_n = \mathbb{P}_{\frac{1}{2}}(\text{rad}(C_0) \geq n) \to 0 \quad \text{as } n \to \infty,
\]
by the fact that $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$.

By (5.57) and Theorem 4.68, for large $n$,
\[
\mathbb{P}_p'(H_n) \geq c\tau (1 - \mathbb{P}_p(H_n)) \log[1/(8\eta_n)], \quad p \in [\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}],
\]
which may be integrated to give
\[
1 - \mathbb{P}_p(H_n) \leq (1 - \tau)[8\eta_n]^{c\tau(p-\frac{1}{2})}, \quad p \in [\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}].
\]
Let $p > \frac{1}{2}$. By (5.58)–(5.59),
\[
\mathbb{P}_p(H_n) \to 1 \quad \text{as } n \to \infty.
\]

We turn to the required block argument, which differs from that of Section 5.6 in that we utilize no explicit estimate of $\mathbb{P}_p(H_n)$. Roughly speaking, copies of the rectangle $R_n$ are distributed about $T$ in such a way that each
Each block is ‘red’ with probability $\rho_n$. There is an infinite cluster of red blocks with strictly positive probability, and any such cluster contains an infinite open cluster of the original lattice.

Copy corresponds to an edge of a re-scaled copy of $T$. The detailed construction of this ‘renormalized block lattice’ is omitted, and we shall rely on Figure 5.19 for explanation. The ‘blocks’ (that is, the copies of $R_n$) are in one–one correspondence with the edges of $T$, and thus we may label them as $B_e$, $e \in E_T$. Each block intersects just ten other blocks.

Next we define a ‘block event’, that is, a certain event defined on the configuration within a block. The first requirement for this event is that the block be traversed by an open path in the long direction. We shall require some further paths in order that the union of two intersecting blocks contains a single component that traverses each block in its long direction. In specific, we require open paths traversing the block in the short direction, within each of the two extremal $3n \times n\sqrt{3}$ regions of the block. A block is designated red if the above three paths exist within it. See Figure 5.20. If two red blocks, $B_e$ and $B_f$, say, are such that $e$ and $f$ share a vertex, then their union possesses a single open component containing paths traversing each of $B_e$ and $B_f$.

If the block $R_n$ fails to be red, then one or more of the blocks in Figure 5.20 is not traversed by an open path in the long direction. Therefore, $\rho_n := \mathbb{P}_P(R_n \text{ is red})$ satisfies

$$1 - \rho_n \leq 3[1 - \mathbb{P}_P(H_n)] \to 0 \quad \text{as } n \to \infty,$$

(5.61)
by (5.60).

The states of different blocks are dependent random variables, but disjoint blocks have independent states. We shall count paths in the dual, as in (3.8), to obtain that there exists, with strictly positive probability, an infinite path in $T$ comprising edges $e$ for which $B_e$ is red. This implies the existence of an infinite open cluster in the original lattice.

If the red cluster at the origin of the block lattice is finite, there exists a path in the dual lattice (a copy of the hexagonal lattice) that crosses only non-red blocks (as in Figure 3.1). Within any dual path of length $m$, there exists a set of $\lceil m/12 \rceil$ or more edges such that the corresponding blocks are pairwise disjoint. Therefore, the probability that the origin of the block lattice lies in a finite cluster only of red blocks is no greater than

$$\sum_{m=6}^{\infty} 3^m (1 - \rho_n)^{\lceil m/12 \rceil}.$$ 

By (5.61), this may be made smaller than $\frac{1}{2}$ by choosing $n$ sufficiently large. Therefore, $\theta(p) > 0$ for $p > \frac{1}{2}$, and the theorem is proved. \qed
5.9 Exercises

5.1 [41] Consider bond percolation on \(L^2\) with \(p = \frac{1}{2}\), and define the radius of the open cluster \(C\) at the origin by \(\text{rad}(C) = \max\{n : 0 \leftrightarrow \partial[-n, n] \}\). Use the BK inequality to show that
\[
P_p(\text{rad}(C) \geq n) \geq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n}}.
\]

5.2 Let \(D_n\) be the largest diameter (in the sense of graph theory) of the open clusters of bond percolation on \(\mathbb{Z}^d\) that intersect the box \([-n, n]^d\). Show, when \(p < p_c\), that \(D_n / \log n \to \alpha(p)\) almost surely, for some \(\alpha(p) \in (0, \infty)\).

5.3 Consider bond percolation on \(L^2\) with density \(p\). Let \(T_n\) be the box \(0 \leftrightarrow \partial\Lambda(n)\) with periodic boundary conditions, that is, identify any pair \((u, v), (x, y)\) satisfying: either \(u = 0, x = n, v = y,\) or \(v = 0, y = n, u = x\). For given \(m < n\), let \(A\) be the event that there exists some translate of \([0, m]^2\) in \(T_n\) that is crossed by an open path either from top to bottom, or from left to right. Using the theory of influence or otherwise, show that
\[
1 - P_p(A) \leq \left(2(2n^2)^{c(2-\frac{1}{2})} - 1\right)^{\frac{1}{1}}, \quad p > \frac{1}{2}.
\]

5.4 Consider site percolation on the triangular lattice \(\mathbb{T}\), and let \(\Lambda(n)\) be the ball of radius \(n\) centred at the origin. Use the RSW theorem to show that
\[
P_p(0 \leftrightarrow \partial\Lambda(n)) \leq cn^{-\alpha}, \quad n \geq 1,
\]
for constants \(c, \alpha > 0\).

Using the coupling of Section 3.3 or otherwise, deduce that \(\theta(p) \leq c'(p - \frac{1}{2})^{-\beta}\) for \(p > \frac{1}{2}\) and constants \(c', \beta > 0\).

5.5 By adapting the arguments of Section 5.5 or otherwise, develop an RSW theory for bond percolation on \(Z^2\).

5.6 Let \(D\) be an open simply connected domain in \(\mathbb{R}^2\) whose boundary \(\partial D\) is a Jordan curve. Let \(a, b, x, c\) be distinct points on \(\partial D\) taken in anticlockwise order. Let \(P_\delta(\{a \leftrightarrow b\})\) be the probability that, in site percolation on the re-scaled triangular lattice \(\delta\mathbb{T}\) with density \(\frac{1}{2}\), there exists an open path within \(D \cup \partial D\) from some point on the arc \(ac\) to some point on \(bx\). Show that \(P_\delta(\{a \leftrightarrow b\})\) is uniformly bounded away from 0 and 1 as \(\delta \to 0\).

5.7 Let \(f : D \to \mathbb{C}\), where \(D\) is an open simply connected region of the complex plane. If \(f\) is \(C^1\) and satisfies the threefold Cauchy–Riemann equations (5.46), show that \(f\) is analytic.

5.8 Ergodicity of product measure. A translation \(\tau\) of \(\mathbb{L}^d\) induces a translation of \(\Omega = \{0, 1\}^\mathbb{Z}^d\) given by \(\tau(\omega)(e) = \omega(\tau^{-1}(e))\). Let \(\tau\) be a translation other than the identity, and suppose that \(X : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}\) is invariant under \(\tau\). Show that \(X\) is \(P_p\)-almost-surely constant.
Contact Process

The contact process is a model for the spread of disease about the vertices of a graph. It has a property of duality that arises through time reversal. For a vertex-transitive graph such as the $d$-dimensional lattice, there is a multiplicity of invariant measures if and only if there is a strictly positive probability of an unbounded path of infection in space–time from a given vertex. This observation permits the use of methodology developed for the study of oriented percolation. When the underlying graph is a tree, the model has three distinct phases, termed extinction, weak survival, and strong survival. The continuous-time percolation model differs from the contact process in that the time axis is undirected.

6.1 Stochastic Epidemics

One of the simplest stochastic models for the spread of an epidemic is as follows. Consider a population of constant size $N + 1$ that is suffering from an infectious disease. We can model the spread of the disease as a Markov process. Let $X(t)$ be the number of healthy individuals at time $t$ and suppose that $X(0) = N$. We assume that, if $X(t) = n$, the probability of a new infection during a short time-interval $(t, t + h)$ is proportional to the number of possible encounters between ill folk and healthy folk. That is,

$$P(X(t + h) = n - 1 | X(t) = n) = \lambda n (N + 1 - n) h + o(h) \quad \text{as } h \downarrow 0.$$  

In the simplest situation, we assume that nobody recovers. It is easy to show that

$$G(s, t) = E(s^X(t)) = \sum_{n=0}^{N} s^n \mathbb{P}(X(t) = n)$$

satisfies

$$\frac{\partial G}{\partial t} = \lambda (1 - s) \left( N \frac{\partial G}{\partial s} - s \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial s^2} \right)$$
Contact Process

with $G(x, 0) = s^N$. There is no simple way of solving this equation, although a lot of information is available about approximate solutions.

This epidemic model is over-simplistic through the assumptions that:

- the process is Markovian,
- there are only two states and no recovery,
- there is total mixing, in that the rate of spread is proportional to the product of the numbers of infectives and susceptibles.

In ‘practice’ (computer viruses apart), an individual infects only others in its immediate (bounded) geographical vicinity. The introduction of spatial relationships into such a model adds a major complication, and leads to the so-called ‘contact model’ of Harris [165]. In the contact model, the members of the population inhabit the vertex-set of a given graph. Infection takes place between neighbours, and recovery is permitted.

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a (finite or infinite) graph with bounded vertex-degrees. The contact model on $G$ is a continuous-time Markov process on the state space $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}^V$. A state is therefore a $0/1$ vector $\xi = (\xi(x) : x \in V)$, where $0$ represents the healthy state and $1$ the ill state. There are two parameters: an infection rate $\lambda$ and a recovery rate $\delta$. The transition rates are given informally as follows. Suppose that the state at time $t$ is $\xi \in \Sigma$, and let $x \in V$. Then

$$P(\xi_{t+h}(x) = 0 | \xi_t = \xi) = \delta h + o(h), \quad \text{if } \xi(x) = 1,$$
$$P(\xi_{t+h}(x) = 1 | \xi_t = \xi) = \lambda N_\xi(x) h + o(h), \quad \text{if } \xi(x) = 0,$$

where $N_\xi(x)$ is the number of neighbours of $x$ that are infected in $\xi$.

$$N_\xi(x) = |\{y \in V : y \sim x, \xi(y) = 1\}|.$$

Thus, each ill vertex recovers at rate $\delta$, and in the meantime infects any given neighbour at rate $\lambda$.

Care is needed when specifying a Markov process through its transition rates, especially when $G$ is infinite, since then $\Sigma$ is uncountable. We shall see in the next section that the contact model can be constructed via a countably infinite collection of Poisson processes. More general approaches to the construction of interacting particle processes are described in [206] and summarized in Section 10.1.

The basic properties of the contact model were derived in [165]. More complete treatments are found in [206, 208].
6.2 Coupling and Duality

The contact model can be constructed in terms of families of Poisson processes. This representation is both informative and useful for what follows. For each $x \in V$, we draw a ‘time-line’ $[0, \infty)$. On the time-line $\{t\} \times [0, \infty)$ we place a Poisson point process $D_t$ with intensity $\delta$. For each ordered pair $x, y \in V$ of neighbours, we let $B_{x,y}$ be a Poisson point process with intensity $\lambda$. These processes are to be taken independent of each other, and we can assume without loss of generality that the times occurring in the processes are distinct. Points in each $D_t$ are called ‘points of cure’, and points in $B_{x,y}$ are called ‘arrows of infection’ from $x$ to $y$. The appropriate probability measure is denoted by $P_{\tilde{\lambda},\delta}$.

The situation is illustrated in Figure 6.1 with $G = \mathbb{I}$. Let $(x, s), (y, t) \in V \times [0, \infty)$ where $s \leq t$. We define a (directed) path from $(x, s)$ to $(y, t)$ to be a sequence $(x, s) = (x_0, t_0), (x_1, t_1), (x_2, t_2), \ldots, (x_n, t_{n+1}) = (y, t)$ with $t_0 \leq t_1 \leq \cdots \leq t_{n+1}$, such that:

(i) each interval $[x_i, t_i] \times [t_i, t_{i+1}]$ contains no points of $D_{x_i}$,

(ii) $t_i \in B_{x_{i-1}, x_i}$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

We write $(x, s) \rightarrow (y, t)$ if there exists such a directed path.

We think of a point $(x, u)$ of cure as meaning that an infection at $x$ just prior to time $u$ is cured at time $u$. An arrow of infection from $x$ to $y$ at time $u$ means that any infection at $x$ just prior to $u$ is passed at time $u$ to $y$. Thus, $(x, s) \rightarrow (y, t)$ means: $y$ is infected at time $t$ if $x$ is infected at time $s$.

Let $\xi_0 \in \Sigma = \{0, 1\}^V$, and define $\xi_t \in \Sigma, t \in [0, \infty)$, by $\xi_t(y) = 1$ if and only if there exists $x \in V$ such that $\xi_0(x) = 1$ and $(x, 0) \rightarrow (y, t)$. It is clear that $(\xi_t : t \in [0, \infty))$ is a contact model with parameters $\lambda$ and $\delta$.

The above ‘graphical representation’ has several uses. First, it is a geometrical picture of the spread of infection providing a coupling of contact models with all possible initial configurations $\xi_0$. Secondly, it provides couplings of contact models with different values of $\lambda$ and $\delta$, as follows. Let $\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2$ and $\delta_1 \geq \delta_2$, and consider the above representation with $(\lambda, \delta) = (\lambda_2, \delta_1)$. If we remove each point of cure with probability $\delta_2/\delta_1$ (respectively, each arrow of infection with probability $\lambda_1/\lambda_2$), we obtain a representation of a contact model with parameters $(\lambda_2, \delta_2)$ (respectively, parameters $(\lambda_1, \delta_1)$). We obtain thus that the passage of infection is non-increasing in $\delta$ and non-decreasing in $\lambda$.

There is a natural one–one correspondence between $\Sigma$ and the power set $2^V$ of the vertex-set, given by $\xi \leftrightarrow I_\xi = \{x \in V : \xi(x) = 1\}$. We shall frequently regard vectors $\xi$ as sets $I_\xi$. For $\xi \in \Sigma$ and $A \subseteq V$, we write $\xi^A_t$ for the value of the contact model at time $t$ starting at time 0 from the set $A$ of infectives. It is immediate by the rules of the above coupling that:
Figure 6.1 The so-called ‘graphical representation’ of the contact process on the line \( L \). The horizontal line represents ‘space’, and the vertical line above a point \( x \) is the time-line at \( x \). The marks \( \circ \) are the points of cure, and the arrows are the arrows of infection. Suppose we are told that, at time 0, the origin is the unique infected point. In this picture, the initial infective is marked 0, and the bold lines indicate the portions of space–time that are infected.

(a) the coupling is \textit{monotone} in that \( \xi_t^A \subseteq \xi_t^B \) if \( A \subseteq B \),
(b) moreover, the coupling is \textit{additive} in that \( \xi_t^{A \cup B} = \xi_t^A \cup \xi_t^B \).

6.1 \textbf{Theorem (Duality relation)} \textit{For } \( A, B \subseteq V \),

\begin{equation}
\Pr_{\lambda, \delta}(\xi_t^A \cap B \neq \emptyset) = \Pr_{\lambda, \delta}(\xi_t^B \cap A \neq \emptyset).
\end{equation}

Equation (6.2) can be written in the form

\begin{equation*}
\Pr_{\lambda, \delta}^A(\xi_t \equiv 0 \text{ on } B) = \Pr_{\lambda, \delta}^B(\xi_t \equiv 0 \text{ on } A),
\end{equation*}

where the superscripts indicate the initial states. This may be termed ‘weak’ duality, in that it involves probabilities. There is also a ‘strong’ duality, involving configurations of the graphical representation, that may be expressed informally as follows. Suppose we reverse the direction of time in the ‘primary’ graphical representation, and also the directions of the arrows. The law of the resulting process is the same as that of the original. Furthermore, any path of infection in the primary process, after reversal, becomes a path of infection in the reversed process.

\textit{Proof.} The event on the left side of (6.2) is the union over \( a \in A \) and \( b \in B \) of the event that \( (a, 0) \rightarrow (b, t) \). If we reverse the direction of time and
the directions of the arrows of infection, the probability of this event is unchanged and it corresponds now to the event on the right side of (6.2).

6.3 Invariant Measures and Percolation

In this and the next section, we consider the contact process \( \xi = (\xi_t : t \geq 0) \) on the \( d \)-dimensional cubic lattice \( \mathbb{L}^d \) with \( d \geq 1 \). Thus, \( \xi \) is a Markov process on the state space \( \Sigma = \{0, 1\}^{\mathbb{Z}^d} \). Let \( \mathcal{I} \) be the set of invariant measures of \( \xi \), that is, the set of probability measures \( \mu \) on \( \Sigma \) such that \( \mu S_t = \mu \), where \( S = (S_t : t \geq 0) \) is the transition semigroup of the process.\(^1\) It is elementary that \( \mathcal{I} \) is a convex set of measures; if \( \phi_1, \phi_2 \in \mathcal{I} \), then \( \alpha \phi_1 + (1 - \alpha) \phi_2 \in \mathcal{I} \) for \( \alpha \in [0, 1] \). Therefore, \( \mathcal{I} \) is determined by knowledge of the set \( \mathcal{I}_e \) of extremal invariant measures.

The partial order on \( \Sigma \) induces a partial order on probability measures on \( \Sigma \) in the usual way (as in Section 4.1), and we denote this by \( \leq_{st} \). It turns out that \( \mathcal{I} \) possesses a ‘minimal’ and a ‘maximal’ element with respect to the partial order \( \leq_{st} \). The minimal measure (or ‘lower invariant measure’) is the measure, denoted \( \delta_\emptyset \), that places probability 1 on the empty set. It is called ‘lower’ because \( \delta_\emptyset \leq_{st} \mu \) for all measures \( \mu \) on \( \Sigma \).

The maximal measure (or ‘upper invariant measure’) is constructed as the weak limit of the contact model beginning with the set \( \xi_0 = \mathbb{Z}^d \). Let \( \mu_s \) denote the law of \( \xi^d_s \). Since \( \xi^d_s \subseteq \mathbb{Z}^d \),

\[
\mu_0 S_s = \mu_s \leq_{st} \mu_0.
\]

By the monotonicity of the coupling,

\[
\mu_{s+t} = \mu_0 S_s S_t = \mu_s S_t \leq_{st} \mu_0 S_t = \mu_t,
\]

whence the limit

\[
\lim_{t \to \infty} \mu_t(f)
\]

exists for any bounded increasing function \( f : \Sigma \to \mathbb{R} \). It is a general result of measure theory that the space of probability measures on a compact sample space is relatively compact (see [45, Sect. 1.6] and [84, Sect. 9.3]). The space \( (\Sigma, \mathcal{F}) \) is indeed compact, whence the weak limit

\[
\nu = \lim_{t \to \infty} \mu_t
\]

exists. Since \( \nu \) is a limiting measure for the Markov process, it is invariant, and it is called the \textit{upper invariant measure}. It is clear by the method of its construction that \( \nu \) is invariant under the action of any translation of \( \mathbb{L}^d \).

\(^1\)A discussion of the transition semigroup and its relationship to invariant measures can be found in Section 10.1. The semigroup \( S \) is Feller; see the footnote in Section 10.1.
6.3 Proposition We have that $\delta_\emptyset \leq_{st} v \leq_{st} \nu$ for every $v \in I$.

Proof. Let $v \in I$. The first inequality is trivial. Clearly, $v \leq_{st} \mu_0$, since $\mu_0$ is concentrated on the maximal set $\mathbb{Z}^d$. By the monotonicity of the coupling, $v = vS_t \leq_{st} \mu_0S_t = \mu_t$, $t \geq 0$.

Let $t \to \infty$ to obtain that $v \leq_{st} \nu$.□

By Proposition 6.3, there exists a unique invariant measure if and only if $\nu = \delta_\emptyset$. In order to understand when this is so, we deviate briefly to consider a percolation-type question. Suppose we begin the process at a singleton, the origin say, and ask whether the probability of survival for all time is strictly positive. That is, we work with the percolation-type probability

(6.4) $\theta(\lambda, \delta) = P_{\lambda, \delta}(\xi_0^T \cap \mathbb{Z}^d \neq \emptyset)$

where $\xi_0^t = \xi_i^{[0]}$. By a re-scaling of time, we have $\theta(\lambda, \delta) = \theta(\lambda/\delta, 1)$, and we assume henceforth in this section that $\delta = 1$ and write $P_\lambda = P_{\lambda, 1}$.

6.5 Proposition The density of ill vertices under $\nu$ equals $\theta(\lambda)$. That is, $\theta(\lambda) = \nu(\{\sigma \in \Sigma : \sigma_x = 1\})$, $x \in \mathbb{Z}^d$.

Proof. The event $\{\xi_0^T \cap \mathbb{Z}^d \neq \emptyset\}$ is non-increasing in $T$, whence $\theta(\lambda) = \lim_{T \to \infty} P_\lambda(\xi_0^T \cap \mathbb{Z}^d \neq \emptyset)$.

By Proposition 6.1,

$$P_\lambda(\xi_0^T \cap \mathbb{Z}^d \neq \emptyset) = P_\lambda(\xi_0^{\mathbb{Z}^d} = 1),$$

and, by weak convergence,

$$P_\lambda(\xi_0^{\mathbb{Z}^d} = 1) \to \nu(\{\sigma \in \Sigma : \sigma_0 = 1\}).$$

The claim follows by the translation-invariance of $\nu$.□

We define the critical value of the process by

$$\lambda_c = \lambda_c(d) = \sup \{\lambda : \theta(\lambda) = 0\}.$$

The function $\theta(\lambda)$ is non-decreasing, so that

$$\theta(\lambda) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \lambda < \lambda_c, \\ > 0 & \text{if } \lambda > \lambda_c. \end{cases}$$

By Proposition 6.5,

$$\nu = \begin{cases} \delta_\emptyset & \text{if } \lambda < \lambda_c, \\ \neq \delta_\emptyset & \text{if } \lambda > \lambda_c. \end{cases}$$

The case $\lambda = \lambda_c$ is delicate, especially when $d \geq 2$, and it was shown in [42], using a slab argument related to that of the proof of Theorem 5.9, that $\theta(\lambda_c) = 0$ for $d \geq 1$. We arrive at the following characterization of uniqueness of extremal invariant measures.
6.4 The Critical Value

Consider the contact model on \( \mathbb{L}^d \) with \( d \geq 1 \). The set \( I \) of invariant measures comprises a singleton if and only if \( \lambda \leq \lambda_c \). That is, \( I = \{ \delta_{\emptyset} \} \) if and only if \( \lambda \leq \lambda_c \).

There are further consequences of the arguments of [42] of which we mention one. The geometrical constructions of [42] enable a proof of the equivalent for the contact model of Theorem 5.9 (for percolation). This in turn completes the proof, initiated in [95, 99], that the set of extremal invariant measures of the contact model on \( \mathbb{L}^d \) is exactly \( I_e = \{ \delta_{\emptyset}, \nu \} \). See [97] also.

6.4 The Critical Value

This section is devoted to the following theorem.\(^2\) Recall that the rate of cure is taken as \( \delta = 1 \).

6.7 Theorem [165] For \( d \geq 1 \), we have that \( (2d)^{-1} \leq \lambda_c(d) < \infty \).

The lower bound is easily improved to \( \lambda_c(d) \geq (2d - 1)^{-1} \). The upper bound may be refined to \( \lambda_c(d) \leq d^{-1} \lambda_c(1) < \infty \), as indicated in Exercise 6.2. See the accounts of the contact model in the two volumes [206, 208] by Tom Liggett. The asymptotic behaviour of \( \lambda_c(d) \) as \( d \to \infty \) is given by the lace expansion; see [265].

Proof. The lower bound is obtained by a random walk argument which is sketched here.\(^3\) The integer-valued process \( N_t = |\xi_0^t| \) decreases by 1 at rate \( N_t \). It increases by 1 at rate \( \lambda T_t \), where \( T_t \) is the number of edges of \( \mathbb{L}^d \) exactly one of whose endvertices \( x \) satisfies \( \xi_0^t(x) = 1 \). Now, \( T_t \leq 2d N_t \), and so the jump-chain of \( N_t \) is bounded above by a nearest-neighbour random walk \( R = (R_n : n \geq 0) \) on \( \{0, 1, 2, \ldots\} \) with absorption at 0, and which moves to the right with probability

\[
P = \frac{2d \lambda}{1 + 2d \lambda}
\]

at each step. It is elementary that

\[
P(R_n = 0 \text{ for some } n \geq 0) = 1 \quad \text{if} \quad p \leq \frac{1}{2},
\]

and it follows that

\[
\theta(\lambda) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \lambda \leq \frac{1}{2d}.
\]

\(^2\)There are physical reasons to suppose that \( \lambda_c(1) = 1.6494 \ldots \); see the discussion of the so-called reggeon spin model in [123, 206].

\(^3\)The details are left as an exercise.
A point is ‘open’ if there are arrows of infection immediately following, and no point of cure just prior. The open points form a site percolation process on the rotated positive quadrant of the square lattice.

Just as in the case of percolation (Theorem 3.2) the upper bound on $\lambda_c$ requires more work. Since $\mathbb{L}$ may be viewed as a subgraph of $\mathbb{L}^d$, it is elementary that $\lambda_c(d) \leq \lambda_c(1)$. We show by a discretization argument that $\lambda_c(1) < \infty$. Let $\Delta > 0$, and let $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ be such that $m + n$ is even. We shall define independent random variables $X_{m,n}$ taking the values 0 and 1. We declare $X_{m,n} = 1$, and call $(m, n)$ open, if and only if, in the graphical representation of the contact model, the following two events occur:

(a) there is no point of cure in the interval $\{m\} \times (\{n\} - 1\Delta, (n + 1)\Delta)$,

(b) there exist left- and right-pointing arrows of infection from the interval $\{m\} \times (\{n\} \Delta, (n + 1)\Delta)$.

(See Figure 6.2.) It is immediate that the $X_{m,n}$ are independent, and

$$p = p(\Delta) = \mathbb{P}_\lambda(X_{m,n} = 1) = e^{-2\Delta}(1 - e^{-\lambda\Delta})^2.$$  

We choose $\Delta$ to maximize $p(\Delta)$, which is to say that

$$e^{-\lambda\Delta} = \frac{1}{1 + \lambda},$$ and

$$p = \frac{\lambda^2}{(1 + \lambda)^{2 + 2/\lambda}}.$$
Consider the $X_{m,n}$ as giving rise to a directed site percolation model on the first quadrant of a rotated copy of $\mathbb{L}^2$. It can be seen that $\xi^0_{n \lambda} \supseteq B_n$, where $B_n$ is the set of vertices of the form $(m, n)$ that are reached from $(0, 0)$ along open paths of the percolation process. Now,

$$\mathbb{P}_\lambda(|B_n| \geq 1 \text{ for all } n \geq 0) > 0 \quad \text{if} \quad p > p_c^\text{site},$$

where $p_c^\text{site}$ is the critical probability of the percolation model. By (6.8),

$$\theta(\lambda) > 0 \quad \text{if} \quad \frac{\lambda^2}{(1 + \lambda)^{2+2/\lambda}} > p_c^\text{site}.$$

Since $p_c^\text{site} < 1$, the final inequality is valid for sufficiently large $\lambda$, and we deduce that $\lambda_c(1) < \infty$. \qed

### 6.5 The Contact Model on a Tree

Let $d \geq 2$ and let $T_d$ be the homogeneous (infinite) labelled tree in which every vertex has degree $d + 1$, as illustrated in Figure 6.3. We identify a distinguished vertex, called the origin and denoted $0$. Let $\xi = (\xi_t : t \geq 0)$ be a contact model on $T_d$ with infection rate $\lambda$ and initial state $\xi_0 = \{0\}$, and take $\delta = 1$.

With

$$\theta(\lambda) = \mathbb{P}_\lambda(\xi_t \neq \emptyset \text{ for all } t),$$

Exercise.
the process is said to die out if $\theta(\lambda) = 0$, and to survive if $\theta(\lambda) > 0$. It is said to survive strongly if

$$P_\lambda (\xi_t(0) = 1 \text{ for unbounded times } t) > 0,$$

and to survive weakly if it survives but does not survive strongly. A process that survives weakly has the property that (with strictly positive probability) the illness exists for all time, but that (almost surely) there is a final time at which any given vertex is infected. It can be shown that weak survival never occurs on a lattice $\mathbb{Z}^d$; see [208]. The picture is quite different on a tree.

The properties of survival and strong survival are evidently non-decreasing in $\lambda$, whence there exist values $\lambda_c, \lambda_{ss}$ satisfying $\lambda_c \leq \lambda_{ss}$ such that the process:

- dies out if $\lambda < \lambda_c$,
- survives weakly if $\lambda_c < \lambda < \lambda_{ss}$,
- survives strongly if $\lambda > \lambda_{ss}$.

When is it the case that $\lambda_c < \lambda_{ss}$? The next theorem indicates that this occurs on $T_d$ if $d \geq 6$. It was further proved in [238] that strict inequality holds whenever $d \geq 3$, and this was extended in [207] to $d \geq 2$. See [208, Chap. I.4] and the references therein. Since $T_d$ contains a copy of $L$, we have that $\lambda_{ss} < \infty$.

6.9 Theorem [238] For the contact model on the tree $T_d$ with $d \geq 2$,

$$\frac{1}{d+1} \leq \lambda_c \leq \frac{1}{d-1}, \quad \frac{1}{2\sqrt{d}} \leq \lambda_{ss} < \infty.$$

Proof. The lower bound for $\lambda_c$ is proved as in Theorem 6.7, and we turn to the upper bound. Let $\rho \in (0, 1)$, and $v_\rho(A) = \rho^{|A|}$ for any finite subset $A$ of the vertex-set $V$ of $T_d$. We shall observe the process $v_\rho(\xi_t)$. Let $g^A(t) = E^A_\rho(v_\rho(\xi_t))$. It is an easy calculation that

$$g^A(t) = |A|t \left( \frac{v_\rho(A)}{\rho} \right) + \lambda N_{A}t(\rho v_\rho(A)) + (1 - |A|t - \lambda N_{A})v_\rho(A) + o(t),$$

as $t \downarrow 0$, where

$$N_{A} = |\{(x, y) : x \in A, y \notin A\}|$$

is the number of edges of $T_d$ with exactly one endvertex in $A$. Now,

$$N_{A} \geq (d+1)|A| - 2(|A| - 1),$$

where $|A|$ is the number of vertices of $A$.
since there are no more than $|A| - 1$ edges having both endvertices in $A$. By (6.10),

$$
\left. \frac{d}{dt} g^A(t) \right|_{t=0} = (1 - \rho) \left( \frac{|A|}{\rho} - \lambda N_A \right) \nu(A)
\leq (1 - \rho) \nu(A) \left[ \frac{|A|}{\rho} (1 - \lambda \rho (d - 1)) - 2 \lambda \right]
\leq -2 \lambda (1 - \rho) \nu(A) \leq 0,
$$

whenever

$$\lambda \rho (d - 1) \geq 1.
$$

Assume that (6.13) holds. By (6.12) and the Markov property,

$$
\frac{d}{du} g^A(u) = \mathbb{E}_\nu^A \left( \frac{d}{dt} g^\xi(t) \bigg|_{t=0} \right) \leq 0,
$$

implying that $g^A(u)$ is non-increasing in $u$.

With $A = \{0\}$, we have that $g(0) = \rho < 1$, and therefore

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} g(t) \leq \rho.
$$

On the other hand, if the process dies out, then (almost surely) $\xi_t = \emptyset$ for all large $t$, so that, by the bounded convergence theorem, $g(t) \to 1$ as $t \to \infty$. From this contradiction, we deduce that the process survives whenever there exists $\rho \in (0, 1)$ such that (6.13) holds. Therefore, $(d - 1) \lambda_c \leq 1$.

Turning to the lower bound, let $\rho \in (0, 1)$ once again. We draw the tree in the manner of Figure 6.4, and we let $l(x)$ be the generation number of the vertex $x$ relative to 0 in this representation. For a finite subset $A$ of $V$, let

$$w_\rho(A) = \sum_{x \in A} \rho^{l(x)},
$$

with the convention that an empty summation equals 0.

As in (6.12), $h^A(t) = \mathbb{E}_\nu^A (w_\rho(\xi_t))$ satisfies

$$
\left. \frac{d}{dt} h^A(t) \right|_{t=0} = \sum_{x \in A} \left( -\rho^{l(x)} + \lambda \sum_{y \in V; y \sim x, y \not\in A} \rho^{l(y)} \right)
\leq -w_\rho(A) + \lambda \sum_{x \in A} \rho^{l(x)} (d\rho + \rho^{-1})
= (\lambda d\rho + \lambda \rho^{-1} - 1) w_\rho(A).
$$

Let

$$\rho = \frac{1}{\sqrt{d}}, \quad \lambda < \frac{1}{2\sqrt{d}}.
$$
so that \( \lambda d \rho + \lambda \rho^{-1} - 1 < 0 \). By (6.15) and time-homogeneity, \( w_\rho(\xi_t) \) is a positive supermartingale. By the martingale convergence theorem, the limit \( M = \lim_{t \to \infty} w_\rho(\xi_t) \) exists \( \mathbb{P}_\lambda^A \)-almost surely. See [148, Sect. 12.3] for an account of the convergence of martingales.

On the event \( I = \{ \xi_t(0) = 1 \text{ for unbounded times } t \} \), the process \( w_\rho(\xi_t) \) changes its value (almost surely) by \( \rho^0 = 1 \) on an unbounded set of times \( t \), in contradiction of (6.17). Therefore, \( \mathbb{P}_\lambda^A(I) = 0 \), and the process does not survive strongly under (6.16). The theorem is proved.

\[ \square \]

### 6.6 Space–Time Percolation

The percolation models of Chapters 2 and 5 are discrete in that they inhabit a discrete graph \( G = (V, E) \). There are a variety of continuum models of interest (see [131] for a summary), of which we distinguish the continuum model on \( V \times \mathbb{R} \). We can consider this as a contact model with undirected time. We will encounter the related continuum random-cluster model in Chapter 9, together with its application to the quantum Ising model.

Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph. The percolation model of this section inhabits the space \( V \times \mathbb{R} \), which we refer to as space–time, and we consider \( V \times \mathbb{R} \) as obtained by attaching a ‘time-line’ \(( -\infty, \infty )\) to each vertex \( x \in V \).
Let $\lambda, \delta \in (0, \infty)$. The continuum percolation model on $V \times \mathbb{R}$ is constructed via processes of 'cuts' and 'bridges' as follows. For each $x \in V$, we select a Poisson process $D_x$ of points in $\{x\} \times \mathbb{R}$ with intensity $\delta$; the processes $\{D_x : x \in V\}$ are independent, and the points in the $D_x$ are termed 'cuts'. For each $e = (x, y) \in E$, we select a Poisson process $B_e$ of points in $\{e\} \times \mathbb{R}$ with intensity $\lambda$; the processes $\{B_e : e \in E\}$ are independent of each other and of the $D_x$. Let $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda, \delta}$ denote the probability measure associated with the family of such Poisson processes indexed by $V \cup E$.

For each $e = (x, y) \in E$ and $(e, t) \in B_e$, we think of $(e, t)$ as an edge joining the endpoints $(x, t)$ and $(y, t)$, and we refer to this edge as a 'bridge'. For $(x, s), (y, t) \in V \times \mathbb{R}$, we write $(x, s) \leftrightarrow (y, t)$ if there exists a path $\pi$ with endpoints $(x, s), (y, t)$ such that: $\pi$ is a union of cut-free sub-intervals of $V \times \mathbb{R}$ and bridges. For $\Lambda, \Delta \subseteq V \times \mathbb{R}$, we write $\Lambda \leftrightarrow \Delta$ if there exist $a \in \Lambda$ and $b \in \Delta$ such that $a \leftrightarrow b$.

For $(x, s) \in V \times \mathbb{R}$, let $C_{x,s}$ be the set of all points $(y, t)$ such that $(x, s) \leftrightarrow (y, t)$. The clusters $C_{x,s}$ were studied in [43], where the case $G = \mathbb{Z}^d$ was considered in some detail. Let 0 denote the origin $(0,0) \in \mathbb{Z}^d \times \mathbb{R}$, and let $C = C_0$ denote the cluster at the origin. Noting that $C$ is a union of line segments, we write $|C|$ for its Lebesgue measure. The radius $\text{rad}(C)$ of $C$ is given by

$$\text{rad}(C) = \sup \{ \|x\| + |t| : (x,t) \in C \},$$

where $\|x\| = \sup |x_i|$ denotes the supremum norm on $\mathbb{Z}^d$.

The critical point of the process is defined by

$$\lambda_c(\delta) = \sup \{ \lambda : \theta(\lambda, \delta) = 0 \},$$

where

$$\theta(\lambda, \delta) = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda, \delta}(|C| = \infty).$$

It is immediate by re-scaling time that $\theta(\lambda, \delta) = \theta(\lambda/\delta, 1)$, and we shall use the abbreviations $\lambda_c = \lambda_c(1)$ and $\theta(\lambda) = \theta(\lambda, 1)$.

**6.18 Theorem [43]** Let $G = \mathbb{L}^d$ where $d \geq 1$, and consider continuum percolation on $\mathbb{L}^d \times \mathbb{R}$.

(a) Let $\lambda, \delta \in (0, \infty)$. There exist $\gamma, \nu$ satisfying $\gamma, \nu > 0$ for $\lambda/\delta < \lambda_c$ such that

$$\mathbb{P}_{\lambda, \delta}(|C| \geq k) \leq e^{-\gamma k}, \quad k > 0,$$

$$\mathbb{P}_{\lambda, \delta}(\text{rad}(C) \geq k) \leq e^{-\nu k}, \quad k > 0.$$

(b) When $d = 1$, $\lambda_c = 1$ and $\theta(\lambda_c) = 0$. 
There is a natural duality in $1 + 1$ dimensions (that is, when the underlying graph is the line $L$), and it is easily seen in this case that the process is self-dual when $\lambda = \delta$. Part (b) identifies this self-dual point as the critical point. For general $d \geq 1$, the continuum percolation model on $L^d \times \mathbb{R}$ has exponential decay of connectivity when $\lambda / \delta < \lambda_c$. The proof, which is omitted, uses an adaptation to the continuum of the methods used for $L^{d+1}$.

Theorem 6.18 will be useful for the study of the quantum Ising model in Section 9.4.

There has been considerable interest in the behaviour of the continuum percolation model on a graph $G$ when the environment is itself chosen at random, that is, when we take the $\lambda = \lambda_x$ and $\delta = \delta_x$ to be random variables. More precisely, suppose that the Poisson process of cuts at a vertex $x \in V$ has some intensity $\delta_x$, and that of bridges parallel to the edge $e = (x, y) \in E$ has some intensity $\lambda_e$. Suppose further that the $\delta_x, x \in V$, are independent, identically distributed random variables, and the $\lambda_e, e \in E$ also. Write $\Delta$ and $\Lambda$ for independent random variables having the respective distributions, and $P$ for the probability measure governing the environment. [As before, $P_{\lambda, \delta}$ denotes the measure associated with the percolation model in the given environment. The above use of the letters $\Delta$, $\Lambda$ to denote random variables is temporary only in this volume.] The problem of understanding the behaviour of the system is now much harder, because of the fluctuations in the intensities about $G$.

If there exist $\lambda', \delta' \in (0, \infty)$ such that $\lambda' / \delta' < \lambda_c$ and

$$P(\Lambda \leq \lambda') = P(\Delta \geq \delta') = 1,$$

then the process is almost surely dominated by the subcritical percolation process with parameters $\lambda', \delta'$, whence there is (almost surely) exponential decay in the sense of Theorem 6.18(a). This can fail in an interesting way if there is no such almost-sure domination, in that (under certain conditions) we can prove exponential decay in the space direction but only a weaker decay in the time direction. The problem arises since there will generally exist regions of space that are favourable to the existence of large clusters, and other regions that are unfavourable. In a favourable region, there may be unnaturally long connections between two points with similar values for their time coordinates.

For $(x, s), (y, t) \in \mathbb{Z}^d \times \mathbb{R}$ and $q \geq 1$, we define

$$\delta_q(x, s; y, t) = \max\{\|x - y\|, \log(1 + |s - t|)^q\}.$$
6.19 Theorem [189, 190] Let $G = \mathbb{L}^d$, where $d \geq 1$. Suppose that

$$K = \max \left\{ P\left( \left[ \log(1 + \Lambda) \right]^\beta \right), P\left( \left[ \log(1 + \Delta^{-1}) \right]^\beta \right) \right\} < \infty$$

for some $\beta > 2d^2 (1 + \sqrt{1 + d^{-1}} + (2d)^{-1})$. There exists $Q = Q(d, \beta) > 1$ such that the following holds. For $q \in [1, Q)$ and $m > 0$, there exists $\epsilon = \epsilon(d, \beta, K, m, q) > 0$ and $\eta = \eta(d, \beta, q) > 0$ such that: if

$$P\left( \left[ \log(1 + (\Lambda/\Delta)) \right]^\beta \right) < \epsilon,$$

there exist identically distributed random variables $D_x \in L^\eta(P)$, $x \in \mathbb{Z}^d$, such that

$$P_{\lambda, \delta}\left( (x, s) \leftrightarrow (y, t) \right) \leq \exp\left[ -m\delta_q(x, s; y, t) \right]$$

if $\delta_q(x, s; y, t) \geq D_x$, for $(x, s), (y, t) \in \mathbb{Z}^d \times \mathbb{R}$.

This version of the theorem of Klein can be found with explanation in [145]. It is proved by a so-called multiscale analysis.

The contact process also may inhabit a random environment in which the infection rates $\lambda_x$ and cure rates $\delta_x$ are independent random variables. Very much the same questions may be posed as for disordered percolation. There is in addition a variety of models in physics and applied probability for which the natural random environment is exactly of the above type. A brief survey of directed models with long-range dependency may be found with references in [132].

6.7 Exercises

6.1 Find $\alpha < 1$ such that the critical probability of oriented site percolation on $\mathbb{L}^2$ satisfies $\overline{P}_c^{\text{site}} \leq \alpha$.

6.2 Let $d \geq 2$, and let $\Pi : \mathbb{Z}^d \to \mathbb{Z}$ be given by

$$\Pi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_d) = \sum_{i=1}^d x_i.$$

Let $(A_t : t \geq 0)$ denote a contact process on $\mathbb{Z}^d$ with parameter $\lambda$ and starting at the origin. Show that $A$ may be coupled with a contact process $C$ on $\mathbb{Z}$ with parameter $\lambda d$ and starting at the origin, in such a way that $\Pi(A_t) \geq C_t$ for all $t$.

Deduce that the critical point $\lambda_c(d)$ of the contact model on $\mathbb{L}^d$ satisfies $\lambda_c(d) \leq d^{-1}\lambda_c(1)$.

6.3 [43] Consider unoriented space–time percolation on $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{R}$, with bridges at rate $\lambda$ and cuts at rate $\delta$. By adapting the corresponding argument for bond percolation on $\mathbb{L}^2$, or otherwise, show that the percolation probability $\theta(\lambda, \delta)$ satisfies $\theta(\lambda, \lambda) = 0$ for $\lambda > 0$. 
Gibbs States

A positive probability measure on a finite product may be decomposed into factors indexed by the cliques of its dependency graph. Closely related to this is the well known fact that a positive measure is a spatial Markov field on a graph $G$ if and only if it is a Gibbs state. The Ising and Potts models are introduced, and the $n$-vector model is mentioned.

7.1 Dependency Graphs

Let $X = (X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_n)$ be a family of random variables on a given probability space. For $i, j \in V = \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$ with $i \neq j$, we write $i \perp j$ if: conditional on $(X_k : k \neq i, j)$, the random variables $X_i$ and $X_j$ are independent. The relation $\perp$ is thus symmetric, and it gives rise to a graph $G$ with vertex-set $V$ and edge-set $E = \{(i, j) : i \not\perp j\}$, called the dependency graph of $X$ (or of its law). We shall see that the law of $X$ may be expressed as a product over terms corresponding to complete subgraphs of $G$.

A complete subgraph of $G$ is called a clique, and we write $\mathcal{K}$ for the set of all cliques of $G$. For notational simplicity later, we designate the empty subset of $V$ as a clique, and thus $\emptyset \in \mathcal{K}$. A clique is maximal if no strict superset is a clique, and we write $\mathcal{M}$ for the set of maximal cliques of $G$.

We assume for simplicity that the $X_i$ take values in some countable subset $S$ of the reals $\mathbb{R}$. The law of $X$ gives rise to a probability mass function $\pi$ on $S^n$ given by

$$\pi(x) = P(X_i = x_i \text{ for } i \in V), \quad x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) \in S^n.$$ 

It is easily seen by the definition of independence that $i \perp j$ if and only if $\pi$ may be factorized in the form

$$\pi(x) = g(x_i, U)h(x_j, U), \quad x \in S^n,$$

for some functions $g$ and $h$, where $U = (x_k : k \neq i, j)$. For $K \in \mathcal{K}$ and $x \in S^n$, we write $x_K = (x_i : i \in K)$. We call $\pi$ positive if $\pi(x) > 0$ for all $x \in S^n$. 
7.1 Dependency Graphs

Here is the main result of the section.

7.2 Theorem Let $\pi$ be a positive probability mass function on $S^n$. There exist functions $f_K : S^K \to [0, \infty)$, $K \in \mathcal{M}$, such that

$$\pi(x) = \prod_{K \in \mathcal{M}} f_K(x_K), \quad x \in S^n. \tag{7.3}$$

In the simplest non-trivial example, let us assume that $i \perp j$ whenever $|i - j| \geq 2$. The maximal cliques of the dependency graph are the pairs $\{i, i+1\}$, and the mass function $\pi$ may be expressed in the form

$$\pi(x) = \prod_{i=1}^{n-1} f_i(x_i, x_{i+1}), \quad x \in S^n,$$

so that $X$ is a Markov chain, whatever the direction of time.

Proof. Let $i, j \in V, i \neq j$. A representation of $\pi$ in the form

$$\pi(x) = \prod_r F_r(x) \tag{7.4}$$

is said to separate the pair $(i, j)$ if every $F_r$ is a constant function of either $x_i$ or $x_j$, that is, no $F_r$ depends non-trivially on both $x_i$ and $x_j$.

Brook’s lemma, which follows, is an elementary result about conditional probabilities. The proof is given after the current proof.

7.5 Lemma [61] Let $\mathcal{P} = \{(i, j) \in V^2 : i \perp j, i \neq j\}$. There exists a representation of the form (7.4) that separates every pair $(i, j) \in \mathcal{P}$.

Let (7.4) be a representation of $\pi$ that separates every element of $\mathcal{P}$. For each $r$, there exists a clique $K_r$ such that $F_r$ is a function of the vector $x_{K_r} = (x_k : k \in K_r)$ only. Therefore, there exist $G_K, K \in \mathcal{K}$ such that

$$\pi(x) = \prod_{K \in \mathcal{K}} G_K(x_K).$$

The theorem follows by associating to each $K \in \mathcal{K}$ a maximal clique containing $K$. \hfill $\square$

Proof of Lemma 7.5. Let $(i, j) \in \mathcal{P}$, and suppose (7.4) is a representation that does not separate the pair $(i, j)$. We claim that there exists a representation that separates the pair $(i, j)$ in addition to any member of $\mathcal{P}$ already separated by (7.4). The lemma follows by iteration, starting from the identity representation.
Since \( i \perp j \), \( \pi \) may be expressed in the form (7.1) for some \( g, h \), where \( U = (x_k : k \neq i, j) \). Fix \( s \in S \), and write \( H|_k \) for the function \( H(x) \) evaluated with \( x_k = s \). Thus, \( H|_k \) requires \( x_i = x_j = s \). Evidently,

(7.6) \[ \pi(x) = \pi(x)|_j \frac{\pi(x)}{\pi(x)|_j}. \]

By (7.1), the ratio

\[ \frac{\pi(x)}{\pi(x)|_j} = \frac{h(x_j, U)}{h(s, U)} \]

is independent of \( x_i \), so that

\[ \frac{\pi(x)}{\pi(x)|_j} = \prod_r F_r(x)|_{i,j}. \]

By (7.6),

\[ \pi(x) = \left( \prod_r F_r(x)|_{i,j} \right) \left( \prod_r F_r(x)|_{i,j} \right), \]

which is the required representation. \( \Box \)

### 7.2 Markov and Gibbs Random Fields

Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph, taken for simplicity to be without loops or multiple edges. Within statistics and statistical mechanics there has been a great deal of interest in probability measures having a type of 'spatial Markov property' given in terms of the neighbour relation of \( G \). We shall restrict ourselves here to measures on the sample space \( \Sigma_1 = \{0, 1\}^V \), while noting that the following results may be extended without material difficulty to a larger product \( \Sigma^V \), where \( S \) is finite or countably infinite.

The vector \( \sigma \in \Sigma \) may be placed in one–one correspondence with the subset \( \eta(\sigma) = \{v \in V : \sigma_v = 1\} \) of \( V \), and we shall use this correspondence freely. For any \( W \subseteq V \), we define the external boundary

\[ \Delta W = \{v \in V : v \notin W, v \sim w \text{ for some } w \in W\}. \]

For \( s = (s_v : v \in V) \in \Sigma \), we write \( s_W \) for the sub-vector \( (s_w : w \in W) \). We refer to the configuration of vertices in \( W \) as the 'state' of \( W \).

#### 7.7 Definition

A probability measure \( \pi \) on \( \Sigma \) is said to be positive if \( \pi(\sigma) > 0 \) for all \( \sigma \in \Sigma \). It is called a Markov (random) field if it is positive and if: for all \( W \subseteq V \), conditional on the state of \( V \setminus W \), the law
of the state of $W$ depends only on the state of $\Delta W$. That is, $\pi$ satisfies the global Markov property
\begin{equation}
\pi(\sigma_W = s_W \mid \sigma_{V\setminus W} = s_{V\setminus W}) = \pi(\sigma_W = s_W \mid \sigma_{\Delta W} = s_{\Delta W}),
\end{equation}
for all $s \in \Sigma$, and $W \subseteq V$.

The key result about such measures is their representation in terms of a ‘potential function’ $\phi$, in a form known as a Gibbs random field (or sometimes ‘Gibbs state’). Recall the set $\mathcal{K}$ of cliques of the graph $G$, and write $2^V$ for the set of all subsets (or ‘power set’) of $V$.

7.9 Definition A probability measure $\pi$ on $\Sigma$ is called a Gibbs (random) field if there exists a ‘potential’ function $\phi : 2^V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, satisfying $\phi_C = 0$ if $C \notin \mathcal{K}$, such that
\begin{equation}
\pi(B) = \exp\left(\sum_{K \subseteq B} \phi_K\right), \quad B \subseteq V.
\end{equation}

We allow the empty set in the above summation, so that $\log \pi(\emptyset) = \phi_{\emptyset}$.

Condition (7.10) has been chosen for combinatorial simplicity. It is not the physicists’ preferred definition of a Gibbs state. Let us here define a Gibbs state as a probability measure $\pi$ on $\Sigma$ such that there exist functions $f_K : \{0, 1\}^K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $K \in \mathcal{K}$, with
\begin{equation}
\pi(\sigma) = \exp\left(\sum_{K \in \mathcal{K}} f_K(\sigma_K)\right), \quad \sigma \in \Sigma.
\end{equation}

It may be checked that $\pi$ satisfies (7.10) for some $\phi$ whenever it satisfies (7.11). The converse holds also, and is left as Exercise 7.1.

Gibbs fields are thus named after Josiah Willard Gibbs, whose volume [116] made available the foundations of statistical mechanics. A simplistic motivation for the form of (7.10) is as follows. Suppose that each state $\sigma$ has an energy $E_{\sigma}$ and a probability $\pi(\sigma)$. We constrain the average energy $E = \sum_{\sigma} E_{\sigma} \pi(\sigma)$ to be fixed, and we maximize the entropy
\begin{equation}
\eta(\pi) = -\sum_{\sigma \in \Sigma} \pi(\sigma) \log_2 \pi(\sigma).
\end{equation}

With the aid of a Lagrange multiplier $\beta$, we obtain the ‘Gibbs formula’
\[\pi(\sigma) \propto e^{-\beta E_{\sigma}}, \quad \sigma \in \Sigma.\]

The theory of thermodynamics leads to the expression $\beta = 1/(kT)$, where $k$ is Boltzmann’s constant and $T$ is (absolute) temperature. Formula (7.10) arises when the energies $E_{\sigma}$ may be expressed as the sum of the energies of the sub-systems indexed by cliques.
7.12 Theorem A positive probability measure \( \pi \) on \( \Sigma \) is a Markov random field if and only if it is a Gibbs random field. The potential function \( \phi \) corresponding to the Markov field \( \pi \) is given by

\[
\phi_K = \sum_{L \subseteq K} (-1)^{|K \setminus L|} \log \pi(L), \quad K \in \mathcal{K}.
\]

A positive probability measure \( \pi \) is said to have the local Markov property if it satisfies the global property (7.8) for all singleton sets \( W \) and all \( s \in \Sigma \). The global property evidently implies the local property, and it turns out that the two properties are equivalent. For notational convenience, we denote a singleton set \([w]\) as \( w \).

7.13 Proposition Let \( \pi \) be a positive probability measure on \( \Sigma \). The following three statements are equivalent.

(a) \( \pi \) satisfies the global Markov property.
(b) \( \pi \) satisfies the local Markov property.
(c) For all \( A \subseteq V \) and any pair \( u, v \in V \) with \( u \notin A, v \in A \) and \( u \sim v \),

\[
\frac{\pi(A \cup u)}{\pi(A)} = \frac{\pi(A \cup u \setminus v)}{\pi(A \setminus v)}.
\]

Proof. It is trivial that (a) implies (b). Assume (b) holds, and let \( u \notin A, v \in A \), and \( u \sim v \). Applying (7.8) with \( W = \{u\} \) and, for \( w \neq u \), with \( s_w = 1 \) if and only if \( w \in A \), we find that

\[
\frac{\pi(A \cup u)}{\pi(A) + \pi(A \cup u)} = \frac{\pi(A \cap u)}{\pi(A \cup u \setminus v)} = \frac{\pi(A \cap u \setminus v)}{\pi(A \setminus v)}.
\]

Equation (7.15) is equivalent to (7.14), and thus (c) holds. Conversely, the preceding calculation shows that (c) implies (b).

It remains to show that the local property implies the global property. The proof requires a short calculation, and may be done either by Theorem 7.2 or within the proof of Theorem 7.12. We follow the first route here (the second route is taken in the next proof). Assume that \( \pi \) is positive and satisfies the local Markov property. Then \( u \perp \! \! \! \perp v \) for all \( u, v \in V \) with \( u \sim v \).

By Theorem 7.2, there exist functions \( f_K, K \in \mathcal{M} \), such that

\[
\pi(A) = \prod_{K \in \mathcal{M}} f_K(A \cap K), \quad A \subseteq V.
\]
Let \( W \subseteq V \). By (7.16), for \( A \subseteq W \) and \( C \subseteq V \setminus W \),
\[
\pi(\sigma_W = A \mid \sigma_{V \setminus W} = C) = \frac{\prod_{K \in M} f_K((A \cup C) \cap K)}{\sum_{B \subseteq W} \prod_{K \in M} f_K((B \cup C) \cap K)}.
\]
Any clique \( K \) with \( K \cap W = \emptyset \) makes the same contribution \( f_K(C \cap K) \) to both numerator and denominator, and may be cancelled. The remaining cliques are subsets of \( \hat{W} = W \cup \Delta W \), so that
\[
\pi(\sigma_W = A \mid \sigma_{V \setminus W} = C) = \frac{\prod_{K \subseteq \hat{W}, K \subseteq \hat{W} \setminus W} f_K((A \cup C) \cap K)}{\sum_{B \subseteq W} \prod_{K \subseteq \hat{W}, K \subseteq \hat{W} \setminus W} f_K((B \cup C) \cap K)}.
\]
The right side does not depend on \( \sigma_{V \setminus \hat{W}} \), whence
\[
\pi(\sigma_W = A \mid \sigma_{V \setminus W} = C) = \pi(\sigma_W = A \mid \sigma_{\Delta W} = C \cap \Delta W),
\]
as required for the global Markov property. \( \square \)

Proof of Theorem 7.12. Assume first that \( \pi \) is a positive Markov field, and let
\[
(7.17) \quad \phi_C = \sum_{L \subseteq C} (-1)^{|C \setminus L|} \log \pi(L), \quad C \subseteq V.
\]
By the inclusion–exclusion principle,
\[
(7.18) \quad \log \pi(B) = \sum_{C \subseteq B} \phi_C, \quad B \subseteq V,
\]
and we need only show that \( \phi_C = 0 \) for \( C \notin \mathcal{K} \). Suppose \( u, v \in C \) and \( u \sim v \). By (7.17),
\[
\phi_C = \sum_{L \subseteq C \setminus \{u, v\}} (-1)^{|C \setminus L|} \log \left( \frac{\pi(L \cup u \cup v)}{\pi(L \cup v)} \right) \frac{\pi(L \cup u)}{\pi(L)},
\]
which equals zero by the local Markov property and Proposition 7.13. Therefore, \( \pi \) is a Gibbs field with potential function \( \phi \).

Conversely, suppose that \( \pi \) is a Gibbs field with potential function \( \phi \). Evidently, \( \pi \) is positive. Let \( A \subseteq V \), and \( u \notin A, v \in A \) with \( u \sim v \). By (7.18),
\[
\log \left( \frac{\pi(A \cup u)}{\pi(A)} \right) = \sum_{K \subseteq A \cup u, u \in K} \phi_K
\]
\[
= \sum_{K \subseteq A \cup u \setminus v, u \in K} \phi_K \quad \text{since } u \sim v \text{ and } K \in \mathcal{K}
\]
\[
= \log \left( \frac{\pi(A \cup u \setminus v)}{\pi(A \setminus v)} \right).
\]
The claim follows by Proposition 7.13.

We close this section with some notes on the history of the equivalence of Markov and Gibbs random fields. This may be derived from Theorem 7.2, but it is perhaps more informative to prove it directly as above via the inclusion–exclusion principle. It is normally attributed to Hammersley and Clifford, and an account was circulated (with a more complicated formulation and proof) in an unpublished note dating from 1971, [157] (see also [78]). Versions of Theorem 7.12 may be found in the later work of several authors, and the above proof is taken essentially from [124]. The assumption of positivity is important, and complications arise for non-positive measures; see [232] and Exercise 7.2.

For applications of the Gibbs–Markov equivalence in statistics; see, for example, [196].

7.3 Ising and Potts Models

In a famous experiment, a piece of iron is exposed to a magnetic field. The field is increased from zero to a maximum and then diminished to zero. If the temperature is sufficiently low, the iron retains some residual magnetization, otherwise it does not. There is a critical temperature for this phenomenon, often named the Curie point after Pierre Curie, who reported this discovery in his 1895 thesis.¹ The famous (Lenz–)Ising model for such ferromagnetism, [173], may be summarized as follows. Let particles be positioned at the points of some lattice in Euclidean space. Each particle may be in either of two states, representing the physical states `spin-up' and `spin-down'. Spin-values are chosen at random according to a Gibbs state governed by interactions between neighbouring particles, and are given in the following way.

Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph representing part of the lattice. Each vertex \( x \in V \) is considered as being occupied by a particle that has a random spin. Spins are assumed to come in two basic types (`up' and `down'), and thus we take the set \( \Sigma = \{-1, +1\}^V \) as the sample space. The appropriate probability mass function \( \lambda_{\beta, J, h} \) on \( \Sigma \) has three parameters satisfying \( \beta, J \in [0, \infty) \) and \( h \in \mathbb{R} \), and is given by

\[
\lambda_{\beta, J, h}(\sigma) = \frac{1}{Z_t} e^{-\beta H(\sigma)}, \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,
\]

where the ‘Hamiltonian’ \( H : \Sigma \to \mathbb{R} \) and the ‘partition function’ \( Z_t \) are

¹See also [178].
The physical interpretation of $\beta$ is as the reciprocal $1/T$ of absolute temperature, of $J$ as the strength of interaction between neighbours, and of $h$ as the external magnetic field. We shall consider here only the case of zero external field, and we assume henceforth that $h = 0$. Since $J$ is assumed non-negative, the probability $\lambda_{\beta,J,0}(\sigma)$ decreases as $H(\sigma)$ increases. Thus, the measure $\lambda_{\beta,J,0}$ places greater weight on configurations having many neighbour-pairs with like spins, and for this reason it is called ‘ferromagnetic’. The ‘antiferromagnetic’ case $J < 0$ is not considered here.

Each edge has equal interaction strength $J$ in the above formulation. Since $\beta$ and $J$ occur only as a product $\beta J$, the measure $\lambda_{\beta,J,0}$ has effectively only a single parameter $\beta J$. In a more complicated measure, not studied here, different edges $e$ are permitted to have different interaction strengths $J_e$. In the mean time we shall set $J = 1$, and write $\lambda_{\beta} = \lambda_{\beta,1,0}$.

Whereas the Ising model permits only two possible spin-values at each vertex, the so-called (Domb–)Potts model [244] has a general number $q \geq 2$, and is governed by the following probability measure. Let $q$ be an integer satisfying $q \geq 2$, and take as sample space the set of vectors $\Sigma = \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}^V$. Thus each vertex of $G$ may be in any of $q$ states. For an edge $e = (x, y)$ and a configuration $\sigma = (\sigma_x : x \in V) \in \Sigma$, we write $\delta_e(\sigma) = \delta_{\sigma_x,\sigma_y}$, where $\delta_{ij}$ is the Kronecker delta. The relevant probability measure is given by

$$(7.21) \quad \pi_{\beta,q}(\sigma) = \frac{1}{Z_p} e^{-\beta H'(\sigma)}, \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,$$

where $Z_p = Z_p(\beta, q)$ is the appropriate partition function (or normalizing constant) and the Hamiltonian $H'$ is given by

$$(7.22) \quad H'(\sigma) = -\sum_{e=(x,y) \in E} \delta_e(\sigma).$$

In the special case $q = 2$, $\delta_{\sigma_1,\sigma_2} = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \sigma_1 \sigma_2)$, $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in \{-1, +1\}$. It is easy to see in this case that the ensuing Potts model is simply the Ising model with an adjusted value of $\beta$, in that $\pi_{\beta,2}$ is the measure obtained from $\lambda_{\beta/2}$ by relabelling the local states.

We mention one further generalization of the Ising model, namely the so-called $n$-vector or O($n$) model. Let $n \in \{1, 2, \ldots\}$ and let $S^{n-1}$ be the set of
vectors of \( \mathbb{R}^n \) with unit length, that is, the \((n - 1)\)-sphere. A ‘model’ is said to have \( O(n) \) symmetry if its Hamiltonian is invariant under the operation on \( S^{n-1} \) of \( n \times n \) orthonormal matrices. One such model is the \( n \)-vector model on \( G = (V, E) \), with Hamiltonian

\[
H_n(s) = - \sum_{e = \{x, y\} \in E} s_x \cdot s_y, \quad s = (s_v : v \in V) \in (S^{n-1})^V,
\]

where \( s_x \cdot s_y \) denotes the scalar product. When \( n = 1 \), this is simply the Ising model. It is called the \( X/Y \) model when \( n = 2 \), and the Heisenberg model when \( n = 3 \).

The Ising and Potts models have very rich theories and are amongst the most intensively studied models of statistical mechanics. In ‘classical’ work, they are studied via cluster expansions and correlation inequalities. The so-called ‘random-cluster model’, developed by Fortuin and Kasteleyn around 1960, provides a single framework incorporating the percolation, Ising, and Potts models as well as electrical networks, uniform spanning trees, and forests. It enables a representation of the two-point correlation function of a Potts model as a connection probability of an appropriate model of stochastic geometry, and this in turn allows the use of geometrical techniques already refined in the case of percolation. The random-cluster model is defined and described in Chapter 8; see also [130].

The \( q = 2 \) Potts model is essentially the Ising model, and special features of the number 2 allow a special analysis for the Ising model that is not yet replicated for general Potts models. This method is termed the ‘random-current representation’, and it has been especially fruitful in the study of the phase transition of the Ising model on \( \mathbb{L}^d \). See [3, 7, 10, 11, 93] and [130, Chap. 9].

### 7.4 Exercises

7.1 Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph, and let \( \pi \) be a probability measure on the power set \( \Sigma = \{0, 1\}^V \). A configuration \( \sigma \in \Sigma \) is identified with the subset of \( V \) on which it takes the value 1, that is, with the set \( \eta(\sigma) = \{v \in V : \sigma_v = 1\} \). Show that

\[
\pi(B) = \exp \left( \sum_{K \subseteq B} \phi_K \right), \quad B \subseteq V,
\]

for some function \( \phi \) acting on the set \( \mathcal{K} \) of cliques of \( G \), if and only if

\[
\pi(\sigma) = \exp \left( \sum_{K \in \mathcal{K}} f_K(\sigma_K) \right), \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,
\]

for some functions \( f_K : \{0, 1\}^K \to \mathbb{R} \), with \( K \) ranging over \( \mathcal{K} \). Recall the notation \( \sigma_K = (\sigma_v : v \in K) \).
7.4 Exercises

Figure 7.1 Each vertex of the 4-cycle may be in either of the two states 0 and 1. The marked vertices have state 1, and the unmarked vertices have state 0. Each of the eight configurations shown above has probability \( \frac{1}{8} \), and the other eight configurations have probability 0.

7.2 [232] Investigate the Gibbs–Markov equivalence for probability measures that have zeroes. It may be useful to consider the example illustrated in Figure 7.1. The graph \( G = (V, E) \) is a 4-cycle, and the local state space is \( \{0, 1\} \). Each of the eight configurations shown in the figure has probability \( \frac{1}{8} \), and the other eight configurations have probability 0. Show that this measure \( \mu \) satisfies the local Markov property but cannot be written in the form

\[
\mu(B) = \prod_{K \subseteq B} f(K), \quad B \subseteq V,
\]

for some \( f \) satisfying \( f(K) = 1 \) if \( K \notin \mathcal{K} \), the set of cliques.

7.3 Ising model with external field. Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph, and let \( \lambda \) be the probability measure on \( \Sigma = \{-1, +1\}^V \) satisfying

\[
\lambda(\sigma) \propto \exp \left( h \sum_{v \in V} \sigma_v + \beta \sum_{e = \langle u, v \rangle} \sigma_u \sigma_v \right), \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,
\]

where \( \beta > 0 \). Thinking of \( \Sigma \) as a partially ordered set (where \( \sigma \leq \sigma' \) if and only if \( \sigma_v \leq \sigma'_v \) for all \( v \in V \)), show that:

(a) \( \lambda \) satisfies the FKG lattice condition and hence is positively associated,

(b) for \( v \in V \), \( \lambda(\cdot \mid \sigma_v = -1) \preceq_{\text{st}} \lambda \preceq_{\text{st}} \lambda(\cdot \mid \sigma_v = +1) \).
8

Random-Cluster Model

The basic properties of the model are summarized, and its relationship to the Ising and Potts models described. The phase transition is defined in terms of infinite-volume measures. After an account of a number of areas meriting further research, there are two sections devoted to planar duality and to the value of the critical point on the square lattice. The random-cluster model is linked in more than one way to the study of a random even subgraph of a graph.

8.1 The Random-Cluster, Ising, and Potts Models

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite graph, and write $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$. For $\omega \in \Omega$, we write $\eta(\omega) = \{e \in E : \omega(e) = 1\}$ for the set of open edges, and $k(\omega)$ for the number of connected components, or “open clusters”, of the subgraph $(V, \eta(\omega))$. The random-cluster measure on $\Omega$, with parameters $p \in [0, 1]$, $q \in (0, \infty)$ is the probability measure given by

$$
\phi_{p,q}(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z} \left\{ \prod_{e \in E} p^{\omega(e)}(1 - p)^{1 - \omega(e)} \right\} q^{k(\omega)}, \quad \omega \in \Omega,
$$

where $Z = Z_{G, p, q}$ is the normalizing constant.

This measure was introduced by Fortuin and Kasteleyn in a series of papers dated around 1970. They sought a unification of the theory of electrical networks, percolation, Ising models, and Potts models, and were motivated by the observation that each of these systems satisfies certain series and parallel laws. Percolation is evidently retrieved by setting $q = 1$, and it turns out that electrical networks arise via the uniform spanning tree (UST) limit obtained on taking the limit $p, q \to 0$ in such a way that $q/p \to 0$ (see Section 8.4). The relationship to Ising and Potts models is more complex in that it involves a transformation of measures, to be described next. In brief, the connection probabilities for the random-cluster measure correspond to

\[1\text{It is important to include isolated vertices in this count.}\]
correlations for ferromagnetic Ising and Potts models, and this allows a geometrical interpretation of their correlation structure.

A fuller account of the random-cluster model and its history and associations may be found in [130]. When the emphasis is upon its connection to Ising and Potts models, the random-cluster model is often called the ‘FK representation’.

In the remainder of this section, we summarize the relationship between a Potts model on $G = (V, E)$ with an integer number $q$ of local states, and the random-cluster measure $\phi_{p,q}$. As the configuration space for the Potts model, we take $\Sigma = \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}^V$. Let $F$ be the subset of the product space $\Sigma \times \Omega$ containing all pairs $(\sigma, \omega)$ such that: for every edge $e = (x, y) \in E$, if $\omega(e) = 1$, then $\sigma_x = \sigma_y$. That is, $F$ contains all pairs $(\sigma, \omega)$ such that $\sigma$ is constant on each cluster of $\omega$.

Let $\phi_p = \phi_{p,1}$ be product measure on $\Omega$ with density $p$, and let $\mu$ be the probability measure on $\Sigma \times \Omega$ given by

$$\mu(\sigma, \omega) \propto \phi_p(\omega) 1_F(\sigma, \omega), \quad (\sigma, \omega) \in \Sigma \times \Omega,$$

where $1_F$ is the indicator function of $F$.

Four calculations are now required, in order to determine the two marginal measures of $\mu$ and the two conditional measures. It turns out that the two marginals are exactly the $q$-state Potts measure on $\Sigma$ (with suitable pair-interaction) and the random-cluster measure $\phi_{p,q}$.

**Marginal on $\Sigma$** When we sum $\mu(\sigma, \omega)$ over $\omega \in \Omega$, we have a free choice except that $\omega(e) = 0$ whenever $\sigma_x \neq \sigma_y$. That is, if $\sigma_x = \sigma_y$, there is no constraint on the local state $\omega(e)$ of the edge $e = (x, y)$; the sum for this edge is simply $p + (1 - p) = 1$. We are left with edges $e$ with $\sigma_x \neq \sigma_y$, and therefore

$$\mu(\sigma, \cdot) \overset{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{\omega \in \Omega} \mu(\sigma, \omega) \propto \prod_{e \in E} (1 - p)^{1 - \delta_e(\sigma)},$$

where $\delta_e(\sigma)$ is the Kronecker delta

$$\delta_e(\sigma) = \delta_{\sigma_x, \sigma_y}, \quad e = (x, y) \in E.$$

Otherwise expressed,

$$\mu(\sigma, \cdot) \propto e^{\beta \sum_{e \in E} \delta_e(\sigma)}, \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,$$

where

$$p = 1 - e^{-\beta}.$$

This is the Potts measure $\pi_{\beta,q}$ of (7.21). Note that $\beta \geq 0$, which is to say that the model is ferromagnetic.
Marginal on $\Omega$  For given $\omega$, the constraint on $\sigma$ is that it be constant on open clusters. There are $q^{k(\omega)}$ such spin configurations, and $\mu(\sigma, \omega)$ is constant on this set. Therefore,

$$\mu(\cdot, \omega) := \sum_{\sigma \in \Sigma} \mu(\sigma, \omega) \propto \prod_{e \in E} p^{\omega(e)}(1 - p)^{1 - \omega(e)} q^{k(\omega)} \propto \phi_{p,q}(\omega), \quad \omega \in \Omega.$$ 

This is the random-cluster measure of (8.1).

The conditional measures  It is a routine exercise to verify the following.

(i) Given $\omega$, the conditional measure on $\Sigma$ is obtained by putting (uniformly) random spins on entire clusters of $\omega$ that are constant on given clusters and independent between clusters.

(ii) Given $\sigma$, the conditional measure on $\Omega$ is obtained by setting $\omega(e) = 0$ if $\delta_\sigma(e) = 0$, and otherwise setting $\omega(e) = 1$ with probability $p$ (independently of other edges).

The ‘two-point correlation function’ of the Potts measure $\pi_{\beta, q}$ on $G = (V, E)$ is the function $\tau_{\beta, q}$ given by

$$\tau_{\beta, q}(x, y) = \pi_{\beta, q}(\sigma_x = \sigma_y) - \frac{1}{q}, \quad x, y \in V.$$ 

The ‘two-point connectivity function’ of the random-cluster measure $\phi_{p,q}$ is the probability $\phi_{p,q}(x \leftrightarrow y)$ of an open path from $x$ to $y$. It turns out that these ‘two-point functions’ are (except for a constant factor) the same.

8.6 Theorem [182]  For $q \in \{2, 3, \ldots\}$, $\beta \geq 0$, and $p = 1 - e^{-\beta}$,

$$\tau_{\beta, q}(x, y) = (1 - q^{-1})\phi_{p,q}(x \leftrightarrow y).$$ 

Proof.  We work with the conditional measure $\mu(\sigma | \omega)$ thus:

$$\tau_{\beta, q}(x, y) = \sum_{\sigma, \omega} [1_{\{\sigma_x = \sigma_y\}}(\sigma) - q^{-1}] \mu(\sigma, \omega)$$

$$= \sum_{\omega} \phi_{p,q}(\omega) \sum_{\sigma} \mu(\sigma | \omega)[1_{\{\sigma_x = \sigma_y\}}(\sigma) - q^{-1}]$$

$$= \sum_{\omega} \phi_{p,q}(\omega)[(1 - q^{-1})1_{\{x \leftrightarrow y\}}(\omega) + 0 \times 1_{\{x \leftrightarrow y\}}(\omega)]$$

$$= (1 - q^{-1})\phi_{p,q}(x \leftrightarrow y),$$ 

and the claim is proved.  \[\square\]
8.2 Basic Properties

We list some of the fundamental properties of random-cluster measures in this section.

8.7 Theorem (Positive association) \[110\] The measure $\phi_{p,q}$ satisfies the FKG lattice condition if $q \geq 1$, and is thus positively associated.

Proof. If $p = 0, 1$, the conclusion is obvious. Assume $0 < p < 1$, and check the FKG lattice condition (4.12), which amounts to the assertion that

$$k(\omega \lor \omega') + k(\omega \land \omega') \geq k(\omega) + k(\omega'), \quad \omega, \omega' \in \Omega.$$ 

This is left as a graph-theoretic exercise for the reader. □

8.8 Theorem (Comparison inequalities) \[110\] We have that

$$\phi_{p',q'} \leq_{st} \phi_{p,q} \text{ if } p' \leq p, \quad q' \geq q, \quad q' \geq 1,$$

(8.9)

$$\phi_{p',q'} \geq_{st} \phi_{p,q} \text{ if } \frac{p'}{q'(1-p')} \geq \frac{p}{q(1-p)}, \quad q' \geq q, \quad q' \geq 1.$$ 

(8.10)

Proof. This follows by the Holley inequality, Theorem 4.4, on checking condition (4.5). □

In the next theorem, the role of the graph $G$ is emphasized in the use of the notation $\phi_{G,p,q}$. The graph $G \setminus e$ (respectively, $G.e$) is obtained from $G$ by deleting (respectively, contracting) the edge $e$.

8.11 Theorem \[110\] Let $e \in E$.

(a) Conditional on $\omega(e) = 0$, the measure obtained from $\phi_{G,p,q}$ is $\phi_{G \setminus e, p,q}$.

(b) Conditional on $\omega(e) = 1$, the measure obtained from $\phi_{G,p,q}$ is $\phi_{G.e, p,q}$.

Proof. This is an elementary calculation of conditional probabilities. □

In the majority of the theory of random-cluster measures we assume that $q \geq 1$, since then we may use positive correlations and comparisons. The case $q < 1$ is slightly mysterious. It is easy to check that random-cluster measures do not generally satisfy the FKG lattice condition when $q < 1$, and indeed that they are not positively associated (see Exercise 8.2). It is considered possible, even likely, that $\phi_{p,q}$ satisfies a property of negative association when $q < 1$, and we return to this in Section 8.4.
8.3 Infinite-Volume Limits and Phase Transition

Recall the cubic lattice \( L^d = (\mathbb{Z}^d, E^d) \). We cannot define a random-cluster measure directly on \( L^d \), since it is infinite. There are two possible ways to proceed. Assume \( q \geq 1 \).

Let \( d \geq 2 \) and \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^{\mathbb{Z}^d} \). The appropriate \( \sigma \)-field of \( \Omega \) is the \( \sigma \)-field \( \mathcal{F} \) generated by the finite-dimensional sets. Let \( \Lambda \) be a finite box in \( \mathbb{Z}^d \). For \( b \in \{0, 1\} \), define

\[
\Omega^b_{\Lambda} = \{ \omega \in \Omega : \omega(e) = b \text{ for } e \notin E_{\Lambda}\},
\]

where \( E_{\Lambda} \) is the set of edges of \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) joining pairs of vertices belonging to a set \( A \). Each of the two values of \( b \) corresponds to a certain ‘boundary condition' on \( \Lambda \), and we shall be interested in the effect of these boundary conditions in the infinite-volume limit.

On \( \Omega^b_{\Lambda} \), we define a random-cluster measure \( \phi^b_{\Lambda, p, q} \) as follows. For \( p \in [0, 1] \) and \( q \in (0, \infty) \), let

\[
(8.12) \quad \phi^b_{\Lambda, p, q}(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z^b_{\Lambda, p, q}} \prod_{e \in E_{\Lambda}} p^{\omega(e)}(1 - p)^{1 - \omega(e)} q^{k(\omega, \Lambda)}, \quad \omega \in \Omega^b_{\Lambda},
\]

where \( k(\omega, \Lambda) \) is the number of clusters of \( (\mathbb{Z}^d, \eta(\omega)) \) that intersect \( \Lambda \). Here, as before, \( \eta(\omega) = \{ e \in E^d : \omega(e) = 1 \} \) is the set of open edges. The boundary condition \( b = 0 \) (respectively, \( b = 1 \)) is sometimes termed ‘free’ (respectively, ‘wired’).

8.13 Theorem [125] Let \( q \geq 1 \). The weak limits

\[
\phi^b_{p, q} = \lim_{\Lambda \to \mathbb{Z}^d} \phi^b_{\Lambda, p, q}, \quad b = 0, 1,
\]

exist and are translation-invariant and ergodic.

The infinite-volume limit is called the ‘thermodynamic limit’ in physics.

Proof. Let \( A \) be an increasing cylinder event defined in terms of the edges lying in some finite set \( S \). If \( \Lambda \subseteq \Lambda' \) and \( \Lambda \) includes the ‘base’ \( S \) of the cylinder \( A \),

\[
\phi^1_{\Lambda, p, q}(A) = \phi^1_{\Lambda', p, q}(A \mid \text{all edges in } E_{\Lambda \backslash \Lambda} \text{ are open}) \geq \phi^1_{\Lambda', p, q}(A),
\]

where we have used Theorem 8.11 and the FKG inequality. Therefore, the limit \( \lim_{\Lambda \to \mathbb{Z}^d} \phi^1_{\Lambda, p, q}(A) \) exists by monotonicity. Since \( \mathcal{F} \) is generated by such events \( A \), the weak limit \( \phi^1_{p, q} \) exists. A similar argument is valid with the inequality reversed when \( b = 0 \).
The translation-invariance of the $\phi^b_{p,q}$ holds in very much the same way as in the proof of Theorem 2.11. The proof of ergodicity is deferred to Exercises 8.11 and 8.12.

The measures $\phi^0_{p,q}$ and $\phi^1_{p,q}$ are called \textit{`random-cluster measures'} on $\mathbb{L}^d$ with parameters $p$ and $q$, and they are extremal in the following sense. We may generate ostensibly larger families of infinite-volume random-cluster measures by either of two routes. In the first, we consider measures $\phi^\xi_{\Lambda, p, q}$ on $\mathbb{E}_\Lambda$ with more general boundary conditions $\xi$, thereby constructing the set $\mathcal{W}_{p, q}$ of \textquoteleft weak-limit random-cluster measures'. The second construction uses a type of Dobrushin–Lanford–Ruelle (DLR) formalism rather than weak limits (see [125] and [130, Chap. 4]). That is, we consider measures $\mu$ on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ whose measure on any box $\Lambda$, conditional on the state $\xi$ off $\Lambda$, is the conditional random-cluster measure $\phi^\xi_{\Lambda, p, q}$. Such a $\mu$ is called a \textquoteleft DLR random-cluster measure', and we write $\mathcal{R}_{p, q}$ for the set of DLR measures. The relationship between $\mathcal{W}_{p, q}$ and $\mathcal{R}_{p, q}$ is not fully understood, and we make one remark about this. Any element $\mu$ of the closed convex hull of $\mathcal{W}_{p, q}$ with the so-called \textquoteleft 0/1-infinite-cluster property' (that is, $\mu(I \in \{0, 1\}) = 1$, where $I$ is the number of infinite open clusters) belongs to $\mathcal{R}_{p, q}$; see [130, Sect. 4.4]. The standard way of showing the 0/1-infinite-cluster property is via the Burton–Keane argument used in the proof of Theorem 5.14. We may show, in particular, that $\phi^0_{p, q}, \phi^1_{p, q} \in \mathcal{R}_{p, q}$.

It is not difficult to see that the measures $\phi^0_{p, q}$ and $\phi^1_{p, q}$ are extremal in the sense that

\begin{equation}
\phi^0_{p, q} \leq_{st} \phi_{p, q} \leq_{st} \phi^1_{p, q}, \quad \phi_{p, q} \in \mathcal{W}_{p, q} \cup \mathcal{R}_{p, q},
\end{equation}

whence there exists a unique random-cluster measure (in either of the above senses) if and only if $\phi^0_{p, q} = \phi^1_{p, q}$. It is a general fact that such extremal measures are invariably ergodic; see [115, 130].

A stronger inequality than (8.14) will be useful later when considering more general boundary conditions, namely that

\begin{equation}
\phi^\xi_{\Lambda, p, q}(A) \text{ is non-decreasing in } \xi,
\end{equation}

for $q \geq 1$ and an increasing event $A$.\footnote{See Exercise 8.8.}

Turning to the question of phase transition, and remembering percolation, we define the \textit{percolation probabilities}

\begin{equation}
\theta^b(p, q) = \phi^b_{p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow \infty), \quad b = 0, 1,
\end{equation}

for $q \geq 1$ and an increasing event $A$.\footnote{See Exercise 8.8.}
that is, the probability that 0 belongs to an infinite open cluster. The corresponding critical values are given by

\[
p^b_c(q) = \sup\{p : \theta^b(p, q) = 0\}, \quad b = 0, 1.
\]

Faced possibly with two (or more) distinct critical values, we present the following result.

**8.18 Theorem [9, 125]** Let \( d \geq 2 \) and \( q \geq 1 \). We have that:

(a) \( \phi^0_{p, q} = \phi^1_{p, q} \) if \( \theta^1(p, q) = 0 \),

(b) there exists a countable subset \( \mathcal{D}_{d,q} \) of \([0, 1]\), possibly empty, such that \( \phi^0_{p, q} = \phi^1_{p, q} \) if and only if \( p \notin \mathcal{D}_{d,q} \).

It may be shown\(^3\) that

\[
\theta^1(p, q) = \lim_{\Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d \phi^1_{\Lambda, p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda).
\]

It is not known when the corresponding statement with \( b = 0 \) holds.

**Sketch proof.** The argument for (a) is as follows. Clearly,

\[
\theta^1(p, q) = \lim_{\Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d} \phi^1_{\Lambda, p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda).
\]

\(^3\)Exercise 8.9.
Suppose $\theta^1(p, q) = 0$, and consider a large box $\Lambda$ with 0 in its interior. On building the clusters that intersect the boundary $\partial \Lambda$, with high probability we do not reach 0. That is, with high probability, there exists a 'cut-surface' $S$ between 0 and $\partial \Lambda$ comprising only closed edges (see Figure 8.1). By taking the random set $S$ to be as close as possible to $\partial \Lambda$, the set $S$ is measurable on its exterior, whence the conditional measure on the interior of $S$ is a free random-cluster measure. Passing to the limit as $\Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d$, we find that the free and wired measures are equal.

The argument for (b) is based on a classical method of statistical mechanics using convexity. Let $Z_{G, p, q}$ be the partition function of the random-cluster model on a finite graph $G = (V, E)$, and set

$$Y_{G, p, q} = (1 - p)^{-|E|} Z_{G, p, q} = \sum_{\omega \in \{0, 1\}^E} e^{\pi|\eta(\omega)|} q^{k(\omega)},$$

where $\pi = \log[p/(1 - p)]$. It is easily seen that $\log Y_{G, p, q}$ is a convex function of $\pi$. By a standard method based on the negligibility of the boundary of a large box $\Lambda$ compared with its volume (see [130, Sect. 4.5] for the details), the limit 'pressure function'

$$\Pi(\pi, q) = \lim_{\Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d} \left\{ \frac{1}{|E_{\Lambda}|} \log Y_{\Lambda, p, q}^{\xi} \right\}$$

exists and is independent of the boundary configuration $\xi \in \Omega$. Since $\Pi$ is the limit of convex functions of $\pi$, it is convex and hence differentiable except on some countable set $\mathcal{D}$ of values of $\pi$. Furthermore, for $\pi \notin \mathcal{D}$, the derivative of $|E_{\Lambda}|^{-1} \log Y_{\Lambda, p, q}^{\xi}$ converges to that of $\Pi$. The former derivative may be interpreted in terms of the edge-densities of the measures, and therefore the limits of these edge-densities are independent of $\xi$ for any $\pi$ at which $\Pi(\pi, q)$ is differentiable. The uniqueness of random-cluster measures follows by (8.14) and stochastic ordering: if $\mu_1, \mu_2$ are probability measures on $(\Omega, \mathcal{F})$ with $\mu_1 \leq_{st} \mu_2$ and satisfying

$$\mu_1(e \text{ is open}) = \mu_2(e \text{ is open}), \quad e \in E,$$

then $\mu_1 = \mu_2$. $\square$

By Theorem 8.18, $\theta^0(p, q) = \theta^1(p, q)$ for $p \notin \mathcal{D}_{d, q}$, whence $p_c^0(q) = p_c^1(q)$. Henceforth we refer to the critical value as $p_c = p_c(q)$. It is a basic fact that $p_c(q)$ is non-trivial.

**8.21 Theorem [9]** If $d \geq 2$ and $q \geq 1$, then $0 < p_c(q) < 1$.

It is an open problem to find a satisfactory definition of $p_c(q)$ for $q < 1$, although it may be shown by the comparison inequalities (Theorem 8.8)

$^4$Exercise. Recall Strassen’s Theorem 4.2.
that there is no infinite cluster for \( q \in (0, 1) \) and small \( p \), and conversely there is an infinite cluster for \( q \in (0, 1) \) and large \( p \).

**Proof.** Let \( q \geq 1 \). By Theorem 8.8, \( \phi_{p',1}^{1} \preceq \phi_{p,q}^{1} \preceq \phi_{p,1}^{1} \), where

\[
p' = \frac{p}{p + q(1 - p)}.
\]

We apply this inequality to the increasing event \( \{0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda \} \), and let \( \Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d \) to obtain via (8.19) that

\[
(8.22) \quad p_c(1) \leq p_c(q) \leq \frac{q p_c(1)}{1 + (q - 1) p_c(1)}, \quad q \geq 1,
\]

where \( 0 < p_c(1) < 1 \) by Theorem 3.2. \( \Box \)

The following is an important conjecture.

**8.23 Conjecture** There exists \( Q = Q(d) \) such that:

(a) if \( q < Q(d) \), then \( \theta^1(p_c, q) = 0 \) and \( \mathcal{D}_{d,q} = \varnothing \),

(b) if \( q > Q(d) \), then \( \theta^1(p_c, q) > 0 \) and \( \mathcal{D}_{d,q} = \{p_c\} \).

In the physical vernacular, there is conjectured to exist a critical value of \( q \) below which the phase transition is continuous (‘second order’) and above which it is discontinuous (‘first order’). Following work of Roman Kotecký and Senya Shlosman [191], it was proved in [193] that there is a first-order transition for large \( q \); see [130, Sects 6.4, 7.5]. It is expected that

\[
Q(d) = \begin{cases} 
4 & \text{if } d = 2, \\
2 & \text{if } d \geq 6.
\end{cases}
\]

Following a good deal of earlier discussion (see, for example, [27, 167, 288] and [130, Sect. 6.4]), the statement \( Q(2) = 4 \) was proved in [85, 89].

Finally, we review the relationship between the random-cluster and Potts phase transitions. The ‘order parameter’ of the Potts model is the ‘magnetization’, given by

\[
M(\beta, q) = \lim_{\Lambda \to \mathbb{Z}^d} \left\{ \pi^1_{\Lambda,\beta}(\sigma_0 = 1) - \frac{1}{q} \right\},
\]

where \( \pi^1_{\Lambda,\beta} \) is the Potts measure on \( \Lambda \) ‘with boundary condition 1’. We may think of \( M(\beta, q) \) as a measure of the degree to which the boundary condition ‘1’ is noticed at the origin after the infinite-volume limit has been taken. By an application of Theorem 8.6 to a suitable graph obtained from \( \Lambda \),

\[
\pi^1_{\Lambda,q}(\sigma_0 = 1) - \frac{1}{q} = (1 - q^{-1}) \phi^1_{\Lambda,\beta}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda),
\]
where \( p = 1 - e^{-\beta} \). By (8.19),

\[
M(\beta, q) = (1 - q^{-1}) \lim_{\Lambda \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^d} \phi^1_{\Lambda, p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda) = (1 - q^{-1})\theta^1(p, q).
\]

That is, \( M(\beta, q) \) and \( \theta^1(p, q) \) differ by the factor \( 1 - q^{-1} \).

### 8.4 Open Problems

Many questions remain at least partly unanswered for the random-cluster model with general \( q > 0 \) and \( d \geq 2 \), and we list a few of these here. Further details may be found in [130]. The case of two dimensions is featured in Section 8.5.

I. **The case \( q < 1 \)**

Little is known when \( q < 1 \) owing to the failure of the FKG inequality. A possibly optimistic conjecture is that some version of negative association holds when \( q < 1 \), and this might imply the existence of infinite-volume limits. Possibly the weakest such conjecture is that

\[
\phi_{p,q}(e \text{ and } f \text{ are open}) \leq \phi_{p,q}(e \text{ is open})\phi_{p,q}(f \text{ is open}),
\]

for distinct edges \( e \) and \( f \). It has not been ruled out that \( \phi_{p,q} \) satisfies the stronger BK inequality when \( q < 1 \). Weak limits of \( \phi_{p,q} \) as \( q \downarrow 0 \) have a special combinatorial structure, but even here the full picture has yet to emerge. More specifically, it is not hard to see that

\[
\phi_{p,q} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} 
\text{UCS} & \text{if } p = \frac{1}{2}, \\
\text{UST} & \text{if } p \rightarrow 0 \text{ and } q/p \rightarrow 0, \\
\text{UF} & \text{if } p = q,
\end{cases}
\]

where the acronyms are the uniform connected subgraph, uniform spanning tree, and uniform forest measures encountered in Sections 2.1 and 2.4. See Theorem 2.1 and Conjecture 2.14.

We may use comparison arguments to study infinite-volume random-cluster measures for sufficiently small or large \( p \), but there is no proof of the existence of a unique point of phase transition. The case \( q < 1 \) is of more mathematical than physical interest, although the various limits as \( q \rightarrow 0 \) are relevant to the theory of algorithms and complexity.

Henceforth, we assume \( q \geq 1 \).

II. **Exponential decay**

Prove that

\[
\phi_{p,q}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial[-n, n]^d) \leq e^{-\alpha n}, \quad n \geq 1,
\]
for some $\alpha = \alpha(p, q)$ satisfying $\alpha > 0$ when $p < p_c(q)$. This has been proved for sufficiently small values of $p$, but no proof is known (for general $q$ and any given $d \geq 2$) right up to the critical point.

The case $q = 2$ is special since this corresponds to the Ising model, for which the random-current representation has allowed a rich theory; see [130, Sect. 9.3]. Exponential decay is proved to hold for general $d$ when $q = 2$, and also for sufficiently large $q$ (see IV below).

III. Uniqueness of random-cluster measures

Prove all or part of Conjecture 8.23 for general dimensions $d$. That is, show that $\phi_{p, q}^0 = \phi_{p, q}^1$ for $p \neq p_c(q)$ and, furthermore, that uniqueness holds when $p = p_c(q)$ if and only if $q$ is sufficiently small.

These statements are trivial when $q = 1$, and uniqueness is proved when $q = 2$ using the theory of the Ising model alluded to above; see [10] and [130, Sect. 9.4].

When $q$ is sufficiently large, it is known as in IV below that there is a unique random-cluster measure when $p \neq p_c(q)$ and a multiplicity of such measures when $p = p_c(q)$.

IV. First- or second-order phase transition

Much of the interest in Potts and random-cluster measures is focussed on the fact that the nature of the phase transition depends on whether $q$ is small or large; see for example Conjecture 8.23. For small $q$, the singularity is expected to be continuous and of power type. For large $q$, there is a discontinuity in the order parameter $\theta_1(\cdot, q)$, and a ‘mass gap’ at the critical point (that is, when $p = p_c(q)$, the $\phi_{p, q}^0$-probability of a long path decays exponentially, while the $\phi_{p, q}^1$-probability is bounded away from 0).

Of the possible questions, we ask for a proof of the existence of a value $Q = Q(d)$ separating the second- from the first-order transition.

V. Slab critical point

It was important for supercritical percolation in three and more dimensions to show that percolation in $\mathbb{Z}^d$ implies percolation in a sufficiently fat ‘slab’; see Theorem 5.9. A version of the corresponding problem for the random-cluster model is as follows. Let $q \geq 1$ and $d \geq 3$, and write $S(L, n)$ for the ‘slab’

$$S(L, n) = [0, L-1] \times [-n, n]^{d-1}.$$ 

Let $\psi_{L, n, p, q} = \phi_{S(L, n), p, q}^0$ be the random-cluster measure on $S(L, n)$ with parameters $p, q$, and free boundary conditions. Let $\Pi(p, L)$ denote the property that $\liminf_{n \to \infty} \inf_{x \in S(L, n)} \{\psi_{L, n, p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow x)\} > 0$. 

5This corrects an error in [130].
It is not hard to see that \( \Pi(p, L) \Rightarrow \Pi(p', L') \) if \( p \leq p' \) and \( L \leq L' \), and it is thus natural to define
\[
\hat{p}_c(q, L) = \inf \{ p : \Pi(p, L) \text{ occurs} \}, \quad \hat{p}_c(q) = \lim_{L \to \infty} \hat{p}_c(q, L).
\]
Clearly, \( p_c(q) \leq \hat{p}_c(q) < 1 \). It is believed that equality holds in that \( \hat{p}_c(q) = p_c(q) \), and it is a major open problem to prove this. A positive resolution would have implications for the exponential decay of truncated cluster-sizes and for the existence of a Wulff crystal for all \( p > p_c(q) \) and \( q \geq 1 \). See Figure 5.2 and [67, 68, 69].

VI. Roughening transition While it is believed that there is a unique random-cluster measure except possibly at the critical point, there can exist a multitude of random-cluster-type measures with the striking property of non-translation-invariance. Take a box \( \Lambda_n = [-n, n]^d \) in \( d \geq 3 \) dimensions (the following construction fails in two dimensions). We may think of \( \partial \Lambda_n \) as comprising a northern and southern hemisphere, with the `equator' \( \{ x \in \partial \Lambda_n : x_d = 0 \} \) as interface. Let \( \phi_{n,p,q} \) be the random-cluster measure on \( \Lambda_n \) with a wired boundary condition on the northern and southern hemispheres individually and conditioned on the event \( D_n \) that no open path joins a point of the northern to a point of the southern hemisphere. By the compactness of \( \Omega \), the sequence \( (\phi_{n,p,q} : n \geq 1) \) possesses weak limits. Let \( \phi_{p,q} \) be such a weak limit.

It is a geometrical fact that, in any configuration \( \omega \in D_n \), there exists an interface \( I(\omega) \) separating the points joined to the northern hemisphere from those joined to the southern hemisphere. This interface passes around the equator, and its closest point to the origin is at some distance \( H_n \), say. It may be shown that, for \( q \geq 1 \) and sufficiently large \( p \), the laws of the \( H_n \) are tight, whence the weak limit \( \phi_{p,q} \) is not translation-invariant. Such measures are termed ‘Dobrushin measures’ after their discovery for the Ising model in [81].

There remain two important questions. Firstly, for \( d \geq 3 \) and \( q \geq 1 \), does there exist a value \( \bar{p}(q) \) such that Dobrushin measures exist for \( p > \bar{p}(q) \) and not for \( p < \bar{p}(q) \)? Secondly, for what dimensions \( d \) do Dobrushin measures exist for all \( p > p_c(q) \)? A fuller account may be found in [130, Chap. 7].

8.5 In Two Dimensions Two-dimensional random-cluster models have been studied extensively, both at and away from the critical point. In particular, the value of the criti-

---

\(^6\)Exercise 8.10.
cal point was established rigorously by Beffara and Duminil-Copin [31] for the square, triangular, and hexagonal lattices, whenever $q \geq 1$. We restrict ourselves to the case of the square lattice.

**8.25 Theorem [31]** The random-cluster model on the square lattice $\mathbb{L}^2$ with cluster-weighting factor $q \geq 1$ has critical value

$$p_c(q) = \frac{\sqrt{q}}{1 + \sqrt{q}}.$$ 

The first proof was derived by following the strategy used for percolation; see Section 8.6 below. A further proof may be found in [86, 87].

Random-cluster measures on $\mathbb{L}^2$ have a property of self-duality that generalizes that of bond percolation. (Recall the discussion of duality after equation (3.7).) Whereas the self-dual point for bond percolation on $\mathbb{L}^2$ is $\frac{1}{2}$, it will be explained soon (see (8.30)) that the self-dual point for the random-cluster model with cluster-weighting factor $q$ is

$$p_{sd}(q) := \frac{\sqrt{q}}{1 + \sqrt{q}}.$$ 

The conclusion in Theorem 8.25 was known earlier for certain values of $q$. When $q = 1$, the statement $p_c(1) = \frac{1}{2}$ is the Harris–Kesten theorem for bond percolation. When $q = 2$, it amounts to the well known calculation of the critical temperature of the Ising model. For large $q$, the result was proved in [193, 194]. There is a “proof” in the physics paper [167] for $q \geq 4$, and a recent full proof in [33] for general isoradial graphs under the last condition on $q$. It has been known since [125, 280] that $p_c(q) \geq p_{sd}(q)$.

The proof of Theorem 8.25 may be adapted (see [31]) to the triangular and hexagonal lattices, thus complementing known inequalities of [130, Thm 6.72] for the critical points. It is an open problem to prove the conjectured critical surfaces of inhomogeneous models on $\mathbb{L}^2$, $\mathbb{T}$, and $\mathbb{H}$ for general $q$, although this problem was solved in [33] in the context of isoradial graphs for $q \geq 4$. See [130, Sect. 6.6].

We turn to the duality of the random-cluster model on a planar graph. Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite planar graph and $G_d = (V_d, E_d)$ its dual graph. To each $\omega \in \Omega = \{0, 1\}^E$ there corresponds the dual configuration $\omega_d \in \Omega_d = \{0, 1\}^{E_d}$ given by

$$\omega_d(e_d) = 1 - \omega(e), \quad e \in E.$$ 

7Paper [87] contains the proof of the much more general fact of exponential decay throughout the subcritical phase, for all $d \geq 2$.

8Note that this definition of the dual configuration differs from that used in Chapter 3 for percolation.
By drawing a picture, we may convince ourselves that every face of \((V, \eta(\omega))\) contains a unique component of \((V_d, \eta(\omega_d))\), and therefore the number \(f(\omega)\) of faces (including the infinite face) of \((V, \eta(\omega))\) satisfies

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.27}
f(\omega) = k(\omega_d).
\end{equation}

The random-cluster measure on \(G\) satisfies

\[\phi_{G,p,q}(\omega) \propto \left( \frac{p}{1-p} \right)^{|\eta(\omega)|} q^{k(\omega)}.\]

Using (8.27), Euler’s formula,

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.28}
k(\omega) = |V| - |\eta(\omega)| + f(\omega) - 1,
\end{equation}

and the fact that \(|\eta(\omega)| + |\eta(\omega_d)| = |E|\), we have that

\[\phi_{G,p,q}(\omega) \propto \left( \frac{q(1-p)}{p} \right)^{|\eta(\omega_d)|} q^{k(\omega_d)},\]

which is to say that

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.29}
\phi_{G,p,q}(\omega) = \phi_{G_d,p_d,q}(\omega_d), \quad \omega \in \Omega,
\end{equation}

where

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.30}
\frac{p_d}{1-p_d} = \frac{q(1-p)}{p}.
\end{equation}

The unique fixed point of the mapping \(p \mapsto p_d\) is given by \(p = p_{sd}(q)\), where \(p_{sd}(q)\) is the ‘self-dual point’ of (8.26).

Turning to the square lattice, let \(G = \Lambda = [0, n]^2\), with dual graph \(G_d = \Lambda_d\) obtained from the box \([-1, n]^2 + (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})\) by identifying all boundary vertices. By (8.29),

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.31}
\phi^0_{\Lambda,p,q}(\omega) = \phi^1_{\Lambda_d,p_d,q}(\omega_d)
\end{equation}

for configurations \(\omega\) on \(\Lambda\) (and with a small ‘fix’ on the boundary of \(\Lambda_d\)). Letting \(n \to \infty\), we obtain that

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.32}
\phi^0_{p,q}(A) = \phi^1_{p_d,q}(A_d)
\end{equation}

for all cylinder events \(A\), where \(A_d = \{\omega_d : \omega \in A\}\).

The duality relation (8.32) is useful, especially if \(p = p_d = p_{sd}(q)\). In particular, the proof that \(\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0\) for percolation (see Theorem 5.25) may be adapted via (8.32) to obtain

\begin{equation}
\tag{8.33}
\theta^0(p_{sd}, q) = 0,
\end{equation}
The case $q = 2$ is very special, because it is related to the Ising model, for which there is a rich and exact theory going back to Onsager [235]. As an illustration of this connection in action, we include a proof that the wired random-cluster measure has no infinite cluster at the self-dual point. The corresponding conclusion has been proved recently for $1 \leq q \leq 4$; see [89]. Whereas the $q = 2$ case, following, holds by elementary arguments, the more general case is based on the work of Smirnov [268, 269] on conformal invariance.

8.35 Theorem For $d = 2$, $\theta^4(p_{sd}(2), 2) = 0$.

Proof. Of the several proofs of this statement, we outline the recent simple proof of Werner [283]. Let $q = 2$, and write $\phi^b = \phi^b_{p_{sd}, q}$.

Let $\omega \in \Omega$ be a configuration of the random-cluster model sampled according to $\phi^0$. To each open cluster of $\omega$, we allocate spin $+1$ with probability $\frac{1}{2}$ and $-1$ otherwise. Thus, spins are constant within clusters and independent between clusters. Let $\sigma$ be the resulting spin configuration, and let $\mu^0$ be its law. We do the same with $\omega$ sampled from $\phi^1$, with the difference that any infinite cluster is allocated spin $+1$. It is not hard to see that the resulting measure $\mu^1$ is the infinite-volume Ising measure with boundary condition $+1$.

The spin-space $\Sigma = \{-1, +1\}^{\mathbb{Z}^2}$ is a partially ordered set, and it may be checked, using the Holley inequality and passing to an infinite-volume limit, that

$$ (8.36) \quad \mu^0 \leq_{st} \mu^1. $$

We shall be interested in two notions of connectivity in $\mathbb{Z}^2$, the first of which is the usual one, denoted $\leftrightarrow$. If we add both diagonals to each face of $\mathbb{Z}^2$, we obtain a new graph with the so-called $*$-connectivity relation, denoted $\leftrightarrow_*$. A cycle in this new graph is called a $*$-cycle.

Each spin-vector $\sigma \in \Sigma$ amounts to a partition of $\mathbb{Z}^2$ into maximal clusters with constant spin. A cluster labelled $+1$ (respectively, $-1$) is called a $(+)$-cluster (respectively, $(-)$-cluster). Let $N^+(\sigma)$ (respectively, $N^-(\sigma)$) be the number of infinite $(+)$-clusters (respectively, infinite $(-)$-clusters).

By $(8.33)$, $\phi^0(0 \leftrightarrow \infty) = 0$, whence, by Exercise 8.17, $\mu^0$ is ergodic. We may apply the Burton–Keane argument of Section 5.3 to deduce that

$$ \mu^0(N^+ = 1) = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad \mu^0(N^+ = 0) = 1. $$

This is formalized in [130, Sect. 4.6]; see also Exercise 8.17.

See Exercise 7.3 and Theorem 4.4.
We may now use Zhang’s argument (as in the proof of (8.33) and Theorem 5.25), and the fact that $N^+$ and $N^-$ have the same law, to deduce that

\begin{equation}
(8.37) \mu^0(N^+ = 0) = \mu^0(N^- = 0) = 1.
\end{equation}

Let $A$ be an increasing cylinder event of $\Sigma$ defined in terms of the states of vertices in some box $\Lambda$. By (8.37), there are ($\mu^0$-a.s.) no infinite ($-$)-clusters intersecting $\Lambda$, so that $\Lambda$ lies in the interior of some $*$-cycle, labelled $+1$. Let $\Lambda_n = [-n, n]^2$ with $n$ large, and let $D_n$ be the event that $\Lambda_n$ contains a $*$-cycle labelled $+1$ with $\Lambda$ in its interior. By the above, $\mu^0(D_n) \to 1$ as $n \to \infty$. The event $D_n$ is an increasing subset of $\Sigma$, whence, by (8.36),

$$\mu^1(D_n) \to 1 \quad \text{as } n \to \infty.$$  

On the event $D_n$, we find the ‘outermost’ $*$-cycle $H$ of $\Lambda_n$ labelled $+1$; this cycle may be constructed explicitly via the boundaries of the ($-$)-clusters intersecting $\partial \Lambda_n$. Since $H$ is outermost, the conditional measure of $\mu^1$ (given $D_n$), restricted to $\Lambda$, is stochastically smaller than $\mu^0$. On letting $n \to \infty$, we obtain $\mu^1(A) \leq \mu^0(A)$, which is to say that $\mu^1 \leq_{st} \mu^0$.

By (8.36), $\mu^0 = \mu^1$.

By (8.37), $\mu^1(N^+ = 0) = 1$, so that $\theta^1(p_{sd}(2), 2) = 0$ as claimed. \hfill \Box

Last, but definitely not least, we turn towards the SLE, random-cluster, and Ising models. Stanislav Smirnov has recently proved the convergence of re-scaled boundaries of large clusters of the critical random-cluster model on $\mathbb{L}^2$ to SLE$_{16/3}$. The corresponding critical Ising model has spin-cluster boundaries converging to SLE$_3$. These results are having a major impact on our understanding of the Ising model.

This section ends with an open problem concerning the Ising model on the triangular lattice. Each Ising spin-configuration $\sigma \in \{-1, +1\}^V$ on a graph $G = (V, E)$ gives rise to a subgraph $G^\sigma = (V, E^\sigma)$ of $G$, where

\begin{equation}
(8.38) E^\sigma = \{e = (u, v) \in E : \sigma_u = \sigma_v\}.
\end{equation}

If $G$ is planar, the boundary of any connected component of $G^\sigma$ corresponds to a cycle in the dual graph $G_d$, and the union of all such cycles is a (random) even subgraph of $G_d$; see Section 8.7.

We shall consider the Ising model on the square and triangular lattices, with inverse temperature $\beta$ satisfying $0 \leq \beta \leq \beta_c$, where $\beta_c$ is the critical value. By (8.5),

$$e^{-2\beta_c} = 1 - p_c(2).$$

We begin with the square lattice $\mathbb{L}^2$, for which $p_c(2) = \sqrt{2}/(1 + \sqrt{2})$. When $\beta = 0$, the model amounts to site percolation with density $\frac{1}{2}$. Since
the critical point of this percolation process satisfies $p^\text{site}_c > \frac{1}{2}$, each spin-cluster of the $\beta = 0$ Ising model is subcritical, and in particular has an exponentially decaying tail. More specifically, write $x \leftrightarrow y$ if there exists a path of $L^2$ from $x$ to $y$ with constant spin-value, let

$$S_x = \{ y \in V : x \leftrightarrow y \}$$

be the spin-cluster at $x$, and let $S = S_0$. By the above, there exists $\alpha > 0$ such that

$$\lambda_0(|S| \geq n + 1) \leq e^{-\alpha n}, \quad n \geq 1,$$

where $\lambda_0$ denotes the infinite-volume Ising measure. It is standard (and follows from Theorem 8.18(a)) that there is a unique Gibbs state for the Ising model when $\beta < \beta_c$; see [136, 283] for example.

The exponential decay of (8.39) extends throughout the subcritical phase in the following sense. Yasunari Higuchi [166] proved that

$$\lambda_\beta(|S| \geq n + 1) \leq e^{-\alpha n}, \quad n \geq 1,$$

where $\alpha = \alpha(\beta)$ satisfies $\alpha > 0$ when $\beta < \beta_c$. There is a more recent proof of this (and more) by Rob van den Berg [39, Thm 2.4], using the sharp-threshold theorem, Theorem 4.68. Note that (8.40) implies the weaker (and known) statement that the volumes of clusters of the $q = 2$ random-cluster model on $\mathbb{L}^2$ have exponentially decaying tails.

Inequality (8.40) fails in an interesting manner when the square lattice is replaced by the triangular lattice $T$. Since $p^\text{site}_c(T) = \frac{1}{2}$, the $\beta = 0$ Ising model is critical. In particular, the tail of $|S|$ is of power type and, by Smirnov’s theorem for percolation, the scaling limit of the spin-cluster boundaries is SLE$_6$. Furthermore, the process is, in the following sense, critical for all $\beta \in [0, \beta_c]$. Since there is a unique Gibbs state for $\beta < \beta_c$, $\lambda_\beta$ is invariant under the interchange of spin-values $-1 \leftrightarrow +1$. Let $R_n$ be a rhombus of the lattice with side-lengths $n$ and axes parallel to the horizontal and to one of the diagonal lattice directions, and let $A_n$ be the event that $R_n$ is traversed from left to right by a $+1$ path (that is, a path $\nu$ satisfying $\sigma_y = +1$ for all $y \in \nu$). It is easily seen that the complement of $A_n$ is the event that $R_n$ is crossed from top to bottom by a $-1$ path (see Figure 5.11 for an illustration of the analogous case of bond percolation on the square lattice). Therefore,

$$\lambda_\beta(A_n) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad 0 \leq \beta < \beta_c,$$

Let $S_x$ be the spin-cluster containing $x$ as before, and define

$$\text{rad}(S_x) = \max \{ \delta(x, z) : z \in S_x \},$$
8.6 Proof of the Critical Point in Two Dimensions

where $\delta$ denotes graph-theoretic distance. By (8.41), there exists a vertex $x$ such that $\lambda_\beta(\text{rad}(S_x) \geq n) \geq (2n)^{-1}$. By the translation-invariance of $\lambda_\beta$, $\lambda_\beta(\text{rad}(S) \geq n) \geq \frac{1}{2n}$, $0 \leq \beta < \beta_c$.

In conclusion, the tail of $\text{rad}(S)$ is of power type for all $\beta \in [0, \beta_c)$.

It is believed that the SLE$_6$ cluster-boundary limit 'propagates' from $\beta = 0$ to all values $\beta < \beta_c$. Further evidence for this may be found in [24]. When $\beta = \beta_c$, the corresponding limit is the same as that for the square lattice, namely SLE$_3$; see [77].

8.6 Proof of the Critical Point in Two Dimensions

The main complication in the proof of Theorem 8.25 beyond the case $q = 1$ stems from the interference of boundary conditions in the box-crossing property, and this is where some of the major contributions of [31] are to be found (see also [32]).

Recall the self-dual point $p_{sd}(q)$ of (8.26). The inequality $p_c \geq p_{sd}$ follows from the stronger statement $\theta^0(p_{sd}, q) = 0$ for $q \geq 1$ (see (8.33)). It suffices, therefore, to show that $\theta^1(p) > 0$ for $p > p_{sd}$, since this implies $p_c \leq p_{sd}$. The proof of this follows the classic route for percolation but with two significant twists.

For $a = (a_1, a_2) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$ and $b = (b_1, b_2) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$, the rectangle $R_{a,b}$ is the subgraph induced by the vertices lying inside the rectangle $[a_1, a_2] \times [b_1, b_2]$ of $\mathbb{R}^2$. We shall consider two types of boundary condition on $R_{a,b}$. These affect the counts of clusters, and therefore the corresponding random-cluster measures.

Wired (denoted ‘1’): all vertices in the boundary of the rectangle are identified as a single vertex.

Periodic (denoted ‘per’): each vertex $(a_1, y)$ (respectively, $(x, b_1)$) of the boundary of $R_{a,b}$ is identified with the vertex $(a_2, y)$ (respectively, $(x, b_2)$).

Let $q \geq 1$; henceforth, we suppress reference to the parameter $q$. The random-cluster measure on $\Lambda_m : = [-m, m]^2$ with parameters $p, q$ and boundary condition $b$ is denoted $\Phi_{p,q}^b$. For a rectangle $R$, we write $C_h(R)$ (respectively, $C_v(R)$) for the event that $R$ is crossed horizontally (respectively, vertically) by an open path.

Duality plays a key role in the proof. In harnessing duality, it turns out to be useful to consider crossings not of rectangles with sides parallel to the axes but of rectangles with sides inclined at $\pi/4$ to the axes. Let $R$ be a rectangle in $\mathbb{R}^2$ with sides parallel to the axes and having the origin at one
corner, and let \( \tau : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2 \) be the rotation/dilation given by
\[
\tau(z) = ze^{i\pi/4}\sqrt{2}, \quad z \in \mathbb{C}.
\]
We write \( C_h(\tau R) \) (respectively, \( C_v(\tau R) \)) for the event that there exists an open crossing \( \sigma \) of \( \tau R \) in the north-east direction (respectively, north-west direction). This is illustrated in Figure 8.2.

The main steps in the proof of Theorem 8.25 are collected in the following proposition. We may occasionally use reals where integers are required, but allowance is easily made for this.

**8.42 Proposition** Let \( q \geq 1 \).

(a) There exists \( c = c(q) > 0 \) such that, for \( m > 6k > 0 \),
\[
\phi^\text{per}_{p_{sd},m} \left[ C_h(\tau([0, 3k] \times [0, 2k])) \right] \geq c. \tag{8.43}
\]
(b) Let \( p > p_{sd}(q) \). For \( \alpha > 1 \), there exist \( a, b > 0 \) such that
\[
\phi^\text{per}_{p,2\alpha n} \left[ C_h([0, an] \times [0, n1]) \right] \geq 1 - an^{-b}, \quad n \geq 1. \tag{8.44}
\]
(c) For \( p > p_{sd}(q) \), we have that \( \phi^1_{p,q}(0 \leftrightarrow \infty) > 0 \).

Once part (c) is proved, one deduces \( p_c \leq p_{sd} \), and Theorem 8.25 is proved. Part (a) may be used to show the exponential decay of connection probabilities when \( p < p_{sd} \) (see [31] for the details).

The choice of periodic boundary condition in parts (a) and (b) is significant in that the ensuing measure is translation-invariant on the torus. Since
Figure 8.3  The rectangle $[0, \gamma n] \times [0, n]$ has a horizontal crossing if each diagonal rectangle possesses a long-way crossing. The inclined rectangles may be taken to be of size $\frac{3}{4}n\sqrt{2} \times \frac{1}{2}n\sqrt{2}$.

the measure is invariant also under rotations through $\pi/2$, inequalities (8.43) and (8.44) hold with $C_h$ replaced by $C_v$ and with appropriately sized boxes. The measure $\phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}, m}$ satisfies a more general box-crossing property of the following form.

**8.45 Lemma** Let $\gamma \geq 1$. There exists $c = c(\gamma, q) > 0$ such that

$$\phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}, m}\left[ C_h([0, \gamma n] \times [0, n]) \right] \geq c, \quad m \geq \gamma n. \quad (8.46)$$

**Proof.** This may be deduced from (8.43) using positive association (Theorem 8.7) and path-intersection arguments, in a similar manner to the proof of Theorem 5.23. The necessary construction is illustrated in Figure 8.3. (Note that (8.46) holds for large $n$ by positive association, and for small $n$ since there are only finitely many such cases.) \( \square \)

Since $\phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}, m} \leq_{\text{st}} \phi_{\text{per}, m}^1$, we have by (8.46) that

$$\phi_{\text{per}, m}^1\left[ C_h([0, \gamma n] \times [0, n]) \right] \geq c. \quad (8.47)$$

We let $m \to \infty$ to obtain the infinite-volume inequality

$$\phi_{\text{per}, q}^1\left[ C_h([0, \gamma n] \times [0, n]) \right] \geq c. \quad (8.48)$$

**Proof of Proposition 8.42(a).** We follow [31, 32]. There are two steps: firstly, one uses duality to prove inequalities about crossings of certain regions; secondly, these are used to estimate the probabilities of crossings of rectangles.

The device of using diagonally inclined rectangles was useful in studying the inhomogeneous percolation model on $\mathbb{L}^2$; see for example [127, p. 334]. For ease of illustration, rather than rotating the rectangle we shall rotate the lattice to give Figure 8.4. *In the current proof, we consider this rotated and...*
Figure 8.4 The lattice $L^2$ and its dual, rotated through $\pi/4$. Under a reflection in the vertical line $L$, the primal is mapped to the dual.

Re-scaled square lattice, denoted $L^2_{rot} := \tau^{-1}L^2$. In this rotated universe, a rectangle $[a_1, a_2] \times [b_1, b_2] \subseteq \mathbb{R}^2$ is identified with its intersection with $L^2_{rot}$. Note that the measure $\phi_{per, p, sd, m}$ is obtained by assigning periodic boundary condition to the adapted rectangle $\tau^{-1}([-m, m]^2)$.

Step 1, duality. Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite, connected planar graph embedded in $\mathbb{R}^2$, and let $G_d = (V_d, E_d)$ be its planar dual graph. A configuration $\omega \in \{0, 1\}^E$ induces a configuration $\omega_d \in \{0, 1\}^{E_d}$ by $\omega(e) + \omega_d(e_d) = 1$ (as in Section 8.5).

Overlooking temporarily the issue of boundary condition, the dual graph of a rectangle $[0, k]^2$ in $L^2_{rot}$ is a rectangle in the shifted lattice, and this leads to an aspiration (cf. Lemma 5.22) to find a self-dual measure and a crossing event with probability bounded away from 0 uniformly in $k$. The natural probability measure is $\phi_{per, p, sd, m}$, and the natural event is $C_h([0, k]^2)$. Since this measure is defined on a torus, and tori are not planar, Euler’s formula cannot be applied directly. By a consideration of the homotopy of the torus, one obtains via an amended Euler formula that there exists $c_1 = c_1(q) > 0$ such that

$$\phi_{per, p, sd, m} \left[ C_h([0, k]^2) \right] \geq c_1, \quad 0 < k < m.$$  

(8.49)

We show next an inequality similar to (8.49) but for more general domains (thus implying (8.49) as a special case). Let $\gamma_1, \gamma_2$ be paths as described in the caption of Figure 8.5, and consider the random-cluster measure, denoted $\phi_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}$, on the primal graph within the shaded region $G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2)$ of the figure, with mixed wired/free boundary conditions obtained by identifying all points on $\gamma_1$, and similarly on $\gamma_2$ (these two sets are not wired together as one). For readers who prefer words to pictures: $\gamma_1$ (respectively, $\gamma_2$)
8.6 Proof of the Critical Point in Two Dimensions

is a path on the left (respectively, right) of the line $L$ in the figure, with exactly one endpoint adjacent to $L$; reflection in $L$ is denoted $\rho$; $\gamma_1$ and $\rho \gamma_2$ (and hence $\gamma_2$ and $\rho \gamma_1$ also) do not intersect, and their other endpoints are adjacent in the sense of the figure.

Writing $\{\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2\}$ for the event that there exists an open path in $G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2)$ from $\gamma_1$ to $\gamma_2$, we have by duality that

$$\phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}(\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2) + \phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}(\rho \gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \rho \gamma_2) = 1,$$

where $\phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}$ is the random-cluster measure on the dual of the graph within $G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2)$ and $\leftrightarrow^*$ denotes the existence of an open dual connection. Now, $\phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}$ has a mixed boundary condition in which all vertices of $\rho \gamma_1 \cup \rho \gamma_2$ are identified. Since the number of clusters with this wired boundary condition differs by at most 1 from that in which $\rho \gamma_1$ and $\rho \gamma_2$ are separately wired, the Radon-Nikodym derivative of $\phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}$ with respect to $\rho \phi_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}$ takes values in the interval $[q^{-1}, q]$. Therefore,

$$\phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}(\rho \gamma_1 \leftrightarrow^* \rho \gamma_2) \leq q^2 \phi^*_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}(\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2),$$

which leads via (8.50) to

$$\phi_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}(\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2) \geq \frac{1}{1 + q^2}.\tag{8.51}$$

Step 2, crossing rectangles. We show next how (8.51) may be used to prove Proposition 8.42(a). Let $S = S_1 \cup S_2$, with $S_1 = [0, 2k]^2$ and
Random-Cluster Model

\[ S_2 = [k, 3k] \times [0, 2k], \] as illustrated in Figure 8.6. Let \( A \) be the (increasing) event that \( S_1 \cup S_2 \) contains some open cluster \( C \) which contains both a horizontal crossing of \( S_1 \) and a vertical crossing of \( S_2 \). We claim that

\[ \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}(A) \geq \frac{c_1^2}{2(1 + q^2)}, \quad m > 6k, \]

with \( c_1 \) as in (8.49). The proposition follows from (8.52) since, by positive association and (8.49),

\[ \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[C_h([0, 3k] \times [0, 2k])] \geq \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[A \cap C_h(S_2)] \]
\[ \geq \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}(A) \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[C_h(S_2)] \]
\[ \geq \frac{c_1^2}{2(1 + q^2)}. \]

We prove (8.52) next.

Let \( \ell \) be the line-segment \([k, 2k] \times \{0\}\), and let \( C_\ell^\ell(S_2) \) be the event that there exists an open vertical crossing of \( S_2 \) whose only endpoint on the \( x \)-axis lies in \( \ell \). By a symmetry of the random-cluster model, and by (8.49),

\[ \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[C_\ell^\ell(S_2)] \geq \frac{1}{2} \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[C_\ell(S_2)] \geq \frac{1}{2} c_1. \]

On the event \( C_h(S_1) \) (respectively, \( C_\ell^\ell(S_2) \)) let \( \Gamma_1 \) (respectively, \( \Gamma_2 \)) be the highest (respectively, rightmost) crossing of the required type. The paths \( \Gamma_i \) may be used to construct the large shaded regions of Figure 8.6: \( L \) is a line in whose reflection the primal and dual lattices are interchanged, and the reflections \( \rho \Gamma_i \) of the \( \Gamma_i \) frame a region bounded by subsets \( \gamma_i \) of \( \Gamma_i \) and their reflections \( \rho \gamma_i \). The situation is generally more complicated than the illustration in the figure since the \( \Gamma_i \) can wander around \( S \) (see [31]), but the essential ingredients of the proof are clearest in this illustration.

Let \( I = \{\Gamma_1 \cap \Gamma_2 \neq \emptyset\} \), so that

\[ \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}(A) \geq \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[C_h(S_1) \cap C_\ell^\ell(S_2) \cap I] \]
\[ + \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}[A \cap C_h(S_1) \cap C_\ell^\ell(S_2) \cap \overline{I}]. \]

On the event \( C_h(S_1) \cap C_\ell^\ell(S_2) \cap \overline{I} \), we have

\[ \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}(A \mid \Gamma_1, \Gamma_2) \geq \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}(\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2 \text{ in } G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \mid \Gamma_1, \Gamma_2). \]

Since \( \gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2 \text{ in } G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \) is an increasing event, the right side is no larger if we augment the conditioning with the event that all edges of \( S_1 \) strictly above \( \Gamma_1 \), and those of \( S_2 \) strictly to the right of \( \Gamma_2 \), are closed. It may then be seen that

\[ \phi_{\text{per}}^{\text{per}}(\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2 \text{ in } G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2) \mid \Gamma_1, \Gamma_2) \geq \phi_{\gamma_1, \gamma_2}(\gamma_1 \leftrightarrow \gamma_2). \]
8.6 Proof of the Critical Point in Two Dimensions

Figure 8.6 The path $\Gamma_1$ is the highest crossing of $S_1$, and $\Gamma_2$ is the rightmost crossing of $S_2$ starting in $\ell$. The large shaded regions are framed by the $\Gamma_i$ and their reflections in $L$. This is an illustration of the geometrically simplest situation. Note that there exist more complex situations, depending on the $\Gamma_i$. Further details may be found in [31, 32].

This follows by (8.15), by conditioning on the configuration of $G(\gamma_1, \gamma_2)$. By (8.53), (8.54), (8.51), and positive association,

$$\phi_{\text{per},m}(A) \geq \frac{1}{1+q^2} \phi_{\text{per},m}(c_1(S_1) \cap c_2(S_2)) \geq \frac{c_1^2}{2(1+q^2)},$$

which is (8.52).

We repeat the need for care in deducing (8.55) in general, since the situation can be more complicated than that indicated in Figure 8.6.

Proof of Proposition 8.42(b). We use the box-crossing property (8.46) of the measure $\phi_{\text{per},m}$ together with the sharp threshold Theorem 4.73. Let $T_m$ denote the torus obtained by considering the rectangle $[-m, m]^2$ with periodic boundary conditions. Note that $\psi_p := \phi_{p,m}$ is invariant with respect to the group $\Pi_m$ of translations of $T_m$, and that $\Pi_m$ acts transitively on $T_m$.

Let $m = 2\alpha n$ and $\epsilon = \frac{1}{2} \min\{p_{sd}, 1 - p_{sd}\}$. Let $A$ be the event that there exists some translation in $T_{2\alpha n}$ of $[0, 2\alpha n] \times [0, \frac{1}{2}n]$ that is crossed hori-
zontally by an open path. Since $A$ is $\Pi_{2an}$-invariant, we have by Theorem 4.73 that there exists $c = c(q) > 0$ such that

$$d \frac{d}{dp} \psi_p(A) \geq c \psi_p(A) \left(1 - \psi_p(A)\right) \log N, \quad \epsilon < p < 1 - \epsilon,$$

where the number $N$ of edges of $T_{2an}$ satisfies $N \geq (\alpha n)^2$.

By (8.46), there exists $c_1 > 0$ such that

$$\psi_{psd}(A) \geq \psi_{psd} \left[ C_h \left( [0, 2an] \times [0, \frac{1}{2}n] \right) \right] \geq c_1.$$

Inequality (8.56) may be integrated from $p_{sd}$ to $p > p_{sd}$, subject to (8.57) (as in Exercise 4.11), to obtain that

$$\psi_p(A) \geq 1 - N^{-\eta}, \quad m \geq 1,$$

for some $\eta = \eta(p) > 0$.

The next step is geometrical. For $0 \leq i < 3$ and $0 \leq j < 8\alpha$, let

$$A_{i,j} = C_h \left( (i\alpha n, \frac{1}{2}jn) + [0, \alpha n] \times [0, n] \right),$$

where the translation by $(i\alpha n, \frac{1}{2}jn)$ is interpreted as taking place within the torus $T_{2an}$. It may be seen that $A \subseteq \bigcup_{i,j} A_{i,j}$. Therefore, by positive association (Theorem 8.7),

$$\psi_p(A) = 1 - \psi_p(\overline{A})$$

$$\leq 1 - \psi_p \left( \bigcap_{i,j} A_{i,j} \right)$$

$$= 1 - \left\{ 1 - \psi_p \left[ C_h \left( [0, \alpha n] \times [0, n] \right) \right] \right\}^{24\alpha}.$$

It follows by (8.58) that

$$\psi_p \left[ C_h \left( [0, \alpha n] \times [0, n] \right) \right] \geq 1 - N^{-\eta/(24\alpha)},$$

as required. $\square$

**Proof of Proposition 8.42(c).** Let $p > p_{sd}$, and consider the annulus $A_k = \Lambda_{3k+1} \setminus \Lambda_{3k}$, as illustrated in Figure 8.7. Let $A_k$ be the event that $A_k$ contains an open cycle $C$ with 0 in its inside and in addition there is an open path from $C$ to the boundary $\partial \Lambda_{3k+2}$. We claim that there exist $c, d > 0$, independent of $k$, such that

$$\phi_{p, 16 \times 3k}^i (A_k) \geq 1 - ce^{-dk}, \quad k \geq 1.$$
8.6 Proof of the Critical Point in Two Dimensions

Figure 8.7 If the four inner box-crossings exist, as well as the outermost box-crossing, then the event $A_k$ occurs.

This is proved as follows. The event $A_k$ occurs whenever the two rectangles

$$[-3^{k+1}, -3^k] \times [-3^{k+1}, 3^{k+1}], \quad [3^k, 3^{k+1}] \times [-3^{k+1}, 3^{k+1}]$$

are crossed vertically, and in addition the three rectangles

$$[-3^{k+1}, 3^{k+1}] \times [-3^{k+1}, -3^k], \quad [-3^{k+1}, 3^{k+1}] \times [3^k, 3^{k+1}],
\quad [3^k, 3^{k+2}] \times [-3^k, 3^k]$$

are crossed horizontally. See Figure 8.7. Each of these five rectangles has shorter dimension $2 \times 3^k$ and longer dimension not exceeding $8 \times 3^k$.

By stochastic ordering, positive association (see Theorems 8.7 and 8.8), and Proposition 8.42(b),

$$\phi_{p,16 \times 3^k}(A_k) \geq \left\{ \phi_{p,16 \times 3^k}^{\text{per}} \left[ C_h([0, 8 \times 3^k] \times [0, 2 \times 3^k]) \right] \right\}^5 \geq (1 - a 3^{-bk})^5,$$

for some $a, b > 0$. Inequality (8.59) is proved.

The events $A_k$ have been defined in such a way that, on the event $I_K = \bigcap_{k=K}^{\infty} A_k$, there exists an infinite open cluster. It suffices then to show that $\phi^{(1)}_{p,q}(I_K) > 0$ for large $K$. Now,

$$\phi^{(1)}_{p,q} \left( \bigcap_{k=K}^{m} A_k \right) = \phi^{(1)}_{p,q}(A_m) \prod_{k=K}^{m-1} \phi^{(1)}_{p,q} \left( A_k \bigg| \bigcap_{l=k+1}^{m} A_l \right).$$


Let $\Gamma_k$ be the outermost open cycle around $A_k$, whenever this exists. The conditioning on the right side of (8.60) amounts to the existence of $\Gamma_{k+1}$ together with the event $\{\Gamma_{k+1} \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda_{3k+2}\}$, in addition to some further information, $I$ say, about the configuration outside $\Gamma_{k+1}$. For any appropriate cycle $\gamma$, the event $\{\Gamma_{k+1} = \gamma\} \cap \{\gamma \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda_{3k+2}\}$ is defined in terms of the states of edges in $\gamma$ and outside $\gamma$. On this event, $A_k$ occurs if and only if $A_k(\gamma)$:

\[ A_k(\gamma) \cap \{\gamma \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda_{3k+2}\} \]

is defined in terms of the states of edges in $\gamma$ and outside $\gamma$. The latter event is measurable on the states of edges inside $\gamma$, and the appropriate conditional random-cluster measure is that with wired boundary condition inherited from $\gamma$, denoted $\phi^1_\gamma$. (We have used the fact that the cluster-count inside $\gamma$ is not changed by conditioning on $I$.) Therefore, the term in the product on the right side of (8.60) equals the average over $\gamma$ of

\[ \phi^1_{p,q} \left[ A_k(\gamma) \mid \{\Gamma_{k+1} = \gamma\} \cap \{\gamma \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda_{3k+2}\} \cap I \right] = \phi^1_\gamma(A_k(\gamma)). \]

Let $\Delta = \Lambda_{3k+2}$. Since

\[ \phi^1_{p,16 \times 3^k} \leq \phi^1_{\Delta} \leq \phi^1_\gamma \]

and $A_k = A_k(\Delta) \subseteq A_k(\gamma)$, we have that

\[ \phi^1_\gamma(A_k(\gamma)) \leq \phi^1_{\Delta}(A_k(\Delta)) \leq \phi^1_{p,16 \times 3^k}(A_k). \]

In conclusion,

(8.61)

\[ \phi^1_{p,q} \left( \bigcap_{l=k+1}^m A_l \right) \geq \phi^1_{p,16 \times 3^k}(A_k). \]

By (8.59)–(8.61),

\[ \phi^1_{p,q} \left( \bigcap_{k=K}^m A_k \right) \geq \phi^1_{p,q}(A_m) \prod_{k=K}^{m-1} (1 - c e^{-dk}). \]

By (8.48) and positive association, there exists $c_2 > 0$ such that $\phi^1_{p,q}(A_m) \geq c_2$ for $m \geq 1$. Hence,

\[ \phi^1_{p,q}(I_K) = \lim_{m \to \infty} \phi^1_{p,q} \left( \bigcap_{k=K}^m A_k \right) \geq c_2 \prod_{k=K}^{\infty} (1 - c e^{-dk}), \]

which is strictly positive for large $K$. Therefore $\theta^1(p, q) > 0$, and the theorem is proved. \(\square\)
8.7 Random even graphs

A subset \( F \) of the edge-set of \( G = (V, E) \) is called even if each vertex \( v \in V \) is incident to an even number of elements of \( F \), and we write \( \mathcal{E} \) for the set of even subsets \( F \). The subgraph \( (V, F) \) of \( G \) is even if \( F \) is even. It is standard that every even set \( F \) may be decomposed as an edge-disjoint union of cycles. Let \( p \in [0, 1) \). The random even subgraph of \( G \) with parameter \( p \) is that with law

\[
\eta_p(F) = \frac{1}{Z_e} p^{|F|} (1-p)^{|E\setminus F|}, \quad F \in \mathcal{E},
\]

where

\[
Z_e = \sum_{F \in \mathcal{E}} p^{|F|} (1-p)^{|E\setminus F|}.
\]

When \( p = \frac{1}{2} \), we talk of a uniform random even subgraph.

We may express \( \eta_p \) in the following way. Let \( \phi_p = \phi_{p,1} \) be product measure with density \( p \) on \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^E \). For \( \omega \in \Omega \), let \( \partial \omega \) denote the set of vertices \( v \in V \) that are incident to an odd number of \( \omega \)-open edges. Then

\[
\eta_p(F) = \frac{\phi_p(\omega_F)}{\phi_p(\partial \omega = \emptyset)}, \quad F \in \mathcal{E},
\]

where \( \omega_F \) is the edge-configuration whose open set is \( F \). In other words, \( \phi_p \) describes the random subgraph of \( G \) obtained by randomly and independently deleting each edge with probability \( 1 - p \), and \( \eta_p \) is the law of this random subgraph conditioned on being even.

Let \( \lambda_\beta \) be the Ising measure on a graph \( H \) with inverse temperature \( \beta \geq 0 \), presented in the form

\[
\lambda_\beta(\sigma) = \frac{1}{Z_\lambda} \exp\left( \beta \sum_{e=(u,v) \in E} \sigma_u \sigma_v \right), \quad \sigma = (\sigma_v : v \in V) \in \Sigma,
\]

with \( \Sigma = \{-1, +1\}^V \). See (7.19) and (7.21). A spin configuration \( \sigma \) gives rise to a subgraph \( G^\sigma = (V, E^\sigma) \) of \( G \) with \( E^\sigma \) given in (8.38) as the set of edges whose endpoints have like spin. When \( G \) is planar, the boundary of any connected component of \( G^\sigma \) corresponds to a cycle of the dual graph \( G_d \), and the union of all such cycles is a (random) even subgraph of \( G_d \). A glance at (8.3) informs us that the law of this even graph is \( \eta_r \), where

\[
\frac{r}{1-r} = e^{-2\beta}.
\]

Note that \( r \leq \frac{1}{2} \). Thus, one way of generating a random even subgraph of a planar graph \( G = (V, E) \) with parameter \( r \in [0, \frac{1}{2}] \) is to take the dual of
the graph $G^\sigma$ with $\sigma$ chosen with law (8.63), and with $\beta = \beta(r)$ chosen suitably.

The above recipe may be cast in terms of the random-cluster model on the planar graph $G$. First, we sample $\omega$ according to the random-cluster measure $\phi_{p,q}$ with $p = 1 - e^{-2\beta}$ and $q = 2$. To each open cluster of $\omega$ we allocate a random spin taken uniformly from $\{-1, +1\}$. These spins are constant on clusters and independent between clusters. By the discussion of Section 8.1, the resulting spin-configuration $\sigma$ has law $\lambda_{\beta}$. The spin-clusters may be constructed as follows from $\omega$. Let $C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_c$ be the external boundaries of the open clusters of $\omega$, viewed as cycles of the dual graph, and let $\xi_1, \xi_2, \ldots, \xi_c$ be independent Bernoulli random variables with parameter $\frac{1}{2}$. The sum $\sum_i \xi_i C_i$, with addition interpreted as symmetric difference, has law $\eta_r$.

It turns out that we can generate a random even subgraph of a graph $G$ from the random-cluster model on $G$, for an arbitrary, possibly non-planar, graph $G$. We consider first the uniform case of $\eta_p$ with $p = \frac{1}{2}$.

We identify the family of all spanning subgraphs of $G = (V, E)$ with the family of all subsets of $E$ (the word ‘spanning’ indicates that these subgraphs have the original vertex-set $V$). This family can further be identified with $\Omega = \{0, 1\}^E = \mathbb{Z}_2^E$, and is thus a vector space over $\mathbb{Z}_2$; the operation $+$ of addition is componentwise addition modulo 2, which translates into taking the symmetric difference of edge-sets: $F_1 + F_2 = F_1 \triangle F_2$ for $F_1, F_2 \subseteq E$.

The family $\mathcal{E}$ of even subgraphs of $G$ forms a subspace of the vector space $\mathbb{Z}_2^E$, since $F_1 \triangle F_2$ is even if $F_1$ and $F_2$ are even. In particular, the number of even subgraphs of $G$ equals $2^{c(G)}$, where $c(G) = \dim(\mathcal{E})$. The quantity $c(G)$ is thus the number of independent cycles in $G$, and is known as the cyclomatic number or co-rank of $G$. As is well known,

$$c(G) = |E| - |V| + k(G).$$

Compare (8.28).

**Theorem 8.65** Let $C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_c$ be a maximal set of independent cycles in $G$. Let $\xi_1, \xi_2, \ldots, \xi_c$ be independent Bernoulli random variables with parameter $\frac{1}{2}$. Then $\sum_i \xi_i C_i$ is a uniform random even subgraph of $G$.

**Proof.** Since every linear combination $\sum_i \psi_i C_i, \psi \in \{0, 1\}^c$, is even, and since every even graph may be expressed uniquely in this form, the uniform measure on $\{0, 1\}^c$ generates the uniform measure on $\mathcal{E}$. \hfill $\square$

One standard way of choosing such a set $C_1, C_2, \ldots, C_c$, when $G$ is planar, is given as above by the external boundaries of the finite faces. Another is as follows. Let $(V, F)$ be a spanning subforest of $G$, that is, the
union of a spanning tree from each component of $G$. It is well known, and easy to check, that each edge $e_i \in E \setminus F$ can be completed by edges in $F$ to form a unique cycle $C_i$. These cycles form a basis of $E$. By Theorem 8.65, we may therefore find a random uniform subset of the $C_j$ by choosing a random uniform subset of $E \setminus F$.

We show next how to couple the $q = 2$ random-cluster model and the random even subgraph of $G$. Let $p \in [0, \frac{1}{2}]$, and let $\omega$ be a realization of the random-cluster model on $G$ with parameters $2p$ and $q = 2$. Let $R = (V, \gamma)$ be a uniform random even subgraph of $(V, \eta(\omega))$.

**8.66 Theorem [136]** The graph $R = (V, \gamma)$ is a random even subgraph of $G$ with parameter $p$.

This recipe for random even subgraphs provides a neat method for their simulation, provided that $p \leq \frac{1}{2}$. We may sample from the random-cluster measure by the method of coupling from the past (see [245]), and then sample a uniform random even subgraph from the outcome, as above. If $G$ is itself even, we can further sample from $\eta_p$ for $p > \frac{1}{2}$ by first sampling a subgraph $(V, \tilde{F})$ from $\eta_{1-p}$ and then taking the complement $(V, E \setminus \tilde{F})$, which has distribution $\eta_p$. We may adapt this argument to obtain a method for sampling from $\eta_p$ for $p > \frac{1}{2}$ and general $G$ (see [136] and Exercise 8.19). When $G$ is planar, this amounts to sampling from an antiferromagnetic Ising model on its dual graph.

There is a converse to Theorem 8.66. Take a random even subgraph $(V, F)$ of $G = (V, E)$ with parameter $p \leq \frac{1}{2}$. To each $e \notin F$, we assign an independent random colour, blue with probability $p/(1-p)$ and red otherwise. Let $B$ be obtained from $F$ by adding in all blue edges. It is left as an exercise to show that the graph $(V, B)$ has law $\phi_{2p, 2}$.

**Proof of Theorem 8.66.** Let $g \subseteq E$ be even, and let $\omega$ be a sample configuration of the random-cluster model on $G$. By the above,

$$P(\gamma = g \mid \omega) = \begin{cases} 2^{-c(\omega)} & \text{if } g \subseteq \eta(\omega), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise}, \end{cases}$$

where $c(\omega) = c(V, \eta(\omega))$ is the number of independent cycles in the $\omega$-open subgraph. Therefore,

$$P(\gamma = g) = \sum_{\omega: g \subseteq \eta(\omega)} 2^{-c(\omega)} \phi_{2p, 2}(\omega).$$
Random-Cluster Model

By (8.64),

\[
\mathbb{P}(\gamma = g) \propto \sum_{\omega : \omega \subseteq \eta(\omega)} (2p)^{|\eta(\omega)|} (1 - 2p)^{|E \setminus \eta(\omega)|} 2^{|k(\omega)|/2} 2^{k(\omega) - |\eta(\omega)| - |V + k(\omega)|} 2^{k(\omega)} |\eta(\omega)|^{-1} 2^{k(\omega)} |\eta(\omega)|^{-1} E_{\eta(\omega)} |\eta(\omega)| - |V + k(\omega)|
\]

\[
\propto \sum_{\omega : \omega \subseteq \eta(\omega)} p^{|\eta(\omega)|} (1 - 2p)^{|E \setminus \eta(\omega)|} 2^{k(\omega)} |\eta(\omega)|^{-1} 2^{k(\omega)} |\eta(\omega)|^{-1} E_{\eta(\omega)} |\eta(\omega)| - |V + k(\omega)|
\]

\[
= [p + (1 - 2p)]|E \setminus \rho|^p |\rho|^q
\]

\[
= p^{|\rho|} (1 - p)^{|E \setminus \rho|} |\rho|, \quad g \subseteq E.
\]

The claim follows. \qed

The above account of even subgraphs would be gravely incomplete without a reminder of the so-called 'random-current representation' of the Ising model. This is a representation of the Ising measure in terms of a random field of loops and lines, and it has enabled a rigorous analysis of the Ising model. See [3, 7, 10, 11, 93] and [130, Chap. 9]. The random-current representation is closely related to the study of random even subgraphs.

8.8 Exercises

8.1 [146] Let \(\phi_{p,q}\) be a random-cluster measure on a finite graph \(G = (V, E)\) with parameters \(p\) and \(q\). Prove that

\[
\frac{d}{dp} \phi_{p,q}(A) = \frac{1}{p(1 - p)} \left[ \phi_{p,q}(M1_A) - \phi_{p,q}(M)\phi_{p,q}(A) \right]
\]

for any event \(A\), where \(M = |\eta(\omega)|\) is the number of open edges of a configuration \(\omega\), and \(1_A\) is the indicator function of the event \(A\).

8.2 Show that \(\phi_{p,q}\) is positively associated when \(q \geq 1\), in that \(\phi_{p,q}(A \cap B) \geq \phi_{p,q}(A)\phi_{p,q}(B)\) for increasing events \(A, B\), but that \(\phi_{p,q}\) does not generally have this property when \(q < 1\).

8.3 For an edge \(e\) of a graph \(G\), we write \(G \setminus e\) for the graph obtained by deleting \(e\), and \(G.e\) for the graph obtained by contracting \(e\) and identifying its endpoints. Show that the conditional random-cluster measure on \(G\) given that the edge \(e\) is closed (respectively, open) is that of \(\phi_{G \setminus e, p,q}\) (respectively, \(\phi_{G.e, p,q}\)).

8.4 Show that random-cluster measures \(\phi_{p,q}\) do not generally satisfy the BK inequality if \(q > 1\). That is, find a finite graph \(G\) and increasing events \(A, B\) such that \(\phi_{p,q}(A \circ B) > \phi_{p,q}(A)\phi_{p,q}(B)\).

8.5 (Important research problem) Prove or disprove that random-cluster measures satisfy the BK inequality if \(q < 1\).

8.6 Let \(\phi_{p,q}\) be the random-cluster measure on a finite connected graph \(G = (V, E)\). Show, in the limit as \(p, q \to 0\) in such way that \(q/p \to 0\), that \(\phi_{p,q}\) converges weakly to the uniform spanning tree measure UST on \(G\). Identify the
corresponding limit as \( p, q \to 0 \) with \( p = q \). Explain the relevance of these limits to the previous exercise.

**8.7** [110] **Comparison inequalities.** Use the Holley inequality to prove the following ‘comparison inequalities’ for a random-cluster measure \( \phi_{p, q} \) on a finite graph:

\[
\phi_{p', q'} \leq \phi_{p, q} \quad \text{if} \quad q' \geq q, \quad q' \geq 1, \quad p' \leq p,
\]

\[
\phi_{p', q'} \geq \phi_{p, q} \quad \text{if} \quad q' \geq q, \quad q' \geq 1, \quad \frac{p'}{q'(1 - p')} \geq \frac{p}{q(1 - p)}.
\]

**8.8** Let \( q \geq 1 \), and write \( \phi^\xi := \phi^\xi_{\Lambda, p, q} \) for the random-cluster measure on the finite subgraph \( \Lambda \) of \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) with boundary condition \( \xi \). Show that \( \phi^\xi \leq \phi^\eta \) if \( \xi \leq \eta \).

**8.9** [9] Show that the wired percolation probability \( \theta^1(p, q) \) on \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) equals the limit of the finite-volume probabilities, in that, for \( q \geq 1 \),

\[
\theta^1(p, q) = \lim_{\Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d} \phi^1_{\Lambda, p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow \partial \Lambda).
\]

**8.10** Let \( q \geq 1 \), \( L \geq 1 \), and \( d \geq 3 \), and consider the random-cluster measure \( \psi_{L, n, p, q} \) on the slab \( S(L, n) = [0, L] \times [-n, n]^{d-1} \) with free boundary conditions. Let \( \Pi(p, L) \) denote the property that

\[
\liminf_{n \to \infty} \inf_{x \in S(L, n)} \{\psi_{L, n, p, q}(0 \leftrightarrow x)\} > 0.
\]

Show that \( \Pi(p, L) \Rightarrow \Pi(p', L') \) if \( p \leq p' \) and \( L \leq L' \).

**8.11** [130, 220] **Mixing.** A translation \( \tau \) of \( \mathbb{Z}^d \) induces a translation of \( \Omega = [0, 1]^{\mathbb{Z}^d} \) given by \( \tau(\omega)(e) = \omega(\tau^{-1}(e)) \). Let \( \tau \) be a translation other than the identity, and let \( A \) and \( B \) be cylinder events of \( \Omega \). Show, for \( q \geq 1 \) and \( b = 0, 1 \), that

\[
\phi^{b}_{p, q}(A \cap \tau^n B) \to \phi^0_{p, q}(A)\phi^b_{p, q}(B) \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.
\]

The following may help when \( b = 0 \), with a similar argument when \( b = 1 \).

a. Assume \( A \) is increasing. Let \( A \) be defined on the box \( \Lambda \), and let \( \Delta \) be a larger box with \( \tau^n \) defined on \( \Delta \setminus \Lambda \). Use positive association to show that

\[
\phi^0_{\Lambda, p, q}(A \cap \tau^n B) \geq \phi^0_{\Lambda, p, q}(A)\phi^0_{\Lambda, p, q}(\tau^n B).
\]

b. Let \( \Delta \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d \), and then \( n \to \infty \) and \( \Lambda \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d \), to obtain

\[
\liminf_{n \to \infty} \phi^0_{p, q}(A \cap \tau^n B) \geq \phi^0_{p, q}(A)\phi^0_{p, q}(B).
\]

By applying this to the complement \( \overline{\mathcal{F}} \) also, deduce that \( \phi^0_{p, q}(A \cap \tau^n B) \to \phi^0_{p, q}(A)\phi^0_{p, q}(B) \).
8.12 Ergodicity. Deduce from the result of the previous exercise that the \( \phi_{p,q}^b \) are ergodic.

8.13 Use the comparison inequalities to prove that the critical point \( p_c(q) \) of the random-cluster model on \( \mathbb{L}^d \) satisfies

\[
p_c(1) \leq p_c(q) \leq \frac{q p_c(1)}{1 + (q - 1) p_c(1)}, \quad q \geq 1.
\]

In particular, \( 0 < p_c(q) < 1 \) if \( q \geq 1 \) and \( d \geq 2 \).

8.14 Let \( \mu \) be the `usual' coupling of the Potts measure and the random-cluster measure on a finite graph \( G \). Derive the conditional measures of the first component given the second, and of the second given the first.

8.15 Let \( q \in \{2, 3, \ldots\} \), and let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph. Let \( W \subseteq V \), and let \( \sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}^W \). Starting from the random-cluster measure \( \phi_{p,q}^W \) on \( G \) with members of \( W \) identified as a single point, explain how to couple the two associated Potts measures \( \pi(\cdot \mid \sigma_W = \sigma_i), i = 1, 2 \), in such a way that: any vertex \( x \) not joined to \( W \) in the random-cluster configuration has the same spin in each of the two Potts configurations.

Let \( B \subseteq \{1, 2, \ldots, q\}^V \), where \( Y \subseteq V \setminus W \). Show that

\[
|\pi(B \mid \sigma_W = \sigma_1) - \pi(B \mid \sigma_W = \sigma_2)| \leq \phi_{p,q}^W(W \leftrightarrow Y).
\]

8.16 Infinite-volume coupling. Let \( \phi_{p,q}^b \) be a random-cluster measure on \( \mathbb{L}^d \) with \( b \in [0, 1] \) and \( q \in \{2, 3, \ldots\} \). If \( b = 0 \), we assign a uniformly random element of \( Q = \{1, 2, \ldots, q\} \) to each open cluster, that is constant within clusters and independent between clusters. We make a similar assignment if \( b = 1 \), with the difference that any infinite cluster receives spin 1. Show that the ensuing spin-measures \( \pi^b \) are the infinite-volume Potts measures with free boundary condition and 1 boundary condition, respectively.

8.17 Ising mixing and ergodicity. Using the results of the previous two exercises, or otherwise, show that the Potts measures \( \pi^b \), \( b = 0, 1 \), are mixing (in that they satisfy the first equation of Exercise 8.11), and hence ergodic, if \( \phi_{p,q}^b(0 \leftrightarrow \infty) = 0 \).

8.18 [125] Show for the random-cluster model on \( \mathbb{L}^d \) that \( p_c(q) \geq \kappa_q \), where \( \kappa_q = \sqrt{q}/(1 + \sqrt{q}) \) is the self-dual point.

8.19 [136] Make a proposal for generating a random even subgraph of the graph \( G = (V, E) \) with parameter \( p \) satisfying \( p > \frac{1}{2} \).

You may find it useful to prove the following first. Let \( u, v \) be distinct vertices in the same component of \( G \), and let \( \pi \) be a path from \( u \) to \( v \). Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be the set of even subsets of \( E \), \( \mathcal{F}^{ev} \) the set of subsets \( F \) such that \( \deg_F(x) \) is even if and only if \( x \neq u, v \). Then \( \mathcal{F} \) and \( \mathcal{F}^{ev} \) are in one–one correspondence by \( F \leftrightarrow F \triangle \pi \).

8.20 [136] Let \((V, F)\) be a random even subgraph of \( G = (V, E) \) with law \( \eta_p \), where \( p \leq \frac{1}{2} \). Each \( e \not\in F \) is coloured blue with probability \( p/(1 - p) \), independently of all other edges. Let \( B \) be the union of \( F \) with the blue edges. Show that \((V, B)\) has law \( \phi_{2p,2} \).
Quantum Ising Model

The quantum Ising model on a finite graph $G$ may be transformed into a continuum random-cluster model on the set obtained by attaching a copy of the real line to each vertex of $G$. The ensuing representation of the Gibbs operator is susceptible to probabilistic analysis. One application is to an estimate of entanglement in the one-dimensional system.

9.1 The Model

The quantum Ising model was introduced in [205]. Its formal definition requires a certain amount of superficially alien notation, and proceeds as follows on the finite graph $G = (V, E)$. To each vertex $x \in V$ is associated a quantum spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ with local Hilbert space $\mathbb{C}^2$. The configuration space $\mathcal{H}$ for the system is the tensor product $\mathcal{H} = \bigotimes_{v \in V} \mathbb{C}^2$. As basis for the copy of $\mathbb{C}^2$ labelled by $v \in V$, we take the two eigenvectors, denoted as

$$|+\rangle_v = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad |\rangle_v = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

of the Pauli matrix

$$\sigma_v^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

at the site $v$, with corresponding eigenvalues $\pm 1$. The other two Pauli matrices with respect to this basis are

$$\sigma_v^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_v^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

In the following, $|\phi\rangle$ denotes a vector and $\langle\phi|$ its adjoint (or conjugate transpose).\(^1\)

\(^1\)The tensor product $U \otimes V$ of two vector spaces over $F$ is the dual space of the set of bilinear functionals on $U \times V$. See [120, 154].

\(^2\)With apologies to mathematicians who dislike the bra-ket notation.
Let $D$ be the set of $2^{|V|}$ basis vectors $|\eta\rangle$ for $\mathcal{H}$ of the form $|\eta\rangle = \bigotimes_v |\pm\rangle_v$. There is a natural one–one correspondence between $D$ and the space $\Sigma := \{-1, +1\}^V$.

We may speak of the members of $\Sigma$ as basis vectors, and of $\mathcal{H}$ as the Hilbert space generated by $\Sigma$.

Let $\lambda, \delta \in [0, \infty)$. The Hamiltonian of the quantum Ising model with transverse field is the matrix (or ‘operator’)

$$H = -\frac{1}{2} \lambda \sum_{e=(u,v) \in E} \sigma_u^{(3)} \sigma_v^{(3)} - \delta \sum_{v \in V} \sigma_v^{(1)}.$$  

Here, $\lambda$ is the spin coupling and $\delta$ is the transverse-field intensity. The matrix $H$ operates on vectors (elements of $\mathcal{H}$) through the operation of each $\sigma_v$ on the component of the vector at $v$.

Let $\beta \in [0, \infty)$ be the parameter known as the ‘inverse temperature’. The Hamiltonian $H$ generates the matrix $e^{-\beta H}$, and we are concerned with the operation of this matrix on elements of $\mathcal{H}$. The correct way to normalize a matrix $A$ is by its trace

$$\text{tr}(A) = \sum_{\eta \in \Sigma} \langle \eta | A | \eta \rangle.$$  

Thus, we define the so-called ‘density matrix’ by

$$\rho_G(\beta) = \frac{1}{Z_G(\beta)} e^{-\beta H},$$

where

$$Z_G(\beta) = \text{tr}(e^{-\beta H}).$$

It turns out that the matrix elements of $\rho_G(\beta)$ may be expressed in terms of a type of ‘path integral’ with respect to the continuum random-cluster model on $V \times [0, \beta]$ with parameters $\lambda, \delta$, and $q = 2$. We explain this in the following two sections.

The Hamiltonian $H$ has a unique pure ground state $|\psi_G\rangle$ defined at zero temperature (that is, in the limit as $\beta \to \infty$) as the eigenvector corresponding to the lowest eigenvalue of $H$. 

Quantum Ising Model
9.2 Continuum Random-Cluster Model

The finite graph $G = (V, E)$ may be used as a base for a family of probabilistic models that live not on the vertex-set $V$ but on the ‘continuum’ space $V \times \mathbb{R}$. The simplest of these models is continuum percolation; see Section 6.6. We consider here a related model called the continuum random-cluster model. Let $\beta \in (0, \infty)$, and let $\Lambda$ be the ‘box’ $\Lambda = V \times [0, \beta]$. In the notation of Section 6.6, let $P_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta}$ denote the probability measure associated with the Poisson processes $D_x, x \in V$, and $B_e, e = (x, y) \in E$. As sample space, we take the set $\Omega_\Lambda$ comprising all finite sets of cuts and bridges in $\Lambda$, and we may assume without loss of generality that no cut is the endpoint of any bridge. For $\omega \in \Omega_\Lambda$, we write $B(\omega)$ and $D(\omega)$ for the sets of bridges and cuts, respectively, of $\omega$. The appropriate $\sigma$-field $\mathcal{F}_\Lambda$ is that generated by the open sets in the associated Skorohod topology; see [43, 102].

For a given configuration $\omega \in \Omega_\Lambda$, let $k(\omega)$ be the number of its clusters under the connection relation $\leftrightarrow$. Let $q \in (0, \infty)$, and define the ‘continuum random-cluster’ measure $\phi_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q}$ by

$$d\phi_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q}(\omega) = \frac{1}{Z} q^{k(\omega)} dP_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta}(\omega), \quad \omega \in \Omega_\Lambda,$$

for an appropriate normalizing constant $Z = Z(\lambda, \delta, q)$ called the ‘partition function’. The continuum random-cluster model may be studied in much the same way as the random-cluster model on a (discrete) graph; see Chapter 8.

The space $\Omega_\Lambda$ is a partially ordered space with order relation given by: $\omega_1 \leq \omega_2$ if $B(\omega_1) \subseteq B(\omega_2)$ and $D(\omega_1) \supseteq D(\omega_2)$. A random variable $X : \Omega_\Lambda \to \mathbb{R}$ is called increasing if $X(\omega) \leq X(\omega')$ whenever $\omega \leq \omega'$. A non-empty event $A \in \mathcal{F}_\Lambda$ is called increasing if its indicator function $1_A$ is increasing. Given two probability measures $\mu_1, \mu_2$ on the measurable pair $(\Omega_\Lambda, \mathcal{F}_\Lambda)$, we write $\mu_1 \leq_{\text{st}} \mu_2$ if $\mu_1(X) \leq \mu_2(X)$ for all bounded increasing continuous random variables $X : \Omega_\Lambda \to \mathbb{R}$.

The measures $\phi_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q}$ have certain properties of stochastic ordering as the parameters vary. In rough terms, the $\phi_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q}$ inherit the properties of stochastic ordering and positive association enjoyed by their counterparts on discrete graphs. This will be assumed here, and the reader is referred to [46] for further details. Of value in the forthcoming Section 9.5 is the stochastic inequality

$$\phi_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q} \leq_{\text{st}} P_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta}, \quad q \geq 1,$$

where $P_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta} := \phi_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, 1}$.

The underlying graph $G = (V, E)$ has so far been finite. Singularities emerge only in the infinite-volume (or ‘thermodynamic’) limit, and this limit
Quantum Ising Model

may be taken in much the same manner as for the discrete random-cluster model, whenever \( q \geq 1 \), and for certain boundary conditions \( \tau \). Henceforth, we assume that \( V \) is a finite connected subgraph of the lattice \( G = \mathbb{L}^d \), and we assign to the box \( \Lambda = V \times [0, \beta] \) a suitable boundary condition. As described in [130] for the discrete case, if the boundary condition \( \tau \) is chosen in such a way that the measures \( \phi^{\tau}_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q} \) are monotonic as \( V \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d \), then the weak limit

\[
\phi^{\tau}_{\lambda, \delta, q, \beta} = \lim_{V \uparrow \mathbb{Z}^d} \phi^{\tau}_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta, q}
\]

exists. We may similarly allow the limit as \( \beta \to \infty \) to obtain the ‘ground state’ measure

\[
\phi^{\tau}_{\lambda, \delta, q} = \lim_{\beta \to \infty} \phi^{\tau}_{\lambda, \delta, q, \beta}.
\]

We shall generally work with the measure \( \phi^{\tau}_{\lambda, \delta, q} \) with free boundary condition \( \tau \), written simply as \( \phi_{\lambda, \delta, q} \), and we note that it is sometimes appropriate to take \( \beta < \infty \).

The percolation probability is given by

\[
\theta(\lambda, \delta, q) = \phi_{\lambda, \delta, q}(|C| = \infty),
\]

where \( C \) is the cluster at the origin \((0, 0)\), and \(|C|\) denotes the aggregate (one-dimensional) Lebesgue measure of the time intervals comprising \( C \). By re-scaling the continuum \( \mathbb{R} \), we see that the percolation probability depends only on the ratio \( \rho = \lambda/\delta \), and we write \( \theta(\rho, q) = \theta(\lambda, \delta, q) \). The critical point is defined by

\[
\rho_c(\mathbb{L}^d, q) = \sup\{\rho : \theta(\rho, q) = 0\}.
\]

In the special case \( d = 1 \), the random-cluster model has a property of self-duality which leads to the following conjecture.

**9.6 Conjecture** The continuum random-cluster model on \( \mathbb{L} \times \mathbb{R} \) with cluster-weighting factor satisfying \( q \geq 1 \) has critical value \( \rho_c(\mathbb{L}, q) = q \).

It may be proved by standard means that \( \rho_c(\mathbb{L}, q) \geq q \). See (8.34) and [130, Sect. 6.2] for the corresponding result on the discrete lattice \( \mathbb{L}^2 \). The cases \( q = 1, 2 \) are special. The statement \( \rho_c(\mathbb{L}, 1) = 1 \) is part of Theorem 6.18(b). When \( q = 2 \), the method of so-called ‘random currents’ may be adapted to the quantum model with several consequences, of which we highlight the fact that \( \rho_c(\mathbb{L}, 2) = 2 \); see [47, 48].

The continuum Potts model on \( \mathbb{V} \times \mathbb{R} \) is given as follows. Let \( q \) be an integer satisfying \( q \geq 2 \). To each cluster of the random-cluster model with cluster-weighting factor \( q \) is assigned a uniformly chosen ‘spin’ from the space \( \Sigma = \{1, 2, \ldots, q\} \), different clusters receiving independent spins.
The outcome is a function \( \sigma : V \times \mathbb{R} \to \Sigma \), and this is the spin-vector of a 'continuum q-state Potts model' with parameters \( \lambda \) and \( \delta \). When \( q = 2 \), we refer to the model as a continuum Ising model.

It is not hard to see\(^3\) that the law \( P \) of the continuous Ising model on \( \Lambda = V \times [0, \beta] \) is given by

\[
d P(\sigma) = \frac{1}{Z} e^{\lambda L(\sigma)} d P_{\Lambda, \delta}(D_\sigma),
\]

where \( D_\sigma \) is the set of \((x, s) \in V \times [0, \beta]\) such that \( \sigma(x, s-) \neq \sigma(x, s+) \), \( P_{\Lambda, \delta} \) is the law of a family of independent Poisson processes on the time-lines \( \{x\} \times [0, \beta], x \in V \), with intensity \( \delta \), and

\[
L(\sigma) = \sum_{(x, y) \in E} \int_0^\beta 1_{\{\sigma(x, u) = \sigma(y, u)\}} du
\]

is the aggregate Lebesgue measure of those subsets of pairs of adjacent time-lines on which the spins are equal. As usual, \( Z \) is the appropriate normalizing constant.

### 9.3 Quantum Ising via Random-Cluster Model

In this section, we describe the relationship between the quantum Ising model on a finite graph \( G = (V, E) \) and the continuum random-cluster model on \( G \times [0, \beta] \) with \( q = 2 \). We shall see that the density matrix \( \nu_G(\beta) \) may be expressed in terms of ratios of probabilities. The basis of the following argument lies in the work of Jean Ginibre [118], and it was developed further by Campanino, von Dreyfus, Klein, and Perez. The reader is referred to [14] for a more recent account. Similar geometrical transformations exist for certain other quantum models; see [15, 233].

Let \( \Lambda = V \times [0, \beta] \), and let \( \Omega_\Lambda \) be the configuration space of the continuum random-cluster model on \( \Lambda \). For given \( \lambda, \delta \), and \( q = 2 \), let \( \phi_{G, \beta} \) denote the corresponding continuum random-cluster measure on \( \Omega_\Lambda \) (with free boundary conditions). Thus, for economy of notation we suppress reference to \( \lambda \) and \( \delta \).

We next introduce a coupling of edge and spin configurations as in Section 8.1. For \( \omega \in \Omega_\Lambda \), let \( S(\omega) \) denote the (finite) space of all functions \( s : V \times [0, \beta] \to \{-1, +1\} \) that are constant on the clusters of \( \omega \), and let \( S \) be the union of the \( S(\omega) \) over \( \omega \in \Omega_\Lambda \). Given \( \omega \), we may pick an element of \( S(\omega) \) uniformly at random, and we denote this random element as \( \sigma \).

We shall abuse notation by using \( \phi_{G, \beta} \) to denote the ensuing probability

\(^3\)This is Exercise 9.3.
Quantum Ising Model

measure on the coupled space $\Omega_\lambda \times S$. For $s \in S$ and $W \subseteq V$, we write $s_{W,0}$ (respectively, $s_{W,\beta}$) for the vector $(s(x,0) : x \in W)$ (respectively, $(s(x,\beta) : x \in W)$). We abbreviate $s_{V,0}$ and $s_{V,\beta}$ to $s_0$ and $s_\beta$, respectively.

9.7 Theorem [14] The elements of the density matrix $\nu_G(\beta)$ satisfy

\begin{equation}
\langle \eta' | \nu_G(\beta) | \eta \rangle = \frac{\phi_{G,\beta}(\sigma_0 = \eta, \sigma_\beta = \eta')}{\phi_{G,\beta}(\sigma_0 = \sigma_\beta)}, \quad \eta, \eta' \in \Sigma.
\end{equation}

Readers familiar with quantum theory may recognize this as a type of Feynman–Kac representation.

Proof. We use the notation of Section 9.1. By (9.1) with $\gamma = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{(x,y)} \lambda \mathbb{I}$ and $\mathbb{I}$ the identity matrix,

\begin{equation}
e^{-\beta(H+\gamma)} = e^{-\beta(U+V)},
\end{equation}

where

\[ U = -\delta \sum_{x \in V} \sigma_1, \quad V = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{e = (x,y) \in E} \lambda (\sigma_3) (\sigma_3) - \mathbb{I}. \]

Although these two matrices do not commute, we may use the so-called Lie–Trotter formula (see, for example, [262]) to express $e^{-\beta(U+V)}$ in terms of single-site and two-site contributions due to $U$ and $V$, respectively. By the Lie–Trotter formula,

\[ e^{-(U+V) \Delta t} = e^{-U \Delta t} e^{-V \Delta t} + O(\Delta t^2) \quad \text{as} \quad \Delta t \downarrow 0, \]

so that

\[ e^{-\beta(U+V)} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} (e^{-U \Delta t} e^{-V \Delta t})^{\beta/\Delta t}. \]

Now expand the exponential, neglecting terms of order $o(\Delta t)$, to obtain

\begin{equation}
e^{-\beta(H+\gamma)} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \left( \prod_{x \in V} \left[ (1 - \delta \Delta t) \mathbb{I} + \delta \Delta t P_x^1 \right] \right)
\times \prod_{e = (x,y) \in E} \left[ (1 - \lambda \Delta t) \mathbb{I} + \lambda \Delta t P_{x,y}^3 \right]^{\beta/\Delta t},
\end{equation}

where $P_x^1 = \sigma_1^x + \mathbb{I}$ and $P_{x,y}^3 = \frac{1}{2} (\sigma_3^x \sigma_3^y + \mathbb{I})$.

As noted earlier, $\Sigma = \{-1, +1\}^V$ may be considered as a basis for $\mathcal{H}$.

The product (9.10) contains a collection of operators acting on sites $x$ and

\footnote{Note that $\langle \eta' | e^{J+\gamma} | \eta \rangle = e^\gamma \langle \eta' | e^J | \eta \rangle$, so the introduction of $\gamma$ into the exponent is harmless.}
9.3 Quantum Ising via Random-Cluster Model

on neighbouring pairs \(\langle x, y \rangle\). We partition the time interval \([0, \beta]\) into \(N\) time segments labelled \(\Delta t_1, \Delta t_2, \ldots, \Delta t_N\), each of length \(\Delta t = \beta/N\). On neglecting terms of order \(o(\Delta t)\), we may see that each given time segment arising in (9.10) contains exactly one of the following: the identity matrix \(I\), a matrix of the form \(P^1_x\), and a matrix of the form \(P^3_{x,y}\). Each such matrix occurs within the given time-segment with a certain weight.

Let us consider the actions of these matrices on the states \(|\eta\rangle\) for each time segment \(\Delta t_i, i \in \{1, 2, \ldots, N\}\). The matrix elements of the single-site operator at \(x\) are given by

\[
(9.11) \quad \langle \eta' | \sigma_x^{(1)} + 1 | \eta \rangle \equiv 1.
\]

This is easily checked by exhaustion. When this matrix occurs in some time-segment \(\Delta t_i\), we place a mark in the interval \({x} \times \Delta t_i\), and we call this mark a cut. Such a cut has a corresponding weight \(\delta \Delta t + o(\Delta t)\).

The matrix element involving the neighbouring pair \(\langle x, y \rangle\) yields, as above,

\[
(9.12) \quad \frac{1}{2} \langle \eta' | \sigma_x^{(3)} \sigma_y^{(3)} + 1 | \eta \rangle = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \eta_x = \eta_y = \eta'_x = \eta'_y, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise}. \end{cases}
\]

When this occurs in some time segment \(\Delta t_i\), we place a bridge between the intervals \({x} \times \Delta t_i\) and \({y} \times \Delta t_i\). Such a bridge has a corresponding weight \(\lambda \Delta t + o(\Delta t)\).

In the limit \(\Delta t \to 0\), the spin operators generate thus a Poisson process with intensity \(\delta\) of cuts in each time-line \({x} \times [0, \beta]\), and a Poisson process with intensity \(\lambda\) of bridges between each pair \({x} \times [0, \beta]\), \({y} \times [0, \beta]\) of timelines, for neighbouring \(x\) and \(y\). These Poisson processes are independent of one another. We write \(D_x\) for the set of cuts at the site \(x\) and \(B_e\) for the set of bridges corresponding to an edge \(e = \langle x, y \rangle\). The configuration space is the set \(\Omega_\Lambda\) containing all finite sets of cuts and bridges, and we may assume without loss of generality that no cut is the endpoint of any bridge.

For two points \((x, s), (y, t) \in \Lambda\), we write as before \((x, s) \leftrightarrow (y, t)\) if there exists a cut-free path from the first to the second that traverses time-lines and bridges. A cluster is a maximal subset \(C\) of \(\Lambda\) such that \((x, s) \leftrightarrow (y, t)\) for all \((x, s), (y, t) \in C\). Thus the connection relation \(\leftrightarrow\) generates a continuum percolation process on \(\Lambda\), and we write \(P_{\Lambda,\lambda,\delta}\) for the probability measure corresponding to the weight function on the configuration space \(\Omega_\Lambda\). That is, \(P_{\Lambda,\lambda,\delta}\) is the measure governing a family of independent Poisson processes of cuts (with intensity \(\delta\)) and of bridges (with intensity \(\lambda\)). The ensuing percolation process has appeared in Section 6.6.

Equations (9.11) and (9.12) are to be interpreted in the following way. In calculating the operator \(e^{-\beta(H+\gamma)}\), we average over contributions from
realizations of the Poisson processes, on the basis that the quantum spins are constant on every cluster of the corresponding percolation process, and each such spin-function is equiprobable.

More explicitly,

\[ e^{-\beta(H+\gamma)} = \int d\mathbb{P}_{\Lambda,\lambda,\delta}(\omega) \left( \mathcal{T} \prod_{(x,t) \in D} P^1_x(t) \prod_{(x,y),t' \in B} P^3_{x,y}(t') \right), \]

where \( \mathcal{T} \) denotes the time-ordering of the terms in the products, and \( B \) (respectively, \( D \)) is the set of all bridges (respectively, cuts) of the configuration \( \omega \in \Omega_\Lambda \).

Let \( \omega \in \Omega_\Lambda \). Let \( \mu_\omega \) be the counting measure on the space \( S(\omega) \) of functions \( s : V \times [0, \beta] \to \{-1, +1\} \) that are constant on the clusters of \( \omega \). Let \( K(\omega) \) be the time-ordered product of operators in (9.13). We may evaluate the matrix elements of \( K(\omega) \) by inserting the ‘resolution of the identity’

\[ \sum_{\eta,\eta' \in \Sigma} |\eta\rangle \langle \eta'| = \mathbb{1} \]

between any two factors in the product, obtaining by (9.11) and (9.12) that

\[ \langle \eta'| K(\omega) |\eta\rangle = \sum_{x \in S(\omega)} 1_{\{s_0 = \eta\} \{s_\beta = \eta'\}}, \quad \eta, \eta' \in \Sigma. \]

This is the number of spin-allocations to the clusters of \( \omega \) with given spin-vectors at times 0 and \( \beta \).

The matrix elements of \( v_G(\beta) \) are therefore given by

\[ \langle \eta'| v_G(\beta) |\eta\rangle = \frac{1}{Z_{G,\beta}} \int 1_{\{s_0 = \eta\} \{s_\beta = \eta'\}} d\mu_\omega(s) d\mathbb{P}_{\Lambda,\lambda,\delta}(\omega), \]

for \( \eta, \eta' \in \Sigma \), where

\[ Z_{G,\beta} = \text{tr}(e^{-\beta(H+\gamma)}). \]

For \( \eta, \eta' \in \Sigma \), let \( I_{\eta,\eta'} \) be the indicator function of the event (in \( \Omega_\Lambda \)) that, for all \( x, y \in V \),

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{if } (x, 0) \leftrightarrow (y, 0), \text{ then } \eta_x = \eta_y, \\
&\text{if } (x, \beta) \leftrightarrow (y, \beta), \text{ then } \eta'_x = \eta'_y, \\
&\text{if } (x, 0) \leftrightarrow (y, \beta), \text{ then } \eta_x = \eta'_y.
\end{align*}
\]

This is the event that the pair \( (\eta, \eta') \) of initial and final spin-vectors is
9.3 Quantum Ising via Random-Cluster Model

Figure 9.1 An example of a space–time configuration contributing to the Poisson integral (9.18). The cuts are shown as circles and the distinct connected clusters are indicated with different line-types.

‘compatible’ with the random-cluster configuration. We have that

\[
\langle \eta' | v_G(\beta) | \eta \rangle = \frac{1}{Z_{G,\beta}} \int d\mathbb{P}_{\Lambda,\lambda,\delta}(\omega) \sum_{s \in S(\omega)} 1_{\{s_0 = \eta\}} 1_{\{s_\beta = \eta'\}}
\]

(9.18)

\[
= \frac{1}{Z_{G,\beta}} \int 2^{k(\omega)} 1_{\eta,\eta'} d\mathbb{P}_{\Lambda,\lambda,\delta}(\omega)
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{Z_{G,\beta}} \phi_{G,\beta}(\sigma_0 = \eta, \sigma_\beta = \eta'). \quad \eta, \eta' \in \Sigma,
\]

where \( k(\omega) \) is the number of clusters of \( \omega \) containing no point of the form \((v, 0)\) or \((v, \beta)\), for \( v \in V \). See Figure 9.1 for an illustration of a space–time configuration contributing to the Poisson integral (9.18).

On setting \( \eta = \eta' \) in (9.18) and summing over \( \eta \in \Sigma \), we find that

\[
Z_{G,\beta} = \phi_{G,\beta}(\sigma_0 = \sigma_\beta),
\]

(9.19)

as required. \( \square \)

This section closes with an alternative expression for the trace formula for \( Z_{G,\beta} = \text{tr}(e^{-\beta(H+\gamma)}) \). We consider ‘periodic’ boundary conditions on \( \Lambda \) obtained by, for each \( x \in V \), identifying the pair \((x, 0)\) and \((x, \beta)\) of points. Let \( k^{\text{per}}(\omega) \) be the number of open clusters of \( \omega \) with periodic boundary
Quantum Ising Model

conditions, and \( \phi_{G, \beta}^{\text{per}} \) be the corresponding random-cluster measure. By setting \( \eta' = \eta \) in (9.18) and summing,

\[
(9.20) \quad 1 = \sum_{\eta \in \Sigma} \langle \eta | \nu_G(\beta) | \eta \rangle = \frac{1}{Z_{G, \beta}} \int \mathbb{E}(\omega) 2^{k_{\text{per}}(\omega) - \mathbb{E}(\omega)} dP_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta}(\omega),
\]

whence \( Z_{G, \beta} \) equals the normalizing constant for the periodic random-cluster measure \( \phi_{G, \beta}^{\text{per}} \).

9.4 Long-Range Order

The density matrix has been expressed in terms of the continuous random-cluster model. This representation incorporates a relationship between the phase transitions of the two models. The so-called 'order parameter' of the random-cluster model is of course its percolation probability \( \theta \), and the phase transition takes place at the point of singularity of \( \theta \). Another way of expressing this is to say that the two-point connectivity function

\[
\tau_{G, \beta}(x, y) = \phi_{G, \beta}^{\text{per}}((x, 0) \leftrightarrow (y, 0)), \quad x, y \in V,
\]

is a natural measure of long-range order in the random-cluster model. It is less clear how best to summarize the concept of long-range order in the quantum Ising model, and, for reasons that are about to become clear, we use the quantity

\[
\text{tr}(\nu_G(\beta) \sigma_x^{(3)} \sigma_y^{(3)}) = \tau_{G, \beta}(x, y), \quad x, y \in V.
\]

9.21 Theorem [14] Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a finite graph and \( \beta > 0 \). We have that

\[
\tau_{G, \beta}(x, y) = \text{tr}(\nu_G(\beta) \sigma_x^{(3)} \sigma_y^{(3)}), \quad x, y \in V.
\]

Proof. The argument leading to (9.18) is easily adapted to obtain

\[
\text{tr}(\nu_G(\beta) \frac{1}{2}(\sigma_x^{(3)} \sigma_y^{(3)} + I)) = \frac{1}{Z_{G, \beta}} \int \mathbb{E}(\omega) \left( \sum_{\eta: \eta_x = \eta_y} I_{\eta, \eta} \right) dP_{\Lambda, \lambda, \delta}(\omega).
\]

Now,

\[
\sum_{\eta: \eta_x = \eta_y} I_{\eta, \eta} = \begin{cases} 2^{k_{\text{per}}(\omega) - \mathbb{E}(\omega)} & \text{if } (x, 0) \leftrightarrow (y, 0), \\ 2^{k_{\text{per}}(\omega) - \mathbb{E}(\omega) - 1} & \text{if } (x, 0) \not\leftrightarrow (y, 0), \end{cases}
\]

whence, by the remark at the end of the last section,

\[
\text{tr}(\nu_G(\beta) \frac{1}{2}(\sigma_x^{(3)} \sigma_y^{(3)} + I)) = \tau_{G, \beta}(x, y) + \frac{1}{2}(1 - \tau_{G, \beta}(x, y)),
\]

and the claim follows. \( \square \)
9.5 Entanglement in One Dimension

The infinite-volume limits of the quantum Ising model on $G$ are obtained in the ‘ground state’ as $\beta \to \infty$ and in the spatial limit as $|V| \to \infty$. The paraphernalia of the discrete random-cluster model may be adapted to the current continuous setting in order to understand the issues of the existence and uniqueness of these limits. This is not investigated here. Instead, we point out that the behaviour of the two-point connectivity function, after taking the limits $\beta \to \infty$, $|V| \to \infty$, depends pivotally on the existence or not of an unbounded cluster in the infinite-volume random-cluster model. Let $\phi_{\lambda, \delta}$ be the infinite-volume measure, and let

$$\theta(\lambda, \delta) = \phi_{\lambda, \delta}(C_0 \text{ is unbounded})$$

be the percolation probability. Then $\tau_{\lambda, \delta}(x, y) \to 0$ as $|x - y| \to \infty$, when $\theta(\lambda, \delta) = 0$. On the other hand, by the FKG inequality and the (a.s.) uniqueness of the unbounded cluster,

$$\tau_{\lambda, \delta}(x, y) \geq \theta(\lambda, \delta)^2,$$

implying that $\tau_{\lambda, \delta}(x, y)$ is bounded uniformly away from 0 when $\theta(\lambda, \delta) > 0$. Thus the critical point of the random-cluster model is also a point of phase transition for the quantum model.

A more detailed investigation of the infinite-volume limits and their implications for the quantum Ising model may be found in [14]. As pointed out there, the situation is more interesting in the ‘disordered’ setting, when the $\lambda_e$ and $\delta_e$ are themselves random variables.

A principal technique for the study of the classical Ising model is the so-called random-current method. This may be adapted to a ‘random-parity representation’ for the continuum Ising model that corresponds to the continuous random-cluster model of Section 9.3; see [48, 79]. Many results follow for the quantum Ising model in a general number of dimensions; see [47, 48].

9.5 Entanglement in One Dimension

It is shown next how the random-cluster analysis of the last section enables progress with the problem of so-called ‘quantum entanglement’ in one dimension. The principle reference for the work of this section is [145].

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite graph, and let $W \subseteq V$. A considerable effort has been spent on understanding the so-called ‘entanglement’ of the spins in $W$ relative to those of $V \setminus W$, in the (ground state) limit as $\beta \to \infty$. This is already a hard problem when $G$ is a finite subgraph of the line $\mathbb{Z}$. Various methods have been used in this case, and a variety of results, some rigorous, obtained.
The first step in the definition of entanglement is to define the reduced density matrix

\[ \nu^W_G(\beta) = \text{tr}_{V \setminus W}(\nu^G(\beta)), \]

where the trace is taken over the Hilbert space \( \mathcal{H}_{V \setminus W} = \bigotimes_{x \in V \setminus W} \mathbb{C}^2 \) of spins of vertices of \( V \setminus W \). An analysis (omitted here) exactly parallel to that leading to Theorem 9.7 allows the following representation of the matrix elements of \( \nu^W_G(\beta) \).

**9.22 Theorem [145]** The elements of the reduced density matrix \( \nu^W_G(\beta) \) satisfy

\[ \langle \eta' | \nu^W_G(\beta) | \eta \rangle = \frac{\phi_G(\sigma_{W,0} = \eta, \sigma_{W,\beta} = \eta' \mid F)}{\phi_G(\sigma_0 = \sigma_\beta \mid F)}, \quad \eta, \eta' \in \Sigma_W, \]

where \( F \) is the event that \( \sigma_{V \setminus W,0} = \sigma_{V \setminus W,\beta} \).

Let \( D_W \) be the set of \( 2^{|W|} \) vectors \( |\eta\rangle \) of the form \( |\eta\rangle = \bigotimes_{w \in W} |\pm\rangle_w \), and write \( \mathcal{H}_W \) for the Hilbert space generated by \( D_W \). Just as before, there is a natural one–one correspondence between \( D_W \) and the space \( \Sigma_W = \{-1, +1\}^W \), and we shall thus regard \( \mathcal{H}_W \) as the Hilbert space generated by \( \Sigma_W \).

We may write

\[ \nu_G = \lim_{\beta \to \infty} \nu_G(\beta) = |\psi_G\rangle\langle \psi_G| \]

for the density matrix corresponding to the ground state of the system, and similarly

\[ \nu^W_G = \text{tr}_{V \setminus W}(|\psi_G\rangle\langle \psi_G|) = \lim_{\beta \to \infty} \nu^W_G(\beta). \]

The entanglement of the spins in \( W \) may be defined as follows.

**9.25 Definition** The entanglement of the spins of \( W \) relative to its complement \( V \setminus W \) is defined as the entropy

\[ S^W_G = -\text{tr}(\nu^W_G \log_2 \nu^W_G). \]

The behaviour of \( S^W_G \), for general \( G \) and \( W \), is not understood at present. We specialize here to the case of a finite subset of the one-dimensional lattice \( \mathbb{L} \). Let \( m, L \geq 0 \) and take \( V = [-m, m + L] \) and \( W = [0, L] \), viewed as subsets of \( \mathbb{Z} \). We obtain the graph \( G \) from \( V \) by adding edges between each pair \( x, y \in V \) with \( |x - y| = 1 \). We write \( \nu_m(\beta) \) for \( \nu_G(\beta) \) and \( S^L_m \) (respectively, \( \nu^L_m \)) for \( S^W_G \) (respectively, \( \nu^W_G \)). A key step in the study of \( S^L_m \)
for large $m$ is a bound on the norm of the difference $\nu^L_m - \nu^L_n$. The operator norm of a Hermitian matrix $A$ is given by\(^5\)

$$\|A\| = \sup_{\|\psi\|=1} |\langle \psi | A | \psi \rangle|,$$

where the supremum is over all vectors $\psi$ with $L^2$-norm 1.

**9.27 Theorem [48, 145]** Let $\lambda, \delta \in (0, \infty)$ and write $\rho = \lambda / \delta$. There exist constants $C, \alpha, \gamma$ depending on $\rho$ and satisfying $\gamma > 0$ when $\rho < 2$ such that

$$\|\nu^L_m - \nu^L_n\| \leq \min\{2, CL^\alpha e^{-\gamma m}\}, \quad 2 \leq m \leq n < \infty, \quad L \geq 1. \tag{9.28}$$

This was proved in [145] for $\rho < 1$, and the stronger result follows from the identification of the critical point $\rho_c = 2$ in [48]. The constant $\gamma$ is, apart from a constant factor, the reciprocal of the correlation length of the associated random-cluster model.

Inequality (9.28) is proved by the following route. Consider the continuum random-cluster model with $q = 2$ on the space–time graph $\Lambda = V \times [0, \beta]$ with 'partial periodic top–bottom boundary conditions'; that is, for each $x \in V \setminus W$, we identify the two points $(x, 0)$ and $(x, \beta)$. Let $\phi^{p, m, \beta}$ denote the associated random-cluster measure on $\Omega_\Lambda$. To each cluster of $\omega \in \Omega_\Lambda$ we assign a random spin from $\{-1, +1\}$ in the usual manner, and we abuse notation by using $\phi^{p, m, \beta}$ to denote the measure governing both the random-cluster configuration and the spin configuration. Let

$$a_{m, \beta} = \phi^{p, m, \beta}(\sigma_0 = \sigma_\beta | F),$$

noting that

$$a_{m, \beta} = \phi^{p, m, \beta}(\sigma_0 = \sigma_\beta | F)$$

as in (9.23).

By Theorem 9.22,

$$\langle \psi | \nu^L_m(\beta) - \nu^L_n(\beta) | \psi \rangle = \frac{\phi^{p, m, \beta}(c(\sigma_0, 0)c(\sigma_\beta))}{a_{m, \beta}} - \frac{\phi^{p, n, \beta}(c(\sigma_0, 0)c(\sigma_\beta))}{a_{n, \beta}}, \tag{9.29}$$

where $c : \{-1, +1\}^W \to \mathbb{C}$ and

$$\psi = \sum_{\eta \in \Sigma_W} c(\eta) \eta \in \mathcal{H}_W.$$
The property of ratio weak-mixing (for a random-cluster measure $\phi$) is used in the derivation of (9.28) from (9.29). This may be stated roughly as follows. Let $A$ and $B$ be events in the continuum random-cluster model that are defined on regions $R_A$ and $R_B$ of space, respectively. What can be said about the difference $\phi(A \cap B) - \phi(A)\phi(B)$ when the distance $d(R_A, R_B)$ between $R_A$ and $R_B$ is large? It is not hard to show that this difference is exponentially small in the distance, so long as the random-cluster model has exponentially decaying connectivities; such a property is called ‘weak mixing’. It is harder to show a similar bound for the difference $\phi(A \mid B) - \phi(A)$, and such a bound is termed ‘ratio weak-mixing’. The ratio weak-mixing property of random-cluster measures was investigated in [20, 21] for the discrete case and in [145] for the continuum model.

In the final step of the proof of Theorem 9.27, the random-cluster model is compared via (9.5) with the continuum percolation model of Section 6.6, and the exponential decay of Theorem 9.27 follows by Theorem 6.18. A logarithmic bound on the entanglement entropy follows for sufficiently small $\lambda/\delta$.

9.30 Theorem [145] Let $\lambda, \delta \in (0, \infty)$ and write $\rho = \lambda/\delta$. There exists $\rho_0 \in (0, 2]$ such that: for $\rho < \rho_0$, there exists $K = K(\rho) < \infty$ such that

$$S^L_m \leq K \log_2 L, \quad m \geq 0, \quad L \geq 2.$$  

Here is the idea of the proof. Theorem 9.27 implies, by a classic theorem of Weyl, that the spectra (and hence the entropies) of $\nu^L_m$ and $\nu^L_n$ are close to one another. It is an easy calculation that $S^L_m \leq c \log L$ for $m \leq c' \log L$, and the conclusion follows.

A stronger result is known to physicists, namely that the entanglement $S^L_m$ is bounded above, uniformly in $L$, whenever $\rho$ is sufficiently small, and perhaps for all $\rho < \rho_c$, where $\rho_c = 2$ is the critical point. It is not clear whether this is provable by the methods of this chapter. See Conjecture 9.6 above and the references in [145].

There is no rigorous picture known of the behaviour of $S^L_m$ for large $\rho$, or of the corresponding quantity in dimensions $d \geq 2$, although Theorem 9.27 has a counterpart in these settings. Theorem 9.30 may be extended to a disordered system in which the intensities $\lambda, \delta$ are independent random variables indexed by the vertices and edges of the underlying graph, subject to certain conditions on these variables (cf. Theorem 6.19 and the preceding discussion).
9.6 Exercises

9.1 Explain in what manner the continuum random-cluster measure $\phi_{\lambda, \delta, q}$ on $\mathbb{L} \times \mathbb{R}$ is ‘self-dual’ when $\rho = \lambda/\delta$ satisfies $\rho = q$.

9.2 (continuation) Show that the critical value $\rho_c$ of $\rho$ satisfies $\rho_c \geq q$ when $q \geq 1$.

9.3 Let $\phi_{\lambda, \delta, q}$ be the continuum random-cluster measure on $G \times [0, \beta]$, where $G$ is a finite graph, $\beta < \infty$, and $q \in \{2, 3, \ldots\}$. To each cluster is assigned a spin chosen uniformly at random from the set $\{1, 2, \ldots, q\}$, these spins being constant within clusters and independent between them. Find an expression for the law of the ensuing (Potts) spin process on $V \times [0, \beta]$. 
10

Interacting Particle Systems

The contact, voter, and exclusion models are Markov processes in continuous time with state space \( \{0, 1\}^V \) for some countable set \( V \). In the voter model, each element of \( V \) may be in either of two states, and its state flips at a rate that is a weighted average of the states of the other elements. Its analysis hinges on the recurrence or transience of an associated Markov chain. When \( V = \mathbb{Z}^2 \) and the model is generated by a symmetric random walk, the only invariant measures are the two point masses on the (two) states representing unanimity. The picture is more complicated when \( d \geq 3 \). In the exclusion model, a set of particles moves about \( V \) according to a `symmetric' Markov chain, subject to exclusion. When \( V = \mathbb{Z}^d \) and the Markov chain is translation-invariant, the product measures are invariant for this process, and furthermore these are exactly the extremal invariant measures. The chapter closes with a brief account of the stochastic Ising model.

10.1 Introductory Remarks

There are many beautiful problems of a physical type that may be modelled as Markov processes on the compact state space \( \Sigma = \{0, 1\}^V \) for some countable set \( V \). Amongst the most studied to date by probabilists are the contact, voter, and exclusion models, and the stochastic Ising model. This significant branch of modern probability theory had its nascence around 1970 in the work of Roland Dobrushin, Frank Spitzer, and others, and has been brought to maturity through the work of Thomas Liggett and colleagues. The basic references are Liggett’s two volumes [206, 208]; see also [209].

The general theory of Markov processes, with its intrinsic complexities, is avoided here. The first three processes in this chapter may be constructed via ‘graphical representations’ involving independent random walks. There is a general approach to such important matters as the existence of processes, for an account of which the reader is referred to [206]. The two observations
of note are that the state space $\Sigma$ is compact and that the Markov processes $(\eta_t : t \geq 0)$ of this section are Feller processes, which is to say that the transition measures are weakly continuous functions of the initial state.\footnote{Let $C(\Sigma)$ denote the space of continuous functions on $\Sigma$ endowed with the product topology and the supremum norm. The process $\eta_t$ is called Feller if, for $f \in C(\Sigma)$, $f_t(\eta) = \mathbb{E}^\eta(f(\eta_t))$ defines a function belonging to $C(\Sigma)$. Here, $\mathbb{E}^\eta$ denotes expectation with initial state $\eta$.}

For a given Markov process, the two main questions are to identify the set of invariant measures and to identify the ‘basin of attraction’ of a given invariant measure. The processes of this chapter will possess a non-empty set $I$ of invariant measures, although it is not yet always possible to describe all members of this set explicitly. Since $I$ is a convex set of measures, it suffices to describe its extremal elements. We shall see that, in certain circumstances, $|I| = 1$, and this may be interpreted as the absence of long-range order.

Since $V$ is infinite, $\Sigma$ is uncountable. We normally specify the transition operators of a Markov chain on such a $\Sigma$ by specifying its generator. This is an operator $\mathcal{L}$ acting on an appropriate dense subset of $C(\Sigma)$, the space of continuous functions on $\Sigma$ endowed with the product topology and the supremum norm. It is determined by its values on the space $C(\Sigma)$ of cylinder functions, that is, the set of functions that depend on only finitely many coordinates in $\Sigma$. For $f \in C(\Sigma)$, we write $\mathcal{L}f$ in the form

$$
\mathcal{L}f(\eta) = \sum_{\eta' \in \Sigma} c(\eta, \eta')[f(\eta') - f(\eta)], \quad \eta \in \Sigma,
$$

for some function $c$ sometimes called the ‘speed (or rate) function’. For $\eta \neq \eta'$, we think of $c(\eta, \eta')$ as being the rate at which the process, when in state $\eta$, jumps to state $\eta'$.

The processes $\eta_t$ possess a transition semigroup $(S_t : t \geq 0)$ acting on $C(\Sigma)$ and given by

$$
S_t f(\eta) = \mathbb{E}^\eta(f(\eta_t)), \quad \eta \in \Sigma,
$$

where $\mathbb{E}^\eta$ denotes expectation under the assumption $\eta_0 = \eta$. Under certain conditions on the process, the transition semigroup is related to the generator by the formula

$$
S_t = \exp(t \mathcal{L}),
$$

suitably interpreted according to the Hille–Yosida theorem; see [206, Sect. I.2]. The semigroup acts on probability measures by

$$
\mu S_t(A) = \int_\Sigma \mathbb{P}^\eta(\eta_t \in A) \, d\mu(\eta).
$$
A probability measure \( \mu \) on \( \Sigma \) is called invariant for the process \( \eta_t \) if \( \mu(S_t) = \mu \) for all \( t \). Under suitable conditions, \( \mu \) is invariant if and only if
\[
\int \mathcal{L} f \, d\mu = 0 \quad \text{for all } f \in \mathcal{C}(\Sigma).
\]

In the remainder of this chapter we shall encounter certain constructions of Markov processes on \( \Sigma \), and all such constructions will satisfy the conditions alluded to above.

### 10.2 Contact Model

Let \( G = (V, E) \) be a connected graph with bounded vertex-degrees. The state space is \( \Sigma = \{0, 1\}^V \), where the local state 1 (respectively, 0) represents ‘ill’ (respectively, ‘healthy’). Ill vertices recover at a rate \( \delta \), and healthy vertices become ill at a rate that is linear in the number of ill neighbours. See Chapter 6.

We proceed more formally as follows. For \( \eta \in \Sigma \) and \( x \in V \), let \( \eta_x \) denote the state obtained from \( \eta \) by flipping the local state of \( x \). That is,
\[
\eta_x(y) = \begin{cases} 
1 - \eta(x) & \text{if } y = x, \\
\eta(y) & \text{otherwise}.
\end{cases}
\]

We let the function \( c \) of (10.1) be given by
\[
c(\eta, \eta_x) = \begin{cases} 
\delta & \text{if } \eta(x) = 1, \\
\lambda |\{y \sim x : \eta(y) = 1\}| & \text{if } \eta(x) = 0,
\end{cases}
\]

where \( \lambda \) and \( \delta \) are strictly positive constants. If \( \eta' = \eta_x \) for no \( x \in V \), and in addition \( \eta' \neq \eta \), we set \( c(\eta, \eta') = 0 \).

We saw in Chapter 6 that the point mass on the empty set, \( \nu = \delta_\emptyset \), is the minimal invariant measure of the process, and that there exists a maximal invariant measure \( \nu \) obtained as the weak limit of the process with initial state \( V \). As remarked at the end of Section 6.3, when \( G = \mathbb{Z}^d \), the set of extremal invariant measures is exactly \( I_e = \{\delta_\emptyset, \nu\} \), and \( \delta_\emptyset = \nu \) if and only if there is no percolation in the associated oriented percolation model in continuous time. Of especial use in proving these facts was the coupling of contact models in terms of Poisson processes of cuts and (directed) bridges.

We revisit duality briefly; see Theorem 6.1. For \( \eta \in \Sigma \) and \( A \subseteq V \), let
\[
H(\eta, A) = \prod_{x \in A} [1 - \eta(x)] = \begin{cases} 
1 & \text{if } \eta(x) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in A, \\
0 & \text{otherwise}.
\end{cases}
\]

The conclusion of Theorem 6.1 may be expressed more generally as
\[
\mathbb{E}^A(H(A), B)) = \mathbb{E}^B(H(A, B)),
\]
where $A_t$ (respectively, $B_t$) denotes the contact model with initial state $A_0 = A$ (respectively, $B_0 = B$). This may seem a strange way to express the duality relation, but its significance may become clearer soon.

### 10.3 Voter Model

Let $V$ be a countable set, and let $P = (p_{x,y} : x, y \in V)$ be the transition matrix of a Markov chain on $V$. The associated voter model is given by choosing

$$c(\eta, \eta_x) = \sum_{y : \eta(y) \neq \eta(x)} p_{x,y}$$

in (10.1). The meaning of this is as follows. Each member of $V$ is an individual in a population, and may have either of two opinions at any given time. Let $x \in V$. At the times of a rate-1 Poisson process, $x$ selects a random $y$ according to the measure $p_{x,y}$ and adopts the opinion of $y$. It turns out that the behaviour of this model is closely related to the transience or recurrence of the chain with transition matrix $P$ and to properties of its harmonic functions.

The voter model has two absorbing states, namely all 0s and all 1s, and we denote by $\delta_0$ and $\delta_1$ the point masses on these states. Any convex combination of $\delta_0$ and $\delta_1$ is invariant also, and thus we ask for conditions under which every invariant measure is of this form. A duality relation will enable us to answer this question.

It is helpful to draw the so-called graphical representation of the process. With each $x \in V$ is associated a ‘time-line’ $[0, \infty)$, and on each such time-line is marked the set of epochs of a Poisson process $\text{Po}_x$ with intensity 1. Different time-lines possess independent Poisson processes. Associated with each epoch of the Poisson process at $x$ is a vertex $y$ chosen at random according to the transition matrix $P$. The choice of $y$ has the interpretation given above.

Consider the state of vertex $x$ at time $t$. We imagine a particle that is at position $x$ at time $t$, and we write $X_x(0) = x$. When we follow the time-line $x \times [0, t]$ backwards in time, that is, from the point $(x, t)$ towards the point $(x, 0)$, we encounter a first point (first in this reversed ordering of time) belonging to $\text{Po}_x$. At this time, the particle jumps to the selected neighbour of $x$. Continuing likewise, the particle performs a symmetric random walk about $V$. Writing $X_x(t)$ for its position at time 0, the (voter) state of $x$ at time $t$ is precisely that of $X_x(t)$ at time 0.

Suppose we proceed likewise starting from two vertices $x$ and $y$ at time $t$. Tracing the states of $x$ and $y$ backwards, each follows a Markov chain
with transition matrix $P$, denoted $X_x$ and $X_y$, respectively. These chains are independent until the first time (if ever) they meet. When they meet, they ‘coalesce’: if they ever occupy the same vertex at any given time, then they follow the same trajectory subsequently.

We state this as follows. The presentation here is somewhat informal and may be made more complete as in [206]. We write $(\eta_t : t \geq 0)$ for the voter process and $\delta$ for the set of finite subsets of $V$.

10.9 Theorem Let $A \in \delta$, $\eta \in \Sigma$, and let $(A_t : t \geq 0)$ be a system of coalescing random walks beginning on the set $A_0 = A$. Then,

$$P^\delta(\eta_t \equiv 1 \text{ on } A) = P^A(\eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A_t), \quad t \geq 0.$$ 

This may be expressed in the form

$$E^n(H(\eta_t, A)) = E^A(H(\eta, A_t)),$$

with

$$H(\eta, A) = \prod_{x \in A} \eta(x).$$

Proof. Each side of the equation is the probability of the complement of the event that, in the graphical representation, there is a path from $(x, 0)$ to $(a, t)$ for some $x$ with $\eta(x) = 0$ and some $a \in A$. □

For simplicity, we restrict ourselves henceforth to a case of special interest, namely that with $V$ the vertex-set $\mathbb{Z}^d$ of the $d$-dimensional lattice $L^d$ with $d \geq 1$ and with $p_{x,y} = p(x-y)$ for some function $p$. In the special case of a symmetric random walk, where

$$(10.10) \quad p(z) = \frac{1}{2d}, \quad \text{for } z \sim 0,$$

we have that $\eta(x)$ flips at a rate equal to the proportion of neighbours of $x$ whose states disagree with the current value $\eta(x)$. The case of general $P$ is treated in [206].

Let $X_t$ and $Y_t$ be independent random walks on $\mathbb{Z}^d$ with rate-1 exponential holding times and jump distribution $p_{x,y} = p(y-x)$. The difference $X_t - Y_t$ is a Markov chain also. If $X_t - Y_t$ is recurrent, we say that we are in the recurrent case, otherwise the transient case. The analysis of the voter model is fairly simple in the recurrent case.
10.11 Theorem Assume we are in the recurrent case.
(a) $\mathcal{E} = \{\delta_0, \delta_1\}$.
(b) If $\mu$ is a probability measure on $\Sigma$ with $\mu(\eta(x) = 1) = \alpha$ for all $x \in \mathbb{Z}^d$, then $\mu S_t \Rightarrow (1 - \alpha)\delta_0 + \alpha\delta_1$ as $t \to \infty$.

The situation is quite different in the transient case. We may construct a family of distinct invariant measures $\nu_\alpha$ indexed by $\alpha \in [0, 1]$, and we do this as follows. Let $\phi_\alpha$ be product measure on $\Sigma$ with density $\alpha$. We shall show the existence of the weak limits $\nu_\alpha = \lim_{t \to \infty} \phi_\alpha S_t$, and it turns out that the $\nu_\alpha$ are exactly the extremal invariant measures. A partial proof of the next theorem is provided below.

10.12 Theorem Assume we are in the transient case.
(a) The weak limits $\nu_\alpha = \lim_{t \to \infty} \phi_\alpha S_t$ exist.
(b) The $\nu_\alpha$ are translation-invariant and ergodic, with density $\nu_\alpha(\eta(x) = 1) = \alpha$, $x \in \mathbb{Z}^d$.
(c) $\mathcal{E} = \{\nu_\alpha : \alpha \in [0, 1]\}$.

We return briefly to the voter model corresponding to a symmetric random walk on $\mathbb{Z}^d$; see (10.10). It is an elementary consequence of Pólya’s theorem, Theorem 1.32, that we are in the recurrent case if and only $d \leq 2$.

Proof of Theorem 10.11. By assumption, we are in the recurrent case. Let $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}^d$. By duality and recurrence,
\begin{equation}
P(\eta_t(x) \neq \eta_t(y)) \leq P(X_x(u) \neq X_y(u) \text{ for } 0 \leq u \leq t) \to 0 \text{ as } t \to \infty.
\end{equation}
For $A \in \mathcal{E}$, $A \neq \emptyset$,
\begin{equation}
P(\eta_t \text{ is non-constant on } A) \leq P^A(|A_t| > 1),
\end{equation}
and, by (10.13),
\begin{equation}
P^A(|A_t| > 1) \leq \sum_{x, y \in A} P(X_x(u) \neq X_y(u) \text{ for } 0 \leq u \leq t) \to 0 \text{ as } t \to \infty.
\end{equation}
It follows that, for any invariant measure $\mu$, the $\mu$-measure of the set of constant configurations is 1. Only the convex combinations of $\delta_0$ and $\delta_1$ have this property.

\textit{2} A probability measure $\mu$ on $\Sigma$ is ergodic if any shift-invariant event has $\mu$-probability either 0 or 1. It is standard that the ergodic measures are extremal within the class of translation-invariant measures; see [115] for example.
Let $\mu$ be a probability measure with density $\alpha$, as in the statement of the theorem, and let $A \in \mathcal{A}, A \neq \emptyset$. By Theorem 10.9,

\[
\mu_S \left( \{ \eta : \eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A \} \right) = \int \mathbb{P}^\eta (\eta_t \equiv 1 \text{ on } A) \mu(d\eta) \\
= \int \mathbb{P}^A (\eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A_t) \mu(d\eta) \\
= \int \mathbb{P}^A (\eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A_t, |A_t| > 1) \mu(d\eta) \\
+ \sum_{y \in \mathbb{Z}^d} \mathbb{P}^A (A_t = \{y\}) \mu(\eta(y) = 1),
\]

whence

\[
|\mu_S \left( \{ \eta : \eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A \} \right) - \alpha| \leq 2\mathbb{P}^A (|A_t| > 1).
\]

By (10.14), $\mu_S \Rightarrow (1 - \alpha)\delta_0 + \alpha \delta_1$ as claimed.

**Partial proof of Theorem 10.12.** For $A \in \mathcal{A}, A \neq \emptyset$, we have by Theorem 10.9 that

(10.15) \[ \phi_\alpha S_t (\eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A) = \int \mathbb{P}^\eta (\eta_t \equiv 1 \text{ on } A) \phi_\alpha (d\eta) \]

\[ = \int \mathbb{P}^A (\eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A_t) \phi_\alpha (d\eta) \]

\[ = \mathbb{E}^{\alpha |A_t|}. \]

The quantity $|A_t|$ is non-increasing in $t$, whence the last expectation converges as $t \to \infty$, by the monotone convergence theorem. Using the inclusion–exclusion principle (as in Exercises 2.2 and 2.3), we deduce that the $\mu_S_t$-measure of any cylinder event has a limit, and therefore the weak limit $\nu_\alpha$ exists (see the discussion of weak convergence in Section 2.3). Since the initial state $\phi_\alpha$ is translation-invariant, so is $\nu_\alpha$. We omit the proof of ergodicity, which may be found in [206, 209]. By (10.15) with $A = \{x\}$, $\phi_\alpha S_t (\eta(x) = 1) = \alpha$ for all $t$, so that $\nu_\alpha (\eta(x) = 1) = \alpha$.

It may be shown that the set $\mathcal{I}$ of invariant measures is exactly the convex hull of the set $\{\nu_\alpha : \alpha \in [0, 1]\}$. The proof of this is omitted, and may be found in [206, 209]. Since the $\nu_\alpha$ are ergodic, they are extremal within the class of translation-invariant measures, whence $\mathcal{I}_\alpha = \{\nu_\alpha : \alpha \in [0, 1]\}$. \qed
10.4 Exclusion Model

In this model for a lattice gas, particles jump around the countable set \( V \), subject to the excluded-volume constraint that no more than one particle may occupy any given vertex at any given time. The state space is \( \Sigma = \{0, 1\}^V \), where the local state 1 represents occupancy by a particle. The dynamics are assumed to proceed as follows. Let \( P = (p_{x,y} : x, y \in V) \) be the transition matrix of a Markov chain on \( V \). In order to guarantee the existence of the corresponding exclusion process, we shall assume that

\[
\sup_{y \in V} \sum_{x \in V} p_{x,y} < \infty.
\]

If the current state is \( \eta \in \Sigma \), and \( \eta(x) = 1 \), the particle at \( x \) waits a time that is exponentially distributed with parameter 1 before it attempts to jump. At the end of this holding time, it chooses a vertex \( y \) according to the probabilities \( p_{x,y} \). If, at this instant, \( y \) is empty, then this particle jumps to \( y \). If \( y \) is occupied, the jump is suppressed and the particle remains at \( x \). Particles are deemed to be indistinguishable.

The generator \( \mathcal{L} \) of the Markov process is given by

\[
\mathcal{L} f(\eta) = \sum_{x, y \in V; \eta(x)=1, \eta(y)=0} p_{x,y} [f(\eta_{x,y}) - f(\eta)],
\]

for cylinder functions \( f \), where \( \eta_{x,y} \) is the state obtained from \( \eta \) by interchanging the local states of \( x \) and \( y \), that is,

\[
\eta_{x,y}(z) = \begin{cases} 
\eta(x) & \text{if } z = y, \\
\eta(y) & \text{if } z = x, \\
\eta(z) & \text{otherwise.}
\end{cases}
\]

We may construct the process via a graphical representation, as in Section 10.3. For each \( x \in V \), we let \( P_0x \) be a Poisson process with rate 1; this gives the times at which a particle at \( x \) (if, indeed, \( x \) is occupied at the relevant time) attempts to move away from \( x \). With each ‘time’ \( T \in P_0x \), we associate a vertex \( Y \) chosen according to the mass function \( p_{x,y}, y \in V \). If \( x \) is occupied by a particle at time \( T \), this particle attempts to jump at this instant of time to the new position \( Y \). The jump is successful if \( Y \) is empty at time \( T \), otherwise the move is suppressed.

It is immediate that the two Dirac measures \( \delta_0 \) and \( \delta_1 \) are invariant. We shall see below that the family of invariant measures is generally much richer than this. The theory is substantially simpler in the symmetric case, and thus we assume henceforth that

\[
p_{x,y} = p_{y,x}, \quad x, y \in V.
\]
See [206, Chap. VIII] and [209] for bibliographies for the asymmetric case. If \( V \) is the vertex-set of a graph \( G = (V, E) \), and \( P \) is the transition matrix of symmetric random walk on \( G \), then (10.17) amounts to the assumption that \( G \) is regular.

Mention is made next of the totally asymmetric simple exclusion process (TASEP), namely the exclusion process on the line \( L \) in which particles may move only in a given direction, say to the right. This apparently simple model has attracted a great deal of attention, and the reader is referred to [105] and the references therein.

We shall see that the exclusion process is self-dual, in the sense of the forthcoming Theorem 10.18. Note first that the graphical representation of a symmetric model may be expressed in a slightly simplified manner. For each unordered pair \( x, y \in V \), let \( P_{x,y} \) be a Poisson process with intensity \( p_{x,y} \). For each \( T \in \text{Po}_{x,y} \), we interchange the states of \( x \) and \( y \) at time \( T \). That is, any particle at \( x \) moves to \( y \), and vice versa. It is easily seen that the corresponding particle system is the exclusion model. For every \( x \in V \), a particle at \( x \) at time 0 would pursue a trajectory through \( V \) that is determined by the graphical representation, and we denote this trajectory by \( R_x(t), t \geq 0 \), noting that \( R_x(0) = x \). The processes \( R_x(t) \), \( x \in V \), are of course dependent.

The family \( (R_x(\cdot) : x \in V) \) is time-reversible in the following ‘strong’ sense. Let \( t > 0 \) be given. For each \( y \in V \), we may trace the trajectory arriving at \( (y, t) \) backwards in time, and we denote the resulting path by \( B_y(t,s), 0 \leq s \leq t, \) with \( B_y(t,0) = y \). It is clear by the properties of a Poisson process that the families \( (R_x(u) : u \in [0, t], x \in V) \) and \( (B_y(t,s) : s \in [0, t], y \in V) \) have the same laws.

Let \( (\eta_t : t \geq 0) \) denote the exclusion model. We distinguish the general model from one possessing only finitely many particles. Let \( \mathcal{S} \) be the set of finite subsets of \( V \), and write \( (A_t : t \geq 0) \) for an exclusion process with initial state \( A_0 \in \mathcal{S} \). We think of \( \eta_t \) as a random 0/1 vector, and of \( A_t \) as a random subset of the vertex-set \( V \).

**10.18 Theorem** Consider a symmetric exclusion model on \( V \). For every \( \eta \in \Sigma \) and \( A \in \mathcal{S} \),

\[
(10.19) \quad \mathbb{P}^\eta(\eta_t = 1 \text{ on } A) = \mathbb{P}^A(\eta_{A_t} = 1), \quad t \geq 0.
\]

**Proof.** The left side of (10.19) equals the probability that, in the graphical representation: for every \( y \in A \), there exists \( x \in V \) with \( \eta(x) = 1 \) such that \( R_x(t) = y \). By the remarks above, this equals the probability that \( \eta(R_x(t)) = 1 \) for every \( y \in A \). \( \square \)
10.20 Corollary Consider a symmetric exclusion model on $V$. For each $\alpha \in [0, 1]$, the product measure $\phi_\alpha$ on $\Sigma$ is invariant.

Proof. Let $\eta$ be sampled from $\Sigma$ according to the product measure $\phi_\alpha$. We have that

$$P^A(\eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A_t) = \mathbb{E}(\alpha^{|A_t|}) = \alpha^{|A_t|},$$

since $|A_t| = |A|$. By Theorem 10.18, if $\eta_0$ has law $\phi_\alpha$, then so does $\eta_t$ for all $t$. That is, $\phi_\alpha$ is an invariant measure. \qed

The question thus arises of determining the circumstances under which the set of invariant extremal measures is exactly the set of product measures. Assume for simplicity that

(i) $V = \mathbb{Z}^d$,

(ii) the transition probabilities are symmetric and translation-invariant, in that

$$p_{x,y} = p_{y,x} = p(y-x), \quad x, y \in \mathbb{Z}^d,$$

for some function $p$, and

(iii) the Markov chain with transition matrix $P = (p_{x,y})$ is irreducible.

It can be shown in this case (see [206, 209]) that $I_e = \{\phi_\alpha : \alpha \in [0, 1]\}$, and that

$$\mu S_t \Rightarrow \phi_\alpha \quad \text{as } t \to \infty,$$

for any translation-invariant and spatially ergodic probability measure $\mu$ with $\mu(\eta(0) = 1) = \alpha$.

In the more general symmetric non-translation-invariant case on an arbitrary countable set $V$, the constants $\alpha$ are replaced by the set $\mathcal{H}$ of functions $\alpha : V \to [0, 1]$ satisfying

$$(10.21) \quad \alpha(x) = \sum_{y \in V} p_{x,y} \alpha(y), \quad x \in V,$$

that is, the bounded harmonic functions, re-scaled if necessary to take values in $[0, 1]$.\footnote{An irreducible symmetric translation-invariant Markov chain on $\mathbb{Z}^d$ has only \textit{constant} bounded harmonic functions. \textit{Exercise}: Prove this statement. It is an easy consequence of the optional stopping theorem for bounded martingales whenever the chain is recurrent. See [206, pp. 67–70] for a discussion of the general case.}

Let $\mu_\alpha$ be the product measure on $\Sigma$ with $\mu_\alpha(\eta(x) = 1) = \alpha(x)$. It turns out that the weak limit

$$\nu_\alpha = \lim_{t \to \infty} \mu_\alpha S_t$$

exists, and that $I_e = \{\nu_\alpha : \alpha \in \mathcal{H}\}$. It may be shown that $\nu_\alpha$ is a product measure if and only if $\alpha$ is a constant function. See [206, 209].
We may find examples for which the set $\mathcal{H}$ is large. Let $P = (p_{x,y})$ be the transition matrix of a symmetric random walk on a binary tree $T$ (each of whose vertices has degree 3; see Figure 6.3). Let 0 be a given vertex of the tree, and think of 0 as the root of three disjoint sub-trees of $T$. Any solution $(a_n : n \geq 0)$ to the difference equation

$$2a_{n+1} - 3a_n + a_{n-1} = 0, \quad n \geq 1,$$

defines a harmonic function $\alpha$ on a given such sub-tree, by $\alpha(x) = a_n$, where $n$ is the distance between 0 and $x$. The general solution to (10.22) is

$$a_n = A + B \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n,$$

where $A$ and $B$ are arbitrary constants. The three pairs $(A, B)$ corresponding to the three sub-trees at 0 may be chosen in an arbitrary manner, subject to the condition that $a_0 = A + B$ is constant across sub-trees. Furthermore, the composite harmonic function on $T$ takes values in $[0, 1]$ if and only if each pair $(A, B)$ satisfies $A, A + B \in [0, 1]$. Thus there exists a continuum of admissible non-constant solutions to (10.21), and therefore a continuum of extremal invariant measures of the associated exclusion model.

### 10.5 Stochastic Ising Model

The Ising model is designed as a model of the ‘local’ interactions of a ferromagnet: each neighbouring pair $x, y$ of vertices have spins contributing $-\sigma_x \sigma_y$ to the energy of the spin-configuration $\sigma$. The model is static in time. Physical systems tend to evolve as time passes, however, and we are thus led to the study of stochastic processes having the Ising model as invariant measure. It is normal to consider Markovian models for time evolution, and this section contains a very brief summary of some of these. The theory of the dynamics of spin models is very rich, and the reader is referred to [206] and [217, 225, 257] for further introductory accounts.

Let $G = (V, E)$ be a finite connected graph (infinite graphs are not considered here). As explained in Section 10.1, a Markov chain on $\Sigma = \{-1, 1\}^V$ is specified by way of its generator $\mathcal{L}$, acting on suitable functions $f$ by

$$\mathcal{L}f(\sigma) = \sum_{\sigma' \in \Sigma} c(\sigma, \sigma') [f(\sigma') - f(\sigma)], \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,$$

for some function $c$ sometimes called the ‘rate (or speed) function’. For $\sigma \neq \sigma'$, we think of $c(\sigma, \sigma')$ as being the rate at which the process jumps to state $\sigma'$ when currently in state $\sigma$. Equation (10.23) places no restriction on the diagonal terms $c(\sigma, \sigma)$, and we choose these such that

$$\sum_{\sigma' \in \Sigma} c(\sigma, \sigma') = 0, \quad \sigma \in \Sigma.$$
The state space \( \Sigma \) is finite, and thus there is a minimum of technical complication. The probability measure \( \mu \) is invariant for the process if and only if \( \mu \mathcal{L} = 0 \), which is to say that
\[
(10.24) \quad \sum_{\sigma \in \Sigma} \mu(\sigma)c(\sigma, \sigma') = 0, \quad \sigma' \in \Sigma.
\]
The process is reversible with respect to \( \mu \) if and only if the ‘detailed balance equations’
\[
(10.25) \quad \mu(\sigma)c(\sigma, \sigma') = \mu(\sigma')c(\sigma', \sigma), \quad \sigma, \sigma' \in \Sigma,
\]
hold, in which case \( \mu \) is automatically invariant.

Let \( \pi \) be the Ising measure on the spin-space \( \Sigma \) satisfying
\[
(10.26) \quad \pi(\sigma) \propto e^{-\beta H(\sigma)}, \quad \sigma \in \Sigma,
\]
where \( \beta > 0 \),
\[
H(\sigma) = -h \sum_{x \in V} \sigma_x - \sum_{x \sim y} \sigma_x \sigma_y,
\]
and the second summation is over unordered pairs of neighbours. We shall consider Markov processes having \( \pi \) as reversible invariant measure. Many possible choices for the speed function \( c \) are possible in (10.25), of which we mention four below.

First, some notation: for \( \sigma \in \Sigma \) and \( x, y \in V \), the configuration \( \sigma_x \) is obtained from \( \sigma \) by replacing the state \( \sigma(x) \) of \( x \) by \( -\sigma(x) \) (see (10.6)), and \( \sigma_{x,y} \) is obtained by swapping the states of \( x \) and \( y \) (see (10.16)). The process is said to proceed by spin-flips if \( c(\sigma, \sigma') = 0 \) except possibly for pairs \( \sigma, \sigma' \) that differ on at most one vertex; it proceeds by spin-swaps if (for \( \sigma \neq \sigma' \)) \( c(\sigma, \sigma') = 0 \) except when \( \sigma' = \sigma_{x,y} \) for some \( x, y \in V \).

Here are four rate functions that have attracted much attention, presented in a manner that emphasizes their applicability to other Gibbs systems. It is easily checked that each is reversible with respect to \( \pi \).\(^4\)

1. Metropolis dynamics. A spin-flip process with
\[
c(\sigma, \sigma_x) = \min\left\{ 1, \exp(-\beta[H(\sigma_x) - H(\sigma)]) \right\}.
\]
2. Heat-bath dynamics/Gibbs sampler. A spin-flip process with
\[
c(\sigma, \sigma_x) = \left[ 1 + \exp(\beta[H(\sigma_x) - H(\sigma)]) \right]^{-1}.
\]
This arises as follows. At the times of a rate-1 Poisson process, the state at \( x \) is replaced by a state chosen at random with the conditional law given \( \sigma(y), y \neq x \).

\(^4\)This is Exercise 10.3.
3. **Simple spin-flip dynamics.** A spin-flip process with

\[ c(\sigma, \sigma_x) = \exp(-\frac{1}{\beta}[H(\sigma_x) - H(\sigma)]). \]

4. **Kawasaki dynamics.** A spin-swap process with speed function satisfying

\[ c(\sigma, \sigma_{x,y}) = \exp(-\frac{1}{\beta}[H(\sigma_{x,y}) - H(\sigma)]). \]

The first three have much in common. In the fourth, Kawasaki dynamics, the ‘total magnetization’ \( M = \sum_x \sigma(x) \) is conserved. This conservation law causes complications in the analysis.

Examples 1–3 are of so-called Glauber type, after Glauber’s work on the one-dimensional Ising model, [119]. The term ‘Glauber dynamics’ is used in several ways in the literature, but it may be taken to be a spin-flip process with positive, translation-invariant, finite-range rate function satisfying the detailed balance condition (10.25).

The above dynamics are ‘local’ in that a transition affects the states of singletons or of neighbouring pairs. There is another process called ‘Swendsen–Wang dynamics’, [273], in which transitions are more extensive. Let \( \pi \) denote the Ising measure (10.26) with \( h = 0 \). The random-cluster model corresponding to the Ising model with \( h = 0 \) has state space \( \Omega = \{0, 1\}^E \) and parameters \( p = 1 - e^{-2\beta} \), \( q = 1 \). Each step of the Swendsen–Wang evolution actually comprises two steps: sampling a random-cluster state, followed by resampling a spin configuration. This is made more explicit as follows. Suppose that, at time \( n \), we have obtained a configuration \( \sigma_n \in \Sigma \). We construct \( \sigma_{n+1} \) as follows.

I. Let \( \omega_n \in \Omega \) be given by, for all \( e = (x, y) \in E \),

- if \( \sigma_n(x) \neq \sigma_n(y) \), let \( \omega_n(e) = 0 \),
- if \( \sigma_n(x) = \sigma_n(y) \), let \( \omega_n(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{with probability } p, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \)

different edges receiving independent states. The edge-configuration \( \omega_n \) is carried forward to the next stage.

II. To each cluster \( C \) of the graph \( (V, \eta(\omega_n)) \) we assign an integer chosen uniformly at random from the set \( \{1, 2, \ldots, q\} \), different clusters receiving independent labels. Let \( \sigma_{n+1}(x) \) be the value thus assigned to the cluster containing the vertex \( x \).

It may be shown that the unique invariant measure of the Markov chain \( (\sigma_n : n \geq 1) \) is indeed the Ising measure \( \pi \). See [130, Sect. 8.5]. Transitions in the Swendsen–Wang algorithm move from a configuration \( \sigma \) to a configuration \( \sigma' \) which is usually very different from \( \sigma \). Thus, in general,
we expect the Swendsen–Wang process to converge faster to equilibrium than the local dynamics given above.

The basic questions for stochastic Ising models concern the rate at which a process converges to its invariant measure, and the manner in which this depends on: (i) the size and topology of $G$; (ii) any boundary condition that is imposed; and (iii) the values of the external field $h$ and the inverse temperature $\beta$. Two ways of quantifying the rate of convergence are via the so-called ‘mixing time’ and via the ‘relaxation time’ of the process. The following discussion is based in part on [19, 204].

Consider a continuous-time Markov process with unique invariant measure $\mu$. The mixing time is given as

$$\tau_1 = \inf \left\{ t : \sup_{\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in \Sigma} d_{TV}(\mathbb{P}_t^{\sigma_1}, \mathbb{P}_t^{\sigma_2}) \leq e^{-t} \right\},$$

where

$$d_{TV}(\mu_1, \mu_2) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\sigma \in \Sigma} |\mu_1(\sigma) - \mu_2(\sigma)|$$

is the total variation distance between two probability measures on $\Sigma$, and $\mathbb{P}_t^{\sigma}$ denotes the law of the process at time $t$ having started in state $\sigma$ at time $0$.

Write the eigenvalues of the negative generator $-\mathcal{L}$ as

$$0 = \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_N.$$

The relaxation time $\tau_2$ of the process is defined as the reciprocal of the ‘spectral gap’ $\lambda_2$. It is a general result that

$$\tau_2 \leq \tau_1 \leq \tau_2 \left( 1 + \log 1 / \min_{\sigma} \mu(\sigma) \right),$$

so that $\tau_2 \leq \tau_1 \leq O(|E|) \tau_2$ for the stochastic Ising model on the connected graph $G = (V, E)$. That is, mixing and relaxation times have equivalent orders of magnitude, up to the factor $O(|E|)$.

No attempt is made here to summarize the very substantial literature on the convergence of Ising models to their equilibria, for which the reader is directed to [225, 257] and more recent works including [217]. Of current interest is the so-called ‘cut-off’ phenomenon, as follows. It has been observed for certain families of Markov chain that the total variation $d(t) = d_{TV}(\mathbb{P}_t, \mu)$ has a threshold behaviour: there is a sharp threshold between values of $t$ for which $d(t) \approx 1$ and values for which $d(t) \approx 0$. The relationship between mixing/relaxation times and the cut-off phenomenon is not yet fully understood, but it has been studied successfully by Lubetzky and Sly [218, 219] for Glauber dynamics of the high-temperature Ising model in all dimensions.
10.6 Exercises

10.1 [285] Biased voter model. Each point of the square lattice is occupied, at each time $t$, by either a benign or a malignant cell. Benign cells invade their neighbours, each neighbour being invaded at rate $\beta$, and similarly malignant cells invade their neighbours at rate $\mu$. Suppose there is exactly one malignant cell at time 0, and let $\kappa = \mu/\beta \geq 1$. Show that the malignant cells die out with probability $\kappa^{-1}$.

More generally, what happens on $\mathbb{L}^d$ with $d \geq 2$?

10.2 Exchangeability. A probability measure $\mu$ on $\{0, 1\}^\mathbb{Z}$ is called exchangeable if the quantity $\mu(\{\eta : \eta \equiv 1 \text{ on } A\})$, as $A$ ranges over the set of finite subsets of $\mathbb{Z}$, depends only on the cardinality of $A$. Show that every exchangeable measure $\mu$ is invariant for a symmetric exclusion model on $\mathbb{Z}$.

10.3 Stochastic Ising model. Let $\Sigma = \{-1, +1\}^V$ be the state space of a Markov process on the finite graph $G = (V, E)$ which proceeds by spin-flips. The state at $x \in V$ changes value at rate $c(x, \sigma)$ when the state overall is $\sigma$. Show that each of the rate functions

$$c_1(x, \sigma) = \min \left\{ 1, \exp\left( -2\beta \sum_{y \in \partial x} \sigma_x \sigma_y \right) \right\},$$

$$c_2(x, \sigma) = \frac{1}{1 + \exp\left( 2\beta \sum_{y \in \partial x} \sigma_x \sigma_y \right)},$$

$$c_3(x, \sigma) = \exp\left( -\beta \sum_{y \in \partial x} \sigma_x \sigma_y \right)$$

gives rise to reversible dynamics with respect to the Ising measure with zero external field. Here, $\partial x$ denotes the set of neighbours of the vertex $x$. 
Random Graphs

In the Erdős–Rényi random graph $G_{n,p}$, each pair of vertices is connected by an edge with probability $p$. We describe the emergence of the giant component when $pn \approx 1$, and identify the density of this component as the survival probability of a Poisson branching process. The Hoeffding inequality may be used to show that, for constant $p$, the chromatic number of $G_{n,p}$ is asymptotic to $\frac{1}{2n} \log \pi n$, where $\pi = \frac{1}{1 - p}$.

11.1 Erdős–Rényi Graphs

Let $V = \{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$, and let $(X_{i,j} : 1 \leq i < j \leq n)$ be independent Bernoulli random variables with parameter $p$. For each pair $i < j$, we place an edge $(i, j)$ between vertices $i$ and $j$ if and only if $X_{i,j} = 1$. The resulting random graph is named after Erdős and Rényi [101], and it is commonly denoted $G_{n,p}$. The density $p$ of edges is permitted to vary with $n$ (for example, $p = \frac{\lambda}{n}$ with $\lambda$ constant), and one commonly considers the structure of $G_{n,p}$ in the limit $n \to \infty$.

The original motivation for studying $G_{n,p}$ was to understand the properties of ‘typical’ graphs. This is in contrast with the study of ‘extremal’ graphs, although it may be noted that random graphs have on occasion manifested properties more extreme than graphs obtained by more constructive means.

Random graphs have proved an important tool in the study of the ‘typical’ run-time of algorithms. Consider a computational problem associated with graphs, such as the travelling salesman problem. In assessing the speed of an algorithm for this problem we may find that, in the worst situation, the algorithm is very slow. On the other hand, the typical run-time may be much less than the worst-case run-time. The measurement of ‘typical’ run-time requires a probability measure on the space of graphs, and it is in this regard that $G_{n,p}$ has risen to prominence within this subfield of theoretical

\[^1\text{See also [117].}\]
computer science. While $G_{n,p}$ is, in a sense, the obvious candidate for such a probability measure, it suffers from the weakness that the ‘mother graph’ $K_n$ has a large automorphism group; it is a poor candidate in situations in which pairs of vertices may have differing relationships to one another.

The random graph $G_{n,p}$ has received a very great deal of attention, largely within the community working on probabilistic combinatorics. The theory is based on a mix of combinatorial and probabilistic techniques and has become very refined.

We may think of $G_{n,p}$ as a percolation model on the complete graph $K_n$. The parallel with percolation is weak in the sense that the theory of $G_{n,p}$ is largely combinatorial rather than geometrical. There is however a sense in which random graph theory has enriched percolation. The major difficulty in the study of physical systems arises out of the geometry of $\mathbb{R}^d$; points are related to one another in ways that depend greatly on their relative positions in $\mathbb{R}^d$. In a so-called ‘mean-field theory’, the geometrical component is removed through the assumption that points interact with all other points equally. Mean-field theory leads to an approximate picture of the model in question, and this approximation improves in the limit $d \to \infty$. The Erdős–Rényi random graph may be seen as a mean-field approximation to percolation. Mean-field models based on $G_{n,p}$ have proved of value for Ising and Potts models also; see [52, 288].

This chapter contains brief introductions to two areas of random-graph theory, each of which uses probability theory in a special way. The first is an analysis of the emergence of the so-called giant component in $G_{n,p}$, with $p = \lambda/n$, as the parameter $\lambda$ passes through the value $\lambda_c = 1$. Of the several possible ways of doing this, we emphasize here the relevance of arguments from branching processes. The second area considered here is a study of the chromatic number of $G_{n,p}$, as $n \to \infty$ with constant $p$. This classical problem was solved by Bollobás [49] using Hoeffding’s inequality for the tail of a martingale, Theorem 4.21.

The two principal references for the theory of $G_{n,p}$ are the earlier book [51] by Bollobás, and the more recent work [176] of Janson, Łuczak and Ruciński. We say nothing here about recent developments in random-graph theory involving models for the so-called small world; see [98, 169] for example.
11.2 Giant Component

Consider the random graph $G_{n,p}$ with $p = \lambda/n$, where $\lambda \in (0, \infty)$ is a constant. We build the component at a given vertex $v$ as follows. The vertex $v$ is adjacent to a certain number $N$ of vertices, where $N$ has the $\text{bin}(n - 1, \lambda/n)$ distribution. Each of these vertices is in turn joined to a random number of vertices, distributed approximately as $N$; with probability $1 - o(1)$, these new vertex-sets are disjoint. Since the binomial distribution $\text{bin}(n - 1, \lambda/n)$ is ‘nearly’ the Poisson distribution $\text{Po}(\lambda)$, the component at $v$ grows very much like a branching process with family-size distribution $\text{Po}(\lambda)$. The branching-process approximation becomes less good as the component grows, and in particular when its size becomes of order $n$. The mean family-size equals $\lambda$, and thus the process with $\lambda < 1$ is very different from that with $\lambda > 1$.

Suppose that $\lambda < 1$. In this case, the branching process is (almost surely) extinct, and possesses a finite number of vertices. With high probability, the size of the growing cluster at $v$ is sufficiently small (in the limit $n \to \infty$) to be well approximated by a $\text{Po}(\lambda)$ branching process. Having built the component at $v$, we pick another vertex $w$ and act similarly. By iteration, we obtain that $G_{n,p}$ is the union of clusters each with exponentially decaying tail. The largest component has order $\log n$.

When $\lambda > 1$, the branching process grows to infinity with strictly positive probability. This corresponds to the existence in $G_{n,p}$ of a component having size of order $n$. We make this more formal as follows. Let $X_n$ be the number of vertices in a largest component of $G_{n,p}$. We write $Z_n = o_p(y_n)$ if $Z_n/y_n \to 0$ in probability as $n \to \infty$. An event $A_n$ is said to occur asymptotically almost surely (abbreviated as a.a.s.) if $\Pr(A_n) \to 1$ as $n \to \infty$.

11.1 Theorem [101] We have that

$$\frac{1}{n} X_n = \begin{cases} o_p(1) & \text{if } \lambda \leq 1, \\ \alpha(\lambda)(1 + o_p(1)) & \text{if } \lambda > 1, \end{cases}$$

where $\alpha(\lambda)$ is the survival probability of a branching process with a single progenitor and family-size distribution $\text{Po}(\lambda)$.

It is standard (see [148, Sect. 5.4], for example) that the extinction probability $\eta(\lambda) = 1 - \alpha(\lambda)$ of such a branching process is the smallest non-negative root of the equation $s = G(s)$, where $G(s) = e^{\lambda(s-1)}$. It is left as
an exercise\textsuperscript{2} to check that
\[
\eta(\lambda) = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k^{k-1}}{k!} (\lambda e^{-\lambda})^{k}.
\]

**Proof.** By a coupling argument, the distribution of $X_n$ is non-decreasing in $\lambda$. Since $\alpha(1) = 0$, it suffices to consider the case $\lambda > 1$, and we assume this henceforth. We follow [176, Sect. 5.2], and use a branching-process argument. (See also [22].) Choose a vertex $v$. At the first step, we find all neighbours of $v$, say $v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r$, and we mark $v$ as dead. At the second step, we generate all neighbours of $v_1$ in $V \setminus \{v, v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_r\}$, and we mark $v_1$ as dead. This process is iterated until the entire component of $G_{n,p}$ containing $v$ has been generated. Any vertex thus discovered in the component of $v$, but not yet dead, is said to be live. Step $i$ is said to be complete when there are exactly $i$ dead vertices. The process terminates when there are no live vertices remaining.

Conditional on the history of the process up to and including the $(i-1)$th step, the number $N_i$ of vertices added at step $i$ is distributed as $\text{bin}(n - m, p)$, where $m$ is the number of vertices already generated.

Let
\[
k_- = \frac{16\lambda}{(\lambda - 1)^2} \log n, \quad k_+ = n^{2/3}.
\]

In this section, all logarithms are natural. Consider the above process started at $v$, and let $A_v$ be the event that: either the process terminates after fewer than $k_-$ steps or, for every $k$ satisfying $k_- \leq k \leq k_+$, there are at least $\frac{1}{2}(\lambda - 1)k$ live vertices after step $k$. If $A_v$ does not occur, there exists $\hat{k} \in [k_-, k_+]$ such that: step $\hat{k}$ takes place and, after its completion, fewer in total than
\[
m = k + \frac{1}{2}(\hat{k} - 1)k = \frac{1}{2}(\lambda + 1)k
\]
vertices have been discovered. For simplicity of notation, we assume that $\frac{1}{2}(\lambda + 1)k$ is an integer.

On the event $A_v$, and with such a choice for $k$,
\[
(N_1, N_2, \ldots, N_k) \geq_{st} (Y_1, Y_2, \ldots, Y_k),
\]

\textsuperscript{2}Here is one method that resonates with random graphs. Let $p_k$ be the probability that vertex 1 lies in a component that is a tree of size $k$. By enumerating the possibilities,
\[
p_k = \binom{n-1}{k-1} k^{k-2} \left( \frac{\lambda}{n} \right)^{k-1} \left( 1 - \frac{\lambda}{n} \right)^{k(n-k)+\binom{k}{2}-k+1}.
\]
Simplify and sum over $k$. 


where the $Y_j$ are independent random variables with the binomial distribution \( \text{bin}(n - \frac{1}{2} \lambda + 1)k, p) \). Therefore,

\[
1 - P(A_v) \leq \sum_{k=k_-}^{k_+} \pi_k,
\]

where

\[
(11.2) \quad \pi_k = P\left( \sum_{i=1}^{k} Y_i \leq \frac{1}{2} (\lambda + 1)k \right).
\]

Now, $Y_1 + Y_2 + \cdots + Y_k$ has the binomial distribution \( \text{bin}(k(n - \frac{1}{2} (\lambda + 1)k), p) \). By the Chernoff bound for the tail of the binomial distribution, for $k_- \leq k \leq k_+$ and large $n$,

\[
\pi_k \leq \exp\left(-\frac{(\lambda - 1)^2 k^2}{9\lambda k}\right) \leq \exp\left(-\frac{(\lambda - 1)^2}{9\lambda} k\right) = O(n^{-16/9}).
\]

Therefore, $1 - P(A_v) \leq k_+ O(n^{-16/9}) = o(n^{-1})$, and this proves that

\[
P\left( \bigcap_{v \in V} A_v \right) \geq 1 - \sum_{v \in V} [1 - P(A_v)] \to 1 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.
\]

In particular, a.a.s., no component of $G_{n, \lambda/n}$ has size between $k_-$ and $k_+$.

We show next that, a.a.s., there do not exist more than two components with size exceeding $k_+$. Assume that the event $\bigcap_v A_v$ occurs, and let $v', v''$ be distinct vertices lying in components with size exceeding $k_+$. We run the above process beginning at $v'$ for the first $k_+$ steps, and we finish with a set $L'$ containing at least $\frac{1}{2} (\lambda - 1) k_+$ live vertices. We do the same for the process from $v''$. Either the growing component at $v''$ intersects the current component $v'$ by step $k_+$, or it does not. If the latter, then we finish with a set $L''$ containing at least $\frac{1}{2} (\lambda - 1) k_+$ live vertices and disjoint from $L'$. The chance (conditional on arriving at this stage) that there exists no edge between $L'$ and $L''$ is bounded above by

\[
(1 - p)^{\frac{1}{2} (\lambda - 1) k_+} \leq \exp\left(-\frac{1}{4} \lambda (\lambda - 1)^2 n^{1/3}\right) = o(n^{-2}).
\]

Therefore, the probability that there exist two distinct vertices belonging to distinct components of size exceeding $k_+$ is no greater than

\[
1 - P\left( \bigcap_{v \in V} A_v \right) + n^2 o(n^{-2}) = o(1).
\]

3Here and later, we occasionally use fractions where integers are required.

4See Exercise 11.3.
In summary, a.a.s., every component is either ‘small’ (smaller than $k_-$) or ‘large’ (larger than $k_+$), and there can be no more than one large component. In order to estimate the size of any such large component, we use Chebyshev’s inequality to estimate the aggregate sizes of the small components. Let $v \in V$. The chance $\sigma = \sigma(n, p)$ that $v$ is in a small component satisfies
\begin{equation}
\eta_- - o(1) \leq \sigma \leq \eta_+,
\end{equation}
where $\eta_+$ (respectively, $\eta_-$) is the extinction probability of a branching process with family-size distribution $\text{bin}(n - k_-, p)$ (respectively, $\text{bin}(n, p)$), and the $o(1)$ term bounds the probability that the latter branching process terminates after $k_-$ or more steps. It is an easy exercise\(^5\) to show that $\eta_-, \eta_+ \rightarrow \eta$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, where $\eta(\lambda) = 1 - \alpha(\lambda)$ is the extinction probability of a Po$(\lambda)$ branching process.

The number $S$ of vertices in small components satisfies
\begin{equation}
E(S) = \sigma n = (1 + o(1))\eta n.
\end{equation}
Furthermore, by an argument similar to that above,
\begin{equation}
E(S(S - 1)) \leq n\sigma [k_- + n\sigma (n - k_-, p)] = (1 + o(1))(E S)^2,
\end{equation}
whence, by Chebyshev’s inequality, $G_{n, p}$ possesses $(\eta + o_p(1))n$ vertices in small components. This leaves just $n - (\eta + o_p(1))n = (\alpha + o_p(1))n$ vertices remaining for the large component, and the theorem is proved. \hfill \Box

A further analysis yields the size $X_n$ of the largest subcritical component and the size $Y_n$ of the second largest supercritical component.

11.4 Theorem
(a) When $\lambda < 1$,
\begin{equation}
X_n = (1 + o_p(1))\frac{\log n}{\lambda - 1 - \log \lambda}.
\end{equation}
(b) When $\lambda > 1$,
\begin{equation}
Y_n = (1 + o_p(1))\frac{\log n}{\lambda' - 1 - \log \lambda'},
\end{equation}
where $\lambda' = \lambda(1 - \alpha(\lambda))$.

If $\lambda > 1$, and we remove the largest component, we are left with a random graph on $n - X_n \sim n(1 - \alpha(\lambda))$ vertices. The mean vertex-degree of this subgraph is approximately
\begin{equation}
\frac{\lambda}{n} \times n(1 - \alpha(\lambda)) = \lambda(1 - \alpha(\lambda)) = \lambda'.
\end{equation}

\(^5\)See Exercise 11.2.
11.3 Giant Component

It may be checked that this is strictly smaller than 1, implying that the remaining subgraph behaves as a subcritical random graph on \( n - X_n \) vertices. Theorem 11.4(b) now follows from part (a).

The picture is more interesting when \( \lambda \approx 1 \), for which there is a detailed combinatorial study in [175]. Rather than describing this here, we deviate to the work of David Aldous [17], who demonstrated a link, via the multiplicative coalescent, to Brownian motion. We set

\[ p = \frac{1}{n} + \frac{t}{n^{4/3}}, \]

where \( t \in \mathbb{R} \), and we write \( C^t_n(1) \geq C^t_n(2) \geq \cdots \) for the component sizes of \( G_{n,p} \) in decreasing order. We shall explore the weak limit (as \( n \to \infty \)) of the sequence \( n^{-2/3}(C^t_n(1), C^t_n(2), \ldots) \).

Let \( W = (W(s) : s \geq 0) \) be a standard Brownian motion, and

\[ W^t(s) = W(s) + ts - \frac{1}{2}s^2, \quad s \geq 0, \]

a Brownian motion with drift \( t - s \) at time \( s \). Write

\[ B^t(s) = W^t(s) - \inf_{0 \leq s' \leq s} W^t(s'), \]

for a reflecting inhomogenous Brownian motion with drift.

11.5 Theorem [17] As \( n \to \infty \),

\[ n^{-2/3}(C^t_n(1), C^t_n(2), \ldots) \Rightarrow (C^t(1), C^t(2), \ldots), \]

where \( C^t(j) \) is the length of the \( j \)th largest excursion of \( B^t \).

We think of the sequences of Theorem 11.5 as being chosen at random from the space of decreasing non-negative sequences \( x = (x_1, x_2, \ldots) \), with metric

\[ d(x, y) = \sqrt{\sum_i (x_i - y_i)^2}. \]

As \( t \) increases, two components of sizes \( x_i, x_j \) ‘coalesce’ at a rate proportional to the product \( x_i x_j \). Theorem 11.5 identifies the scaling limit of this process as that of the evolving excursion lengths of \( W^t \) reflected at zero. This observation has contributed to the construction of the so-called ‘multiplicative coalescent’.

In summary, the largest component of the subcritical random graph (when \( \lambda < 1 \)) has order \( \log n \), and that of the supercritical graph (when \( \lambda > 1 \)) has order \( n \). When \( \lambda = 1 \), the largest component has order \( n^{2/3} \), with a multiplicative constant that is a random variable. The discontinuity at \( \lambda = 1 \) is sometimes referred to as the ‘Erdős–Rényi double jump’.
11.3 Independence and Colouring

Our second random-graph study is concerned with the chromatic number of $G_{n,p}$ for constant $p$. The theory of graph colourings is a significant part of graph theory. The chromatic number $\chi(G)$ of a graph $G$ is the least number of colours with the property that there exists an allocation of colours to vertices such that no two neighbours have the same colour. Let $p \in (0, 1)$, and write $\chi_{n,p}$ for the chromatic number of $G_{n,p}$.

A subset $W$ of $V$ is called independent if no two vertices in $W$ are adjacent, that is, if $X_{i,j} = 0$ for all $i, j \in W$. Any colouring of $G_{n,p}$ partitions $V$ into independent sets each with a given colour, and therefore the chromatic number is related to the size $I_{n,p}$ of the largest independent set of $G_{n,p}$.

11.6 Theorem [143] We have that

$$I_{n,p} = (1 + o_p(1))2\log_\pi n,$$

where the base $\pi$ of the logarithm is $\pi = 1/(1 - p)$.

The proof follows a standard route: the upper bound follows by an estimate of an expectation, and the lower by an estimate of a second moment. When performed with greater care, such calculations yield much more accurate estimates of $I_{n,p}$ than those presented here; see, for example, [51], [176, Sect. 7.1], and [226, Sect. 2]. Specifically, there exists an integer-valued function $r = r(n, p)$ such that

$$(11.7) \quad \Pr(r - 1 \leq I_{n,p} \leq r) \to 1 \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.$$

Proof. Let $N_k$ be the number of independent subsets of $V$ with cardinality $k$. Then

$$(11.8) \quad \Pr(I_{n,p} \geq k) = \Pr(N_k \geq 1) \leq \mathbb{E}(N_k).$$

Now,

$$(11.9) \quad \mathbb{E}(N_k) = \binom{n}{k} (1 - p)^{\binom{k}{2}},$$

With $\epsilon > 0$, set $k = 2(1 + \epsilon) \log_\pi n$, and use the fact that

$$\frac{n^k}{k!} \leq \frac{n^k}{(ne/k)^k},$$

to obtain

$$\log_\pi \mathbb{E}(N_k) \leq -(1 + o(1))k\epsilon \log_\pi n \to -\infty \quad \text{as} \quad n \to \infty.$$

By (11.8), $\Pr(I_{n,p} \geq k) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$. This is an example of the use of the so-called ‘first-moment method’.
11.3 Independence and Colouring

A lower bound for $I_{n,p}$ is obtained by the ‘second-moment method’, as follows. By Chebyshev’s inequality,
\[
P(N_k = 0) \leq \mathbb{P}\left(|N_k - EN_k| \geq EN_k\right) \leq \frac{\text{var}(N_k)}{E(N_k)^2},\]
whence, since $N_k$ takes values in the non-negative integers,
\[
\mathbb{P}(N_k \geq 1) \geq 2 - \frac{E(N_k^2)}{E(N_k)^2}. \tag{11.10}
\]

Let $\epsilon > 0$ and $k = 2(1 - \epsilon) \log_\pi n$. By (11.10), it suffices to show that
\[
\frac{E(N_k^2)}{E(N_k)^2} \to 1 \quad \text{as } n \to \infty. \tag{11.11}
\]

By the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality, the left side is at least 1. By an elementary counting argument,
\[
E(N_k^2) = \binom{n}{k} (1 - p)^{\binom{k}{2}} \sum_{i=0}^{k} \binom{k}{i} \binom{n-k}{k-i} (1 - p)^{\binom{k-i}{2}},
\]
After a minor analysis using (11.9) and (11.11), we may conclude that $\mathbb{P}(I_{n,p} \geq k) \to 1$ as $n \to \infty$. The theorem is proved. \qed

We turn now to the chromatic number $\chi_{n,p}$. Since the size of any set of vertices of a given colour is no larger than $I_{n,p}$, we have immediately that
\[
\chi_{n,p} \geq \frac{n}{I_{n,p}} = \left(1 + o_p(1)\right) \frac{n}{2 \log_\pi n}. \tag{11.12}
\]
The sharpness of this inequality was proved by Béla Bollobás [49] in a striking application of Hoeffding’s inequality for the tail of a martingale, Theorem 4.21.

11.13 Theorem [49] We have that
\[
\chi_{n,p} = (1 + o_p(1)) \frac{n}{2 \log_\pi n},
\]
where $\pi = 1/(1 - p)$.

The term $o_p(1)$ may be estimated quite precisely by a more detailed analysis than that presented here; see [49, 227] and [176, Sect. 7.3]. Specifically, we have, a.a.s., that
\[
\chi_{n,p} = \frac{n}{2 \log_\pi n - 2 \log_\pi \log_\pi n + O_p(1)},
\]
where $Z_n = O_p(y_n)$ means $\mathbb{P}(\{|Z_n/y_n| > M\} \leq g(M) \to 0$ as $M \to \infty$. 

Proof. The lower bound follows as in (11.12), and so we concentrate on finding an upper bound for $\chi_{n,p}$. Let $0 < \epsilon < \frac{1}{4}$, and write

$$k = \lfloor 2(1 - \epsilon) \log_{\pi} n \rfloor, \quad m = \lfloor n / (\log_{\pi} n)^2 \rfloor.$$ 

We claim that, with probability $1 - o(1)$, every subset of $V$ with cardinality at least $m$ possesses an independent subset of size at least $k$. The required bound on $\chi_{n,p}$ results from this claim, as follows. We find an independent set of size $k$, and we colour its vertices with colour 1. From the remaining set of $n - k$ vertices we find an independent set of size $k$, and we colour it with colour 2. This process may be iterated until there remains a set $S$ of size smaller than $\lfloor n / (\log_{\pi} n)^2 \rfloor$. We colour the vertices of $S$ ‘greedily’, using $|S|$ further colours. The total number of colours used in the above algorithm is no greater than

$$\frac{n}{k} + \frac{n}{(\log_{\pi} n)^2},$$ 

which, for large $n$, is smaller than $\frac{1}{2}(1 + 2\epsilon)n / \log_{\pi} n$. The required claim is a consequence of the following lemma.

11.14 Lemma With the above notation, the probability that $G_{m,p}$ contains no independent set of size $k$ is less than $\exp(-n^{\frac{7}{2} - 2\epsilon + o(1)}/m^2)$.

There are $\binom{n}{m} (< 2^n)$ subsets of $\{1, 2, \ldots, n\}$ with cardinality $m$. The probability that some such subset fails to contain an independent set of size $k$ is, by the lemma, no larger than

$$2^n \exp(-n^{\frac{7}{2} - 2\epsilon + o(1)}/m^2) = o(1).$$ 

We turn to the proof of Lemma 11.14, for which we shall use the Hoeffding inequality, Theorem 4.21.

For $M \geq k$, let

(11.15) $F(M, k) = \binom{M}{k} (1 - p)^{\binom{k}{2}}.$

We shall require $M$ to be such that $F(M, k)$ grows as a power of $n$, and to that end we set

(11.16) $M = \lfloor (Ck/e)n^{1-\epsilon} \rfloor,$

where

$$\log_{\pi} C = \frac{3}{8(1 - \epsilon)}$$

has been chosen in such a way that

(11.17) $F(M, k) = n^{\frac{7}{2} - \epsilon + o(1)}.$
11.3 Independence and Colouring

Let \( I(r) \) be the set of independent subsets of \( \{1, 2, \ldots, r\} \) with cardinality \( k \). We write \( N_k = |I(m)| \), and \( N_k' \) for the number of elements \( I \) of \( I(m) \) with the property that \( |I \cap I'| \leq 1 \) for all \( I' \in I(m), I' \neq I \). Note that

\[
N_k \geq N_k'.
\]

We shall estimate \( \Pr(N_k = 0) \) by applying Hoeffding’s inequality to a martingale constructed in a standard manner from the random variable \( N_k' \). First, we order as \((e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_{m^2})\) the edges of the complete graph on the vertex-set \( \{1, 2, \ldots, m\} \). Let \( F_s \) be the \( \sigma \)-field generated by the states of the edges \( e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_s \), and let \( Y_s = \mathbb{E}(N_k' \mid F_s) \). It is elementary that the sequence \((Y_s, F_s), 0 \leq s \leq (m^2)\), is a martingale; see [148, Example 7.9.24]. The quantity \( N_k' \) has been defined in such a way that the addition or removal of an edge causes its value to change by at most 1. Therefore, the martingale differences satisfy \( |Y_{s+1} - Y_s| \leq 1 \). Since \( Y_0 = \mathbb{E}(N_k') \) and \( Y_{(m^2)} = N_k' \),

\[
\Pr(N_k = 0) \leq \mathbb{P}(N_k' = 0)
\]

\[
= \mathbb{P}(N_k' - \mathbb{E}(N_k') \leq -\mathbb{E}(N_k'))
\]

\[
\leq \exp\left( -\frac{1}{2} \mathbb{E}(N_k')^2 / \binom{m}{2} \right)
\]

\[
\leq \exp(-\mathbb{E}(N_k')^2 / m^2),
\]

by (11.18) and Theorem 4.21. We now require a lower bound for \( \mathbb{E}(N_k') \).

Let \( M \) be as in (11.16). Let \( M_k = |I(M)| \), and let \( M_k' \) be the number of elements \( I \in I(M) \) such that \( |I \cap I'| \leq 1 \) for all \( I' \in I(M), I' \neq I \). Since \( m \geq M \),

\[
N_k' \geq M_k',
\]

and we shall bound \( \mathbb{E}(M_k') \) from below. Let \( K = \{1, 2, \ldots, k\} \), and let \( A \) be the event that \( K \) is an independent set. Let \( Z \) be the number of elements of \( I(M) \), other than \( K \), that intersect \( K \) in two or more vertices. Then

\[
\mathbb{E}(M_k') = \binom{M}{k} \Pr(A \cap \{Z = 0\})
\]

\[
= \binom{M}{k} P(A) \mathbb{P}(Z = 0 \mid A)
\]

\[
= F(M, k) \mathbb{P}(Z = 0 \mid A).
\]
We bound \( P(Z = 0 \mid A) \) by

\[
P(Z = 0 \mid A) = 1 - P(Z \geq 1 \mid A)
\]

\[
\geq 1 - \mathbb{E}(Z \mid A)
\]

\[
= 1 - \sum_{t=2}^{k-1} \binom{k}{t} \left( \frac{M-k}{k-t} \right) (1-p)^{t-1}
\]

\[
= 1 - \sum_{t=2}^{k-1} F_t, \quad \text{say.}
\]

For \( t \geq 2 \),

\[
(11.22) \quad F_t/F_2 = \frac{(M-2k+2)!}{(M-2k+t)!} \times \frac{(k-2)!}{(k-t)!} \times \frac{2}{t!} (1-p)^{-\frac{1}{2}(t+1)(t-2)}
\]

\[
\leq \left[ \frac{k^2 (1-p)^{-\frac{1}{2}(t+1)} M-2k}{t^{-2}} \right] .
\]

For \( 2 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2}k \),

\[
\log_\pi \left[ (1-p)^{-\frac{1}{2}(t+1)} \right] \leq \frac{k}{4} (k+2) \leq \frac{k}{2} + \frac{1}{2} (1-\epsilon) \log_\pi n,
\]

so \( (1-p)^{-\frac{1}{2}(t+1)} = O(n^{\frac{1}{2}(1-\epsilon)}) \). By (11.23),

\[
\sum_{2 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2}k} F_t = (1 + o(1)) F_2.
\]

Similarly,

\[
F_t/F_{k-1} = \left( \frac{M-k}{k-t} \right) \frac{(1-p)^{\frac{1}{2}(k+t-2)(k-t-1)}}{k(M-k)}
\]

\[
\leq \left[ kn(1-p)^{\frac{1}{2}(k+t-2)} \right]^{k-1}. \]

For \( \frac{1}{2}k \leq t \leq k-1 \), we have as above that

\[
(1-p)^{\frac{1}{2}(k+t)} \leq (1-p)^{\frac{1}{2}k} \leq n^{-\frac{\epsilon}{8}},
\]

whence

\[
\sum_{\frac{1}{2}k \leq t \leq k-1} F_t = (1 + o(1)) F_{k-1}.
\]

In summary,

\[
(11.24) \quad \sum_{t=2}^{k-1} F_t = (1 + o(1)) (F_2 + F_{k-1}).
\]
By (11.15) and (11.17),
\[ F_2 \leq \frac{k^4}{2(1-p)(M-k)^2} F(M, k) \]
\[ = n^{-\frac{1}{2}+\epsilon+o(1)} = o(1), \]
and similarly
\[ F_{k-1} = k(M-k)(1-p)^{k-1} = o(1). \]

By (11.21), (11.22), and (11.24),
\[ \mathbb{E}(M'_k) = (1+o(1)) F(M, k) = n^{\frac{2}{3}+\epsilon+o(1)}. \]

Returning to the martingale bound (11.19), it follows by (11.20) that
\[ \mathbb{P}(N_k = 0) \leq \exp\left(-n^{\frac{2}{3}-2\epsilon+o(1)}/m^2\right) \]
as required.

\[ \square \]

### 11.4 Exercises

11.1 Let \( \eta(\lambda) \) be the extinction probability of a branching process whose family-sizes have the Poisson distribution \( \text{Po}(\lambda) \). Show that
\[ \eta(\lambda) = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k^{k-1}}{k!} (\lambda e^{-\lambda})^k. \]

11.2 Consider a branching process whose family-sizes have the binomial distribution \( \text{bin}(n, \lambda/n) \). Show that the extinction probability converges to \( \eta(\lambda) \) as \( n \to \infty \), where \( \eta(\lambda) \) is the extinction probability of a branching process with family-sizes distributed as \( \text{Po}(\lambda) \).

11.3 Chernoff bounds. Let \( X \) have the binomial distribution \( \text{bin}(n, p) \), and let \( \lambda = np \). Obtain exponentially decaying bounds for the probabilities of upper and lower deviations of \( X \) from its mean \( \lambda \), such as those to be found in [176, Sect. 2.1]:
\[ \mathbb{P}(X \geq \lambda + t) \leq e^{-2\phi(t/\lambda)} \leq \exp\left(-\frac{t^2}{2(\lambda + t/3)}\right), \quad t \geq 0, \]
\[ \mathbb{P}(X \leq \lambda - t) \leq e^{-2\phi(-t/\lambda)} \leq \exp\left(-\frac{t^2}{2\lambda}\right), \quad t \geq 0, \]
where
\[ \phi(x) = \begin{cases} (1+x) \log(1+x) - x & \text{if } x \geq -1, \\ \infty & \text{if } x < -1. \end{cases} \]
11.4 [51] Show that the size of the largest independent set of $G_{n,p}$ is, a.a.s., either $r - 1$ or $r$, for some deterministic function $r = r(n, p)$.

11.5 Consider a branching process with a single progenitor and family-sizes distributed as the random variable $X$. Let

$$T = \min\{n \geq 1 : X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n = n - 1\},$$

where the $X_i$ are independent copies of $X$. Show that $T$ has the same distribution as the total number of individuals in the branching process. (The minimum of the empty set is defined to be $\infty$.)

11.6 (continuation) In the random graph $G_{n,p}$ with $p = \lambda / n$, where $\lambda \in (0, 1)$, show that the size $M_n$ of the largest cluster satisfies $\mathbb{P}(M_n \geq a \log n) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ for any $a > \lambda - 1 - \log \lambda$.

11.7 (continuation) Prove the complementary fact that $\mathbb{P}(M_n \leq a \log n) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ for any $a < \lambda - 1 - \log \lambda$. 
Lorentz Gas

A small particle is fired through an environment of large particles, and is subjected to reflections on impact. Little is known about the trajectory of the small particle when the larger ones are distributed at random. The notorious problem on the square lattice is summarized, and open questions are posed for the case of a continuum of needle-like mirrors in the plane.

12.1 Lorentz Model

In a famous sequence [215] of papers of 1906, Hendrik Lorentz introduced a version of the following problem. Large (heavy) particles are distributed about \( \mathbb{R}^d \). A small (light) particle is fired through \( \mathbb{R}^d \), with a trajectory comprising straight-line segments between the points of interaction with the heavy particles. When the small particle hits a heavy particle, the small particle is reflected at its surface, and the large particle remains motionless. See Figure 12.1 for an illustration.

We may think of the heavy particles as objects bounded by reflecting surfaces, and the light particle as a photon. The problem is to say something non-trivial about how the trajectory of the photon depends on the ‘environment’ of heavy particles. Conditional on the environment, the photon pursues a deterministic path about which the natural questions include:

1. Is the path unbounded?
2. How distant is the photon from its starting point after time \( t \)?

For simplicity, we assume henceforth that the large particles are identical to one another and that the small particle has negligible volume.

Probability may be injected naturally into this model through the assumption that the heavy particles are distributed at random around \( \mathbb{R}^d \) according to some probability measure \( \mu \). The questions above may be rephrased, and made more precise, in the language of probability theory. Let \( X_t \) denote the position of the photon at time \( t \), assuming it has constant speed. Under what conditions on \( \mu \):
I. Is there strictly positive probability that the function $X_t$ is unbounded?
II. Does $X_t$ converge to a Brownian motion, after suitable re-scaling?

For a wide choice of measures $\mu$, these questions are currently unanswered.

The Lorentz gas is very challenging to mathematicians, and little is known rigorously in reply to the questions above. The reason is that, as the photon moves around space, it gathers information about the random environment, and it carries this information with it forever.

The Lorentz gas was developed by Paul Ehrenfest [100]. For relevant references in the mathematics and physics journals, the reader is referred to [127, 128]. Many references may be found in [274].

12.2 The Square Lorentz Gas

Probably the most provocative version of the Lorentz gas for probabilists arises when the light ray is confined to the square lattice $\mathbb{L}^2$. At each vertex $v$ of $\mathbb{L}^2$, we place a ‘reflector’ with probability $p$, and nothing otherwise (the occupancies of different vertices are independent). Reflectors come in two types: ‘NW’ and ‘NE’. A NW reflector deflects incoming rays heading northwards (respectively, southwards) to the west (respectively, east), and vice versa. NE reflectors behave similarly with east and west interchanged. See Figure 12.2. We think of a reflector as being a two-sided mirror placed at $45^\circ$ to the axes, so that an incoming light ray is reflected along an axis perpendicular to its direction of arrival. If a reflector is placed at $v$, then we specify that it is equally likely to be NW as NE.

We shine a torch northwards from the origin. The light is reflected by the mirrors, and it is easy to see that either the light ray is unbounded or it
traverses a closed loop of $L^2$ (generally with self-crossings). Let

$$\eta(p) = \mathbb{P}_p(\text{the light ray returns to the origin}).$$

Very little is known about the function $\eta$. It seems reasonable to conjecture that $\eta$ is non-decreasing in $p$, but this has not been proved. If $\eta(p) = 1$, the light follows (almost surely) a closed loop, and we ask: for which $p$ does $\eta(p) = 1$? Certainly, $\eta(0) = 0$, and it is well known that $\eta(1) = 1$.\footnote{See the historical remark in [126].}

12.1 Theorem We have that $\eta(1) = 1$.

We invite the reader to consider whether $\eta(p) = 1$ for some $p \in (0, 1)$. A variety of related conjectures, not entirely self-consistent, may be found in the physics literature. There are almost no mathematical results about this process beyond Theorem 12.1. We mention the paper [246], where it is proved that the number $N(p)$ of unbounded light rays on $\mathbb{Z}^2$ is almost surely constant, and is equal to one of 0, 1, $\infty$. Furthermore, if there exist unbounded light trajectories, then they self-intersect infinitely often. If $N(p) = \infty$, the position $X_n$ of the photon at time $n$, when following an unbounded trajectory, is superdiffusive in the sense that $\mathbb{E}(|X_n|^2)/n$ is unbounded as $n \to \infty$. The principal method of [246] is to observe the environment of mirrors as viewed from the moving photon.

In a variant of the standard random walk, termed the ‘burn-your-bridges’ random walk by Omer Angel, an edge is destroyed immediately after it is traversed for the first time. The reader is invited to reflect on the relationship between the burn-your-bridges random walk and the square Lorentz gas with $p = \frac{1}{3}$.
Figure 12.3  (a) The bold lines form the lattice $\mathcal{L}$, and the central point is the origin of $\mathbb{L}^2$. (b) An open cycle in $\mathcal{L}$ constitutes a barrier of mirrors through which no light may penetrate.

**Proof.** We construct an ancillary lattice $\mathcal{L}$ as follows. Let

$$A = \{(m + \frac{1}{2}, n + \frac{1}{2}) : m + n \text{ is even}\}.$$  

Let $\sim$ be the adjacency relation on $A$ given by $(m + \frac{1}{2}, n + \frac{1}{2}) \sim (r + \frac{1}{2}, s + \frac{1}{2})$ if and only if $|m - r| = |n - s| = 1$. We obtain thus a graph $\mathcal{L}$ on $A$ that is isomorphic to $\mathbb{L}^2$. See Figure 12.3.

We declare the edge of $\mathcal{L}$ joining $(m - \frac{1}{2}, n - \frac{1}{2})$ to $(m + \frac{1}{2}, n + \frac{1}{2})$ to be open if there is a NE mirror at $(m, n)$; similarly, we declare the edge joining $(m - \frac{1}{2}, n + \frac{1}{2})$ to $(m + \frac{1}{2}, n - \frac{1}{2})$ to be open if there is a NW mirror at $(m, n)$. Edges that are not open are designated closed. This defines a bond percolation process in which north-east and north-west edges are open with probability $\frac{1}{2}$. Since $p_c(\mathbb{L}^2) = \frac{1}{2}$, the process is critical, and the percolation probability $\theta$ satisfies $\theta(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$. See Sections 5.5 and 5.6.

Let $N$ be the number of open cycles in $\mathcal{L}$ with the origin in their interiors. Since there is (a.s.) no infinite cluster in the percolation process on the dual lattice, we have that $P(N \geq 1) = 1$. Such an open cycle corresponds to a barrier of mirrors surrounding the origin (see Figure 12.3), from which no light can escape. Therefore $\eta(1) = 1$. □

The problem above may be stated for other lattices such as $\mathbb{L}^d$; see [126] for example. It is much simplified if we allow the photon to 'flip its own coin' as it proceeds through the disordered medium of mirrors. Two such models have been explored. In the first, there is a positive probability that the photon will misbehave when it hits a mirror; see [279]. In the second, a small density of vertices is allowed at which the photon acts in the manner of a random walk; see [44, 144].
12.3 In the Plane

Here is a continuum version of the Lorentz gas. Let $\Pi$ be a Poisson process in $\mathbb{R}^2$ with intensity 1. For each $x \in \Pi$, we place a needle (that is, a closed rectilinear line-segment) of given length $l$ with its centre at $x$. The orientations of the needles are taken to be independent random variables with a common law $\mu$ on $[0, \pi)$. We call $\mu$ degenerate if it has support on a singleton, that is, if all needles are (almost surely) parallel.

Each needle is interpreted as a (two-sided) reflector of light. Needles are permitted to overlap. Light is projected from the origin northwards, and deflected by the needles. Since the light strikes the endpoint of some needle with probability 0, we shall overlook this possibility.

In a related problem, we may study the union $M$ of the needles, viewed as subsets of $\mathbb{R}^2$, and ask whether either (or both) of the sets $M, \mathbb{R}^2 \setminus M$ contains an unbounded component. This problem is known as ‘needle percolation’, and it has received some attention (see, for example, [228, Sect. 8.5], and also [163]). Of concern to us in the present setting is the following. Let

$$\lambda(l) = \lambda_{\mu}(l)$$

be the probability that there exists an unbounded path of $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus M$ with the origin 0 as endpoint. It is clear that $\lambda(l)$ is non-increasing in $l$. The following is a fairly straightforward exercise of percolation type.

12.2 Theorem [163] There exists $l_c = l_c(\mu) \in (0, \infty]$ such that

$$\lambda(l) \begin{cases} > 0 & \text{if } l < l_c, \\ = 0 & \text{if } l > l_c, \end{cases}$$

and furthermore $l_c < \infty$ if and only if $\mu$ is non-degenerate.

The phase transition is defined here in terms of the existence of an unbounded ‘vacant path’ from the origin. When no such path exists, the origin is almost surely surrounded by a cycle of pairwise-intersecting needles. That is,

$$\mathbb{P}_{\mu,l}(E) = \begin{cases} < 1 & \text{if } l < l_c, \\ = 1 & \text{if } l > l_c, \end{cases}$$

where $E$ is the event that there exists a component $C$ of needles such that the origin of $\mathbb{R}^2$ lies in a bounded component of $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus C$, and $\mathbb{P}_{\mu,l}$ denotes the probability measure governing the configuration of mirrors.

The needle percolation problem is a type of continuum percolation model; cf. the space–time percolation process of Section 6.6. Continuum percolation, and in particular the needle (or ‘stick’) model, was summarized in [228, Sect. 8.5].

We return to the above Lorentz problem. Suppose that the photon is projected from the origin at angle $\theta$ to the $x$-axis, for given $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)$. Let
\( \Theta \) be the set of all \( \theta \) such that the trajectory of the photon is unbounded. It is clear from Theorem 12.2 that \( \mathbb{P}_{\mu,l}(\Theta = \emptyset) = 1 \) if \( l > l_c \). The strength of the following theorem of Matthew Harris lies in the converse statement.

12.4 Theorem [163] Let \( \mu \) be non-degenerate, with support a subset of the rational angles \( \pi \mathbb{Q} \).

(a) If \( l > l_c \), then \( \mathbb{P}_{\mu,l}(\Theta = \emptyset) = 1 \).

(b) If \( l < l_c \), then
\[
\mathbb{P}_{\mu,l}(\Theta \text{ has Lebesgue measure } 2\pi) = \frac{1}{2} - \mathbb{P}_{\mu,l}(E > 0).
\]

That is to say, almost surely on the complement of \( E \), the set \( \Theta \) differs from the entire interval \([0, 2\pi)\) by a null set. The proof uses a type of dimension-reduction method and utilizes a theorem concerning so-called ‘interval-exchange transformations’ taken from ergodic theory; see [183].

It is a key assumption for this argument that \( \mu \) be supported within the rational angles.

Let \( \eta(l) = \eta_{\mu}(l) \) be the probability that the light ray is bounded, having started by heading northwards from the origin. As above, \( \eta(l) = 1 \) when \( l > l_c(\mu) \). In contrast, it is not known for general \( \mu \) whether \( \eta(l) < 1 \) for sufficiently small positive \( l \). It seems reasonable to conjecture the following.

For any probability measure \( \mu \) on \([0, \pi)\), there exists \( l_r \in (0, l_c] \) such that \( \eta(l) < 1 \) whenever \( l < l_r \). This conjecture is open even for the arguably most natural case when \( \mu \) is uniform on \([0, \pi)\).

12.5 Conjecture Let \( \mu \) be the uniform probability measure on \([0, \pi)\), and let \( l_c \) denote the critical length for the associated needle percolation problem (as in Theorem 12.2).

(a) There exists \( l_r \in (0, l_c) \) such that
\[
\eta(l) \begin{cases} 
< 1 & \text{if } l < l_r, \\
= 1 & \text{if } l > l_r,
\end{cases}
\]

(b) We have that \( l_r = l_c \).

As a first step, we seek a proof that \( \eta(l) < 1 \) for sufficiently small positive values of \( l \). It is typical of such mirror problems that we lack even a proof that \( \eta(l) \) is monotone in \( l \).

12.4 Exercises

12.1 There are two ways of putting in the barriers in the percolation proof of Theorem 12.1, depending on whether one uses the odd or the even vertices. Use this fact to establish bounds for the tail of the size of the trajectory when the density of mirrors is 1.
12.2 In a variant of the square Lorentz lattice gas, NE mirrors occur with probability $\eta \in (0, 1)$ and NW mirrors otherwise. Show that the photon’s trajectory is almost surely bounded.

12.3 Needles are dropped onto the plane in the manner of a Poisson process with intensity 1 (in the manner of Buffon’s needle). They have length $l$, and their angles to the horizontal are independent random variables with law $\mu$. Show that there exists $l_c = l_c(\mu) \in (0, \infty]$ such that: the probability that the origin lies in an unbounded path of $\mathbb{R}^2$ intersecting no needle is strictly positive when $l < l_c$, and equals zero when $l > l_c$.

12.4 (continuation) Show that $l_c < \infty$ if and only if $\mu$ is non-degenerate.
References

Aaronson, J.

Ahlfors, L.

Aizenman, M.

Aizenman, M., Barsky, D. J.

Aizenman, M., Barsky, D. J., Fernández, R.

Aizenman, M., Burchard, A.

Aizenman, M., Chayes, J. T., Chayes, L., Newman, C. M.

Aizenman, M., Duminil-Copin, H., Sidoravicius, V.

Aizenman, M., Fernández, R.
References

Aizenman, M., Grimmett, G. R.

Aizenman, M., Kesten, H., Newman, C. M.

Aizenman, M., Klein, A., Newman, C. M.

Aizenman, M., Nachtergaele, B.

Aizenman, M., Newman, C. M.

Aldous, D. J.

Aldous, D., Fill, J.

Aldous, D., Fill, J.

Alexander, K.


Alon, N., Spencer, J. H.

Azuma, K.

Bálint, A., Camia, F., Meester, R.

Barlow, R. N., Proschan, F.
Bauerschmidt, R., Duminil-Copin, H., Goodman, J., Slade, G.

Baxter, R. J.

Beaton, N. R., Bousquet-Mélou, M., de Gier, J., Duminil-Copin, H., Guttmann, A. J.
28. The critical fugacity for surface adsorption of self-avoiding walks on the honeycomb lattice is $1 + \sqrt{2}$, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 326 (2014), 727–754.

Beckner, W.

Beffara, V.

Beffara, V., Duminil-Copin, H.

Beffara, V., Duminil-Copin, H., Smirnov, S.

Ben-Naim, M., Rossignol, R.

Ben-Or, M., Linial, N.

Benjamini, I., Kalai, G., Schramm, O.

Benjamini, I., Lyons, R., Peres, Y., Schramm, O.
References 243

Berg, J. van den

Berg, J. van den, Jonasson, J.

Berg, J. van den, Kesten, H.

Bezuidenhout, C. E., Grimmett, G. R.
42. The critical contact process dies out, Annals of Probability 18 (1990), 1462–1482.

Billingsley, P.

Björnberg, J. E.

Björnberg, J. E., Grimmett, G. R.

Bollobás, B.

Bollobás, B., Grimmett, G. R., Janson, S.

Bollobás, B., Riordan, O.
References


Bonami, A.

Borgs, C., Chayes, J. T., Randall, R.

Bourgain, J., Kahn, J., Kalai, G., Katznelson, Y., Linial, N.

Broadbent, S. R., Hammersley, J. M.

Broder, A. Z.

Brook, D.

Burton, R. M., Keane, M.

Camia, F., Newman, C. M.


Cardy, J.

Cerf, R.

Cerf, R., Pisztora, Á.
References


Chayes, J. T., Chayes, L.


Chayes, J. T., Chayes, L., Grimmett, G. R., Kesten, H., Schonmann, R. H.


Chayes, J. T., Chayes, L., Newman, C. M.


Chayes, L., Lei, H. K.


Chelkak, D., Duminil-Copin, H., Hongler, C., Kemppainen, A., Smirnov, S.


Chelkak, D., Smirnov, S.


Clifford, P.


Crawford, N., Ioffe, D.


Damron, M., Hanson, J., Sosoe, P.


Dobrushin, R. L.

References

Doeblin, W.

Doyle, P. G., Snell, J. L.

Dudley, R. M.

Duminil-Copin, H., Gagnebin, M., Harel, M., Manolescu, I., Tassion, V.

Duminil-Copin, H., Manolescu, I.
86. The phase transitions of the planar random-cluster and Potts models with $q \geq 1$ are sharp, *Probability Theory and Related Fields* 164 (2016), 865–892.

Duminil-Copin, H., Raoufi, A., Tassion, V.


Duminil-Copin, H., Sidoravicius, V., Tassion, V.
89. Continuity of the phase transition for planar random-cluster and Potts models with $1 \leq q \leq 4$, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 349 (2017), 47–107.

Duminil-Copin, H., Smirnov, S.


Duminil-Copin, H., Tassion, V.

93. A new proof of the sharpness of the phase transition for Bernoulli percolation and the Ising model, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 343 (2016), 725–745.
References

Duplantier, B.

Durrett, R. T.

Durrett, R., Schonmann, R. H.

Ehrenfest, P.

Erdős, P., Rényi, A.

Ethier, S., Kurtz, T.

Falik, D., Samorodnitsky, A.

Feder, T., Mihail, M.

Ferrari, P. L., Spohn, H.
105. Scaling limit for the space–time covariance of the stationary totally asymmetric simple exclusion process, Communications in Mathematical Physics 265 (2006), 1–44.

Fisher, M. E.

Fitzner, R., van der Hofstad, R.
References

Fortuin, C. M.

Fortuin, C. M., Kasteleyn, P. W.

Fortuin, C. M., Kasteleyn, P. W., Ginibre, J.
112. Correlation inequalities on some partially ordered sets, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 22 (1971), 89–103.

Friedgut, E.

Friedgut, E., Kalai, G.

Georgii, H.-O.

Gibbs, J. W.

Gilbert, E. N.

Ginibre, J.
118. Reduced density matrices of the anisotropic Heisenberg model, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 10 (1968), 140–154.

Glauber, R. J.

Gowers, W. T.

Graham, B. T., Grimmett, G. R.
References

Grassberger, P., Torre, A. de la

Grimmett, G. R.

Grimmett, G. R., Hiemer, P.

Grimmett, G. R., Janson, S.

Grimmett, G. R., Janson, S., Norris, J. R.

Grimmett, G. R., Kesten, H., Zhang, Y.
References

Grimmett, G. R., Li, Z.

Grimmett, G. R., Manolescu, I.

Grimmett, G. R., Marstrand, J. M.

Grimmett, G. R., McDiarmid, C. J. H.

Grimmett, G. R., Menshikov, M. V., Volkov, S. E.

Grimmett, G. R., Osborne, T. J., Scudo, P. F.

Grimmett, G. R., Piza, M. S. T.

Grimmett, G. R., Stacey, A. M.

Grimmett, G. R., Stirzaker, D. R.

Grimmett, G. R., Welsh, D. J. A.

Grimmett, G. R., Winkler, S. N.

Gross, L.

Halmos, P. R.
References

Hammersley, J. M.

Hammersley, J. M., Clifford, P.

Hammersley, J. M., Morton, W.

Hammersley, J. M., Welsh, D. J. A.

Hara, T., Slade, G.
161. Mean-field critical behaviour for percolation in high dimensions, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 128 (1990), 333–391.

Harris, M.

Harris, T. E.

Higuchi, Y.

Hintermann, A., Kunz, H., Wu, F. Y.

Hoeffding, W.

Hofstad, R. van der
Holley, R.

Hughes, B. D.

Hutchcroft, T., Peres, Y.

Ising, E.

Janson, S.

Janson, S., Knuth, D., Łuczak, T., Pittel, B.

Janson, S., Łuczak, T., Ruciński, A.

Jensen, I., Guttmann, A. J.

Jössang, P., Jössang, A.

Kahn, J., Kalai, G., Linial, N.

Kahn, J., Neiman, M.

Kalai, G., Safra, S.
References

Kasteleyn, P. W., Fortuin, C. M.

Keane, M.

Keller, N.

Kennelly, A. E.

Kesten, H.
186. The critical probability of bond percolation on the square lattice equals \(\frac{1}{2}\), *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 74 (1980a), 41–59.

Kirchhoff, G.

Klein, A.

Kotecký, R., Shlosman, S.
191. First order phase transitions in large entropy lattice systems, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 83 (1982), 493–515.

Kozdron, M., Richards, L. M., Stroock, D. W.

Laanait, L., Messager, A., Miracle-Solé, S., Ruiz, J., Shlosman, S.

Laanait, L., Messager, A., Ruiz, J.
194. Phase coexistence and surface tensions for the Potts model, *Communications in Mathematical Physics* 105 (1986), 527–545.

Langlands, R., Pouliot, P., Saint-Aubin, Y.
Lauritzen, S.

Lawler, G.

Lawler, G. F., Limic, V.

Lawler, G. F., Schramm, O., Werner, W.

Levin, D. A., Peres, Y., Wilmer, E. L.

Lieb, E., Schultz, T., Mattis, D.

Liggett, T. M.

Lima, B. N. B. de

Lima, B. N. B. de, Sanchis, R., Silva, R. W. C.

Lindvall, T.
Linusson, S.


Lorentz, H. A.

Löwner, K.

Lubetzky, E., Sly, A.


Lyons, R.

221. Probability on Trees and Networks, Cambridge University Press, (2016),

Lyons, T. J.

Madras, N., Slade, G.

Margulis, G.

Martinelli, F.

McDiarmid, C. J. H.

Meester, R., Roy, R.

Menshikov, M. V.

Menshikov, M. V., Molchanov, S. A., Sidorenko, A. F.

Moussouris, J.

Nachtergaele, B.

Nienhuis, B.

Onsager, L.

Peierls, R.

Pemantle, R.

Petersen, K.

Pólya, G.
242. Über eine Aufgabe betreffend die Irrfahrt im Strassennetz, Mathematische Annalen 84 (1921), 149–160.
References

Potts, R. B.

Propp, D., Wilson, D. B.

Quas, A.

Ráth, B.

Reimer, D.

Rohde, S., Schramm, O.

Rossignol, R.
251. Threshold phenomena on product spaces; BKKKL revisited (once more), Electronic Communications in Probability 13 (2008), 35–44.

Rudin, W.

Rudolph, D. J.

Russo, L.

Schonmann, R. H.

Schramm, O.
References


Schramm, O., Sheffield, S.


Schulman, L. S.

Seppäläinen, T.

Seymour, P. D., Welsh, D. J. A.

Slade, G.

Smirnov, S.


Smirnov, S., Werner, W.

Strassen, V.

Sun, N.
Swendsen, R. H., Wang, J. S.

Szász, D.

Talagrand, M.

Tóth, B.

Welsh, D. J. A.

Werner, W.

Wierman, J. C.

Williams, G. T., Bjerknes, R.

Wilson, D. B.

Wood, De Volson
Wu, F. Y.  

Wulff, G.  
Index

adjacency 17
Aldous–Broder algorithm 24, 36
amenability 30
association
  negative a. 21
  positive a. 62
asymptotically almost surely (a.a.s.) 221
automorphism, of graph 29

BK inequality 64
block lattice 128
Boolean function 72
Borel σ-algebra 30
boundary 11, 17
  b. conditions 30, 38, 62, 173
  external b. 19, 148
bounded differences 66
branching process 221
bridge 52, 143
Brook’s lemma 147
Brownian motion 33, 32, 225
burn-your-bridges random walk 235

Cardy’s formula 34, 115, 117
Cauchy–Riemann equations 122
Chernoff bound 223, 231
chromatic number 84, 226
circuit 17
clique 146
closed edge 39
cluster 17, 40
cluster-weighting factor 191
comparison inequalities 159
component 17
configuration 39
  maximum, minimum c. 60
  partial order 59
conformal field theory 32
connected graph 17
connective constant 43
  c. c. of hexagonal lattice 45
contact process 131, 206
  c. p. on tree 139
correlation–connection theorem 158
coupling
  additive c. 134
  c. of percolation 45
  c. of contact processes 133
  c. of random-cluster and Potts models 157
  monotone c. 134
Strassen’s theorem 60
critical exponent 100
critical point 162
critical probability 40
  for random-cluster measures 162, 173
  in two dimensions 107, 126
  on slab 91
  cubic lattice 17
Curie point 152
cut 143
cut-off phenomenon 217
cycle 17
cyclomatic number 184
cylinder event 30, 38
Index

degree of vertex 17
density matrix 190
  reduced d. m. 200
dependency graph 146
diagonal selection 13
directed percolation 53
disjoint-occurrence property 63
DLR random-cluster measure 161
dual graph 41
duality
  d. for contact model 134, 206
  d. for voter model 208
  d. for random-cluster model 168
effective conductance/resistance 9
  convexity of e. r. 10, 19
electrical network 1, 3
  parallel and series laws 9
energy 8entanglement 200
epidemic 131
Erdős–Rényi random graph 219
ergodic measure 29, 130, 160, 188, 209
even graph 183
event, $\mathcal{A}$-invariant 81
exchangeable measure 218
exclusion model 211
exploration process 122
exponential decay
  of radius 87, 145
external boundary 19, 148
extremal measure 135, 209
Feller semigroup 205
ferromagnetism 152
finite-energy property 96
first-moment method 226
first-order phase transition 164
first-passage percolation 68
FK representation 157
FKG
  inequality 62, 159
  lattice condition 62, 84, 159
flow 5, 11
forest 17
Fourier–Walsh coefficients 72
giant component 221
Gibbs, J. W. 149
Gibbs random field 149, 152
  for Ising model 152
  for Potts model 153
Glauber dynamics 216
duality
  g.-theoretic distance 17
graphical representation 133, 207
ground state 190, 199
Hamiltonian 152, 190
harmonic function 2, 124
Heisenberg model 153
hexagonal lattice 18, 43, 104
  connective constant 45
Hille–Yosida theorem 205
Hoeffding inequality 65, 228
Holley inequality 60
honeycomb lattice, see hexagonal lattice
hull 34
hypercontractivity 75
hyperscaling relations 101
inclusion–exclusion principle 37, 151
increasing event, random variable 22, 59, 191
independent set 226
infinite-volume limit 160
influence
  i. of edge 67
  i. theorem 68
invariant measure 135, 205
Ising model 152, 152
  continuum I. m. 193
  quantum I. m. 189
spin cluster 170, 172
stochastic I. m. 214
isoradial graph 116, 168

$k$-fuzz 20
Kirchhoff 6
  laws 4
  theorem 6

$L^p$ space 83
lace expansion 90
large deviations
  Chernoff bound 223
  lattice 14, 17
logarithmic asymptotics 101
loop
  L-erased random walk 23, 35
  L-erasure 23
Lorentz gas 233

magnetization 164
Markov chain 1, 205
  generator 205
  reversible M. c. 1, 215
Markov random field 148
Markov property 149
maximum principle 19
mean-field theory 220, 102
mixing
  m. measure 187, 188
  m. time 217
monotone measure 84
multiplicative coalescent 225
multiscale analysis 145

$n$-vector model 153
needle percolation 237
negative association 21, 22, 159

O$(\alpha)$ model 153
Ohm’s law 4
  open
    o. cluster 40
    o. edge 39
oriented percolation 53
origin 17

parafermionic observable 47
parallel and series laws 9
partial order 152
path 17
Peierls argument 41
percolation
  model 39
  of words 57
    p. probability 40, 54, 136, 161, 199
phase transition 99
  first and second order p. t. 164
photon 233
pivotal element/edge 80
planar duality 41
Polya’s Theorem 14
portmanteau theorem 31
positive association 62
potential function 4, 149
Potts model 153, 152
  continuum P. m. 192
  ergodicity and mixing 188
  magnetization 164
  two-point correlation function 158
probability measure
  $A$-invariant p. m. 81
  positive p. m. 60
product $\sigma$-algebra 30
quantum entanglement 200
quantum Ising model 189
radius 127, 143
  exponential decay of r. 87
random even graph 183
random graph 219
  chromatic number 226
  double jump 225
  giant component 221
  independent set 226
random-cluster measure 156
  comparison inequalities 159
Index

conditional measures 159
conditional measures 159
critical point 162
critical point 162
DLR measure 161
DLR measure 161
ergodicity 160, 188
ergodicity 160, 188
limit measure 160
limit measure 160
mixing 187
mixing 187
ratio weak-mixing 202
ratio weak-mixing 202
relationship to Potts model 158
relationship to Potts model 158
uniqueness 162
uniqueness 162
random-cluster model 154
random-cluster model 154
random-continuum r.-c. m. 191
random-continuum r.-c. m. in two dimensions 167
random-current representation 186
random-current representation 186
random-parity representation 199
random-parity representation 199
random walk 1, 208
random walk 1, 208
Rayleigh principle 10, 22, 29
Rayleigh principle 10, 22, 29
Reimer inequality 64
Reimer inequality 64
relaxation time 217
relaxation time 217
renormalized lattice 128
renormalized lattice 128
root 24
root 24
roughening transition 167
roughening transition 167
RSW theorem 105
RSW theorem 105
Russo’s formula 80
Russo’s formula 80
scaling relations 101
scaling relations 101
Schramm–Loewner evolution 32, 99
Schramm–Loewner evolution 32, 99
chordal, radial SLE 34
chordal, radial SLE 34
trace of SLE 34
trace of SLE 34
second-moment method 227
second-moment method 227
second-order phase transition 164
second-order phase transition 164
self-avoiding walk (SAW) 40, 42
self-avoiding walk (SAW) 40, 42
self-dual
self-dual
s.-d. graph 41
s.-d. graph 41
s.-d. point 107, 169, 192
s.-d. point 107, 169, 192
semigroup 205
semigroup 205
Feller s. 205
Feller s. 205
series and parallel laws 9
series and parallel laws 9
sharp threshold theorem 81
sharp threshold theorem 81
shift-invariance 29
shift-invariance 29
sink 5
sink 5
slab critical point 91
slab critical point 91
SLE, see Schramm–Loewner
evolution
SLE, see Schramm–Loewner
evolution
source 5
source 5
s. set 3
space–time percolation 142, 191
spanning
spanning
s. arborescence 24
s. arborescence 24
s. tree 6, 17
s. tree 6, 17
spectral gap 217
spectral gap 217
speed function 205, 214
speed function 205, 214
square lattice 18, 14
square lattice 18, 14
star–triangle transformation 9, 19
star–triangle transformation 9, 19
stochastic Ising model 214
stochastic Ising model 214
stochastic Loewner evolution, see
stochastic Loewner evolution, see
Schramm–Loewner evolution
Schramm–Loewner evolution
stochastic ordering 59
stochastic ordering 59
Strassen theorem 60
Strassen theorem 60
strong survival 140
strong survival 140
subadditive inequality 43
subadditive inequality 43
subcritical phase 86
subcritical phase 86
subgraph 17
subgraph 17
supercritical phase 90
supercritical phase 90
superposition principle 5
superposition principle 5
support, of measure 29
support, of measure 29
supremum norm 101
supremum norm 101

TASEP 212
TASEP 212
thermodynamic limit 160
thermodynamic limit 160
Thomson principle 9
Thomson principle 9
time constant 69
time constant 69
total variation distance 217
total variation distance 217
trace
trace
t. of matrix 190
t. of matrix 190
t. of SLE 34
t. of SLE 34
transitive action 81
transitive action 81
tree 17
tree 17
triangle condition 103
triangle condition 103
triangular lattice 18, 34, 104
triangular lattice 18, 34, 104
trifurcation 97
trifurcation 97
turning angle 46
turning angle 46
uniform
uniform
connected subgraph (UCS) 32, 165
connected subgraph (UCS) 32, 165
spanning tree (UST) 21, 165
spanning tree (UST) 21, 165
spanning (spanning) forest (USF) 32, 165
spanning (spanning) forest (USF) 32, 165
Index

uniqueness
  u. of harmonic functions 20
  u. of infinite open cluster 96
  u. of random-cluster measure 162
universality 102
upper critical dimension 101
vertex degree 17
Voronoi percolation 69
voter model 207

weak convergence 30
weak survival 140
Wilson's algorithm 23
wired boundary condition 30, 38
word percolation 57
zero/one infinite-cluster property 161